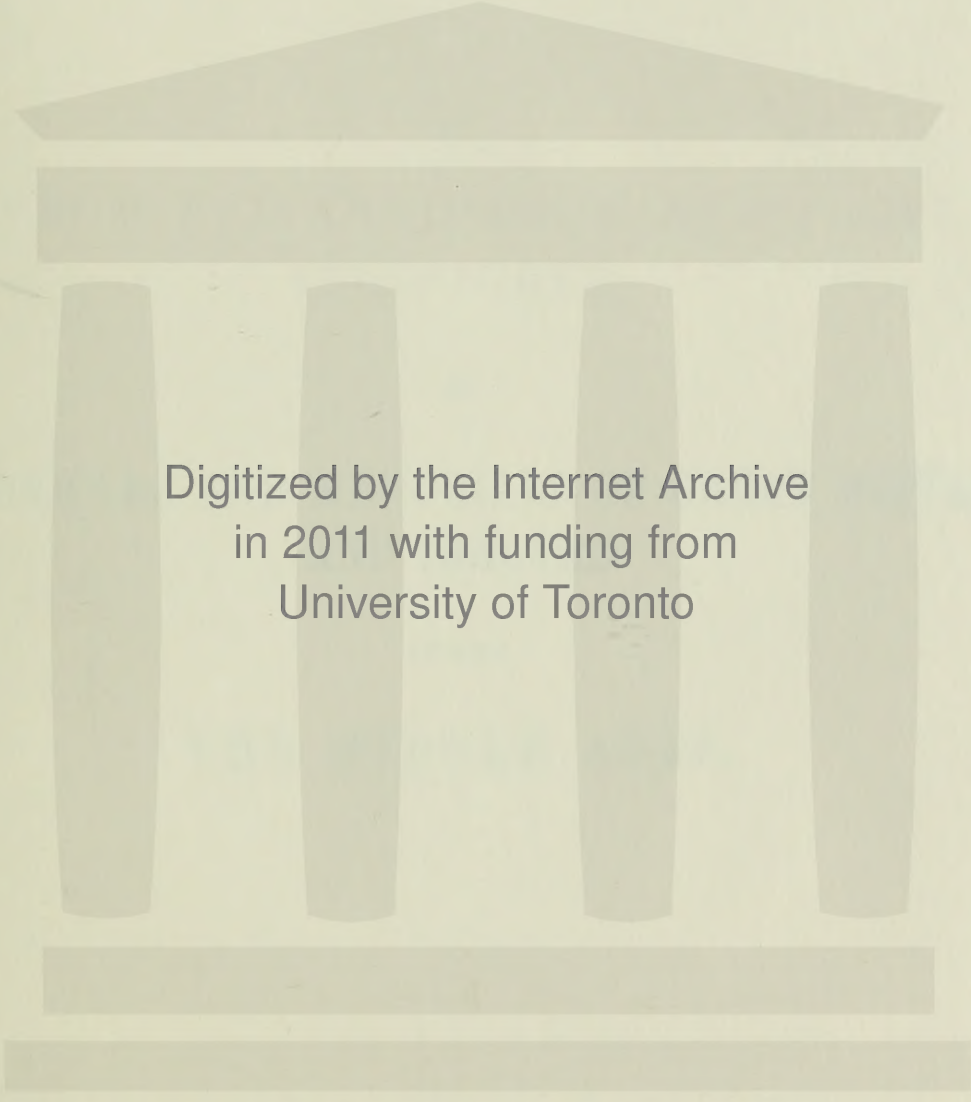
Conservation of this volume was made possible through the generous support of
PETER WARRIAN
and the Friends of the Library

PIMS

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES


Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

http://www.archive.org/details/chronicleofpierr02pete

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

THE

CHRONICLE

OF

PIERRE DE LANGTOFT,

IN FRENCH VERSE,

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF KING EDWARD I.

EDITED

BY

THOMAS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A., F.S.A., &c.,
CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE,
(ACADÉMIE DES INSCRIPTIONS ET BELLES-LETTRES).

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER.

1868.

THE INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
ST. MICHAEL'S COLLEGE
LIBRARY
JAN 12 1950
15426

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE - - - - - - -	vii
THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT - - -	1
APPENDICES - - - - - - -	385
INDEX - - - - - - - -	471

PREFACE.

DA
25
.B8
V.47

PREFACE.

I HAVE a few remarks to add to what has been said in the Preface to the first volume of this book, chiefly on the subject of different manuscripts containing copies of the text of the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft. The number of them still existing prove that this work was extremely popular during the first half of the fourteenth century. How far this popularity extended beyond the northern counties it would be difficult to say, as we can trace none of these manuscripts back to the places where they were written. Of one of them, the second manuscript in the College of Arms, which I have called E., I wish especially to speak.

The manuscripts of Pierre de Langtoft.

This fine manuscript was evidently made for some man of wealth, who wished to have a consecutive series of what were considered to be the best Chronicles of English history in French or Anglo-Norman verse, and the choice is not an injudicious one. First, we have the Brut, or translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth's history into Anglo-Norman verse, by the trouvère Wace. Next, we have Gaimar's history of the Anglo-Saxon kings; followed by the Lai of Haveloc, one of the incidents told more briefly in Gaimar's work. These are followed by Pierre de Langtoft's history of the reign of Edward I., which forms the fourth article in the volume. It was only when I came to collate with it the text of this part of the work for the present volume, that I found this

The manuscript belonging to the Herald's College.

not to be a copy of Pierre de Langtoft's text, but Pierre de Langtoft very much altered by another hand. Some writer, probably of the earlier part of the reign of Edward III., had found that Langtoft wanted improving, both in substance, and somewhat also in style, and he had undertaken the task, and the result is a revision or new edition so different from the first, that I found it was useless to go on giving the various readings, and that the only way to treat this new text would be to print it entire as a separate work. For examples of these readings I need only refer the reader to the notes to the present volume, pp. 162–170, and add that the variation between the two texts increases as we go on. I have, therefore, thought it advisable to abstain from collating it any further than the mere introductory matter.

A manuscript in the University Library, Cambridge.

I have omitted in my former preface to mention among the existing manuscripts a good copy found in the University Library, Cambridge, bearing the press-mark Gg. I. i. I edited from this manuscript so far back as 1839, at the end of a volume of "Political "Songs" printed by the Camden Society, that part of the text of the history of the reign of Edward I. which contains so many fragments of what appear to have been popular songs on the events of the day, and especially on those of the Scottish wars. The exact character of these fragments is a rather curious question which might perhaps admit of some discussion. They are all composed in the same form of metre, which seems to have been very fashionable at that time, and which was called *ryme cowée*, meaning literally, tailed rhyme. It consists of two lines rhyming together, and then a shorter line with a different rhyme, then two lines rhyming together again, followed by another short line which rhymes with the preceding short line. These short lines were the tails; they most commonly rhymed in pairs, so as to form a series of verses formed of stanzas of

The popular songs introduced by Langtoft.

six lines each, resembling some of our old ballad poetry; but we find sometimes in this form of verse several tail-lines rhyming together. As this is invariably the form of the fragments of English song found in Pierre de Langtoft, and as the author not unfrequently in introducing them changes his own long lines into the same form of verse, we might be led to suspect that they are all part of his own composition, and not old songs taken from popular recitation. But the words with which some of them are introduced leave little doubt as to their real character. Thus, in one place, we are told that Edward fortified Berwick, "in reproval of "the Scot, who had sung of him and in mockery made "rhymes upon him in English,"[1] and immediately follows the English song in *ryme cowée*. A similar fragment on the battle of Dunbar is introduced by a line evidently intimating that it was a popular song of a satirical description:—"Their deed has turned them to "mockery as long as the world shall last."[2] The Cambridge manuscript of which I am speaking gives some additional lines of the English fragments, which are not found in the other manuscripts which I have examined, and which seem to leave no doubt of their true character. Thus, at the end of the six lines of English verse given in the present volume, p. 258, the Cambridge adds the following:—

Character of these songs.

"He loghe wil him liked,
"His paclir es thurck piked,
"He wende e were liale;
"Begkot an bride,
"Rede him at ride
"In the dismale."

Again, at p. 278, l. 10, of the present volume, the scribe who wrote the manuscript apparently, has changed

[1] *See* p. 234 of the present volume.

[2] *See* the present volume, p. 252.

the wording of the line, in order to insert some verses of an English song.

" Cum avaunt estaint, Dunbar les achascait.
" For thar wer thai brend,
" He kauged ham thidre kend,
" Ant dreved to dote.
" For Scottes at Dunbar
" Haved at thayre gau char
" Schame of thar note.
" Wer never dogges there
" Hurled out of herne
" Fro coylthe ne cotte."

In this case we can hardly doubt that the alteration in the French line was made merely for the purpose of introducing these English verses, which are very obscure, and probably corrupt.

Manuscripts of Pierre de Langtoft at Paris.

Since writing the preface to the first volume, I have had the opportunity of examining hastily the manuscript of Pierre de Langtoft preserved in the Imperial Library in Paris, and I am now able, through the kindness of my excellent friend M. Paulin Paris, so well known for his valuable labours on the literature of the middle ages, to give a more particular description of it. It would be more correct to call it two manuscripts bound in one volume, for there are two copies of part of the text of Langtoft written by different hands, and of different dates. The handwriting of both is English, and, as the French Library came into possession of them at the time of the suppression of the religious orders in France and the confiscation of the goods of the emigrants, M. Paulin Paris supposes them to have been brought from some one of the abbeys in Normandy. The volume was formerly known as Supplément Français, No. 262, but now, since all the different collections have been combined into one, it is numbered as Fonds Français, No. 12,154.

The text begins as follows, on the first page of the manuscript; it will be seen at once that it is the second

part of the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, and that the first part, the translation of the Brut, is here wanting.

" En les livers Bede des Antiquités,
" Sis cens et iiii. vinz et iii. auns sunt comptez
" Après ke de la Virge Jhesu Crist fu neez,
" Quant le rey Kadvaldrus lessa ses regnez
" De la Grant Bretayne, dount feust engetez
" Par les Saxonays, ke sunt enheritez.
" Vers Bretayne la Mayndre en (*sic*) Cadvaldrus passez,
" Al riche rays Alaun et à ses parentez;
" De ilokes alait ad Rome cum il fust consaillez.
" Sergius la pape le assout de ses pechez,
" Cadvardrus en la curt à Deu est comandez.
" Le an secund après à le my estez,
" Ivor et Hinny, ke furent seus neez,
" Sunt venus de Irlande, en Gales arivet," etc.

In this manuscript each new set of monorimes is headed by a title in Latin, as *De rege Adelelpho*, on fol. 3, or by a date, as at fol. 4, *Anno Domini ccccc.* I presume, from the description of M. Paulin Paris, that this manuscript does not contain all the fragments of English verse. At fol. 35, the song of the Scots at the siege of Berwick is given as follows:—

English songs given in the French MS.

" Li Balyole ad perdu le issue et le entré
" De la plus noble vile ke feust en sa poesté.
" Le rays Eduard le tent conquise par l'espé,
" La fet environner de fosse large et lé,
" En reprovant l'Escoce, k'ad de ly chaunté,
" Et par moquerye en Englays rymayé:

" Pyket him,
" And dyket him,
" In scoren sayden he;
" He dykes hit,
" He pikes hit,
" His sal hit be,
" Scatered here the Scotes,
" Hodred in hoytes,
" Never thay ne the.

" Rytht if I rede,
" Thay toumble in Twede,
" That woned by the se."

This part of the manuscript ends, on fol. 38, with the line which represents line 10 on page 278 of the present volume,—

" Cum avaunt estaynt ; escotés ke ceo dait."

Fol. 39 begins, in a hand which M. Paulin Paris considers to be a quarter of a century more modern than the other, with the prophecies of Merlin in French, and on the verso of fol. 40 commences (in this same hand) the first division of the work, the translation of the Brut, beginning with the Latin couplet which is found at the end of the poem attributed to Langtoft in MS. A.,[1] written in red:—

" *Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto,*
" *Culpa datur Petro deficiente metro.*"

" Deu le tut puisseant, ke cel e tere creayt,
" Adam nostre pere que homme de terre formayt,
" Naturement porveust quant il ordinayt
" Qe home de tere venuz à tere renterayt,
" Cil Deu le beny qe bien escoter dayt
" Coment Engletere primes comencayt,
" Et pur quoy primes Bretaygne home l'appellayt."

This part ends with the verso of fol. 68, with the same series of monorimes as given in our text.[2]

" Puis le houre que Brettan Albyon conquist,
" E la terre avayt, et les giauns occist,
" Et Bretaygne l'apellayt, e habiter le fit,
" Jeskes à cel houre que Cadwallain perdist
" Le honur de Bretaygne, e nul Bretton remist,
" Piers de Langetost trove nient plus par dit

[1] *See* the Appendix in the present volume, p. 446.

[2] *See* p. 26 of the present volume.

" K'il n'ad coplye et mys en cel escrit.
" Les trofles ad lessé, à verité seprist.
" Nul autre trovera home que le list,
" Si noun il latiners en son fet mentist."

This is followed by the Latin verses, given in the note to page 264 of our first vol., beginning,—

" Finito Bruto, Britones fugiunt religati."

Second French copy of Pierre de Langtoft.

On fol. 69, r°, begins another copy of the second division of Langtoft's Chronicle, which had been given before in a different hand on the first page of the manuscript; and after this, at fol. 100, r°, the third part of Langtoft, or the history of the reign of Edward I., is continued, and ends on fol. 108, with the same lines which conclude the text in the present volume (p. 382):—

" Ly roys sire Edward resceyve en sa mercye,
" Relesse face de forfez en sa vye,
" En regal mansion la mene à compaygnie,
" Où servise n'y ad fors joye et melodie. Amen."

Variations in the writing of MS. A.

It will be well to remark that the Cottonian manuscript, from which my text is taken, is not all written by one uniform hand. With the line,—

" Après la batayle ly rays retornait,"

on fol. 159, v°, (p. 316 of the present volume), the colour of the ink changes, but the hand seems still to be the same, until we come to fol. 161, v°. (p. 328 of the present volume), when, with the line,—

" La Pasche après li reys fist assembler,"

the hand changes altogether, and there is at the same time an evident change in the orthography also. The original hand seems to have returned to it again at the beginning of folio 165, r°, (p. 346), with the line—

" Les meyns luy cospeit,"

and it continues to the beginning of folio 171, when it changes again, and continues changed to the end.

Appendices to the present volume.

When we compare together the contents of the different manuscripts in which we find the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, we cannot avoid being convinced that most of them were written more or less under political feelings,—that they were made for men who were interested in the great agitation of the Scotttsh claims and Scottish wars of the first half of the fourteenth century. Hence, several of the manuscripts contain, at the end, after the chronicle, documents of a rather miscellaneous character connected with this agitation. As some of these are very curions, I have thought it desirable to print a selection of such of them as are written in verse by way of appendix in the present volume. I have arranged these documents in the form of four separate appendices, according to their different characters and subjects.

Appendix I.—Documents relating to the interference of the pope in the affairs of Scotland.

Appendix I.—The first of these appendices relates to a curious phase in the Scottish wars under the reign of Edward I. In the year 1300, when king Edward had invaded Scotland with a formidable army, the Scots attempted to ward off the danger by obtaining the protection of the pope, Boniface VIII., and they set up the plea that sovereignty of Scotland belonged absolutely to the Holy see, having been given to it by St. Andrew himself. The pope at first took up the question with warmth; he is pretended to have been influenced in some degree by a considerable advance of Scottish money; he wrote an expostulatory letter to Edward I., setting forth at length his own claims to the sovereignty of Scotland, accused him of setting them at defiance, and admonishing him to desist. Edward called a parliament, which met at Lincoln on the 31st of January 1301, at which the nobles joined in an expostulatory reply to pope Boniface, in which they declared the

justice of king Edward's claims and their unanimous resolution to defend them. The king himself wrote a letter to the pope, in which he gave a long string of historical evidence to show the antiquity and justice of his own claims. The result was that the pope interfered no further in the matter, under the influence, probably, of other political interests. The Latin texts of these documents are given, perhaps somewhat abridged, in the Chronicle of Matthew of Westminster; and some contemporary or near contemporary of the events to which they relate turned them into French verse in a measure and style similar to those of Pierre de Langtoft. The scribe of the manuscript which I call B. (MS. Reg. 20 A. xi.) has inserted it at the end of Langtoft's work as a continuation of it, and from this, as the only copy with which I am acquainted, I have printed it as the first appendix. Unfortunately this scribe was a very careless one, and besides corruptions of the text which cause obscurity, a line or two are evidently omitted in several places.

Appendix II.—Poems ascribed to Langtoft.

Appendix II.—The two poems given in my second appendix are of a somewhat different character, and are inserted here merely because they are the only two other compositions which there appears to be any reason for ascribing to the author of the chronicle, which they immediately follow in MS. A. They have at the end the Latin verses relating to the literary labours of Pierre de Langtoft, so that it is evident that the scribe of this manuscript, which is one of very good authority, believed him to be the author of them. An account of them will be found in the preface to my first volume, p. xiv. I need say no more than that they are very curious examples of a class of literature which was very popular in the middle ages.

Appendix III.—Prophecies.

Appendix III.—Every man who has studied diligently and minutely the history of the period to which this

chronicle belongs is aware of the important role which pretended prophecies, put forth under the names of Merlin, the Sibyls, &c., played in the political struggle. Pierre de Langtoft has inserted the Latin text of the prophecies of Merlin between the first and second divisions of his chronicle, and in most of the manuscripts the work is preceded or followed by a French version of it. Besides this, single prophecies, much more brief in extent, and generally written in a metrical form in order to be more easily carried in the memory, are found scattered not only through these manuscripts, but through many others. They were no doubt used for political purposes. Those which I have printed in this appendix, taken from MS. B., are very curious examples of such prophecies and political verses, but accompanied with translations into French. Their original composition in Latin shows that they were primarily contrived and used by the clergy, and the French translations were intended to facilitate their circulation among the higher classes of the laity.

Appendix IV.—English prophetical poem.

Appendix IV.—The longer and more elaborately designed poem in English which forms the last of these appendices belongs to the same class as the scraps given in that which precedes. It was intended of course to be sung by the wandering minstrels, so as to spread the influence of these prophecies among the middle and somewhat lower classes of contemporary society. It is composed in a north country dialect, and is in some places so difficult and obscure that I have not been able to translate them with any confidence.

THE CHRONICLE

OF

PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

Anno Domini M°. C°. *quinquagesimo quinto.*

Henry fiz l'emperyce à Loundres est venu,
De trestut le pople curtaysement resceu,
Le jour saint Leogere[1] Henry est rays conu.
De la terre tute cel houre primat fu
Coronation of Henry II. [Thebaud de Canterbire ercevesque tenu ;][2]
Ad[3] Henry la coroune et le anel est rendu.[4]
Henry fiz l'emperyce, duk de Aquitayne,
Quatre fiz avayt, deus fylles[5] en demayne,
Henry, Richard, et Geffray counte de Brettayne,
Jon[6] fust sun fiz pusnez, sovent jolis en bayne ;[7]
Names of his children. Alyenore sa fillye fù rayne de Yspayne ;
Rayne de Cecylle Johanna la fillye darayne.
Icesty[8] ray Henry fu tuz jours en wayne ;[9]
Plus riche prince n'estayt[10] deça[11] la mountayne.
Henry le seconde est cesty ray nomez,
Ke tu[te][12] Engleterre tent[13] en ses poustez ;
Angou et Normendye sunt à ly liverez,
De Aquitayne est duk, dount est enheritez ;

---

[1] *sein Leger*, B. *saynt Legger*, C. The day of St. Ledger (Leodgarius) was the 2nd of October.

[2] This line, given here from B., is omitted in A. C. and D.

[3] *Q'à Henri*, B.

[4] *ad rendu*, B.

[5] *dous fitz*, B.

[6] *Johan*, B.

[7] *baigne*, B. D.

[8] *E cesti, B.*

[9] *en vayne*, C. *en waygne*, D.

[10] *prince estait*, C.

[11] *de cy à la*, D.

[12] *tote*. B. *trestut*, D.

[13] *tint*, B. *teent*, C.

THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

Anno Domini 1155.

Henry son of the empress is come to London
And courteously received by all the people;
On the day of St. Ledger Henry is acknowledged king.
At that time of all the land was primate
Held Theobald archbishop of Canterbury;
To Henry is given the crown and the ring.

Henry son of the empress, duke of Aquitaine,
Had four sons and two daughters in his family,
Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey count of Britany,
John was his youngest son, often gay in his living;
Eleanor his daughter was queen of Spain;
Joan, his youngest daughter, queen of Sicily.
This king Henry was always gaining;
There was not a richer prince on this side the mountain.

This king is named Henry the Second,
Who holds all England under his authority;
Anjou and Normandy are delivered to him,
He is duke of Aquitaine, which is his inheritance;

Chuvalers et clers sunt à ly jorez.
Sun chaunceler cel houre fu Thomas appelez,
Erceden [1] de Kaunterbyre, et de Loundres neez;
Fiz fu Thomas Beket, estret des melz vanez
Thomas Beket made Arch-bishop. De la cyté de Loundres, et riche home assez.
En chascune cause enquyst les veritez.
L'erceveske pur veir [2] à Deu est comaundez;
Del digneté Thomas est en sun lu sacrez;[3]
Ben sustynt saynt Eglyse et ses dignetez;
Par drait [4] lay escryt mayntint les ordynez.
Mès ke par layes estaynt attaynt des [5] malvestez,
Ne suffry pas k'il fussent par alliours jugez
Fors en court de clerk; le ray, cum ws orrez,
Vers Thomas se corouce, la cause ore escotez.
Disputes with the clergy. Clers sunt sovent hastifs, les uns [6] fount volentez,
Passent drait sovent,[7] n'esparnent [en] lay fez; [8]
Ke sentent la grevaunce al ray sunt alez,
Et de cel outrage [9] amendes ount priez.
Le ray parmy sa terre ses lettres ad maundez,
Ke entre clers et lays sa pes sait gardez;
Beket's obstinacy. Et si clerk mespreygne en ses regaltez
Par homycyde ou playe, de larcyne arettez,
En la court le ray ly sayt agardez
A porter jugement de ses iniquytez.
Ly erceveske Thomas al ray ad moustrez [10]

---

[1] *Ercediaken*, B.

[2] *pur voirs*, B.

[3] *L'ercediaken Thomas Beket est en son see sacrez*, B. *Le erceden Thomas est en son see sacrez*, C. *L'erceden Thomas est en son se sacrez*, D.

[4] *Par droite*, B. Robert of Brunne translates this line, "With the lawe "to wirke mayntend the ordiné."

[5] *par heez estoient attenuz de*, B. *par hoes*, C. *Mès qe par hoes estayent ataynt de malveytez*, D.

[6] *et les uns*, C. *e fount volenïez*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this as follows:—

"Clerkes often tide misdo blithely,
"For deynoushede and pride, and
"for ther state is hy;"

and adds some further remarks upon the conduct of the clergy.

[7] *sovent droit*, B. C.

[8] *en lai feez*, B. C. D.

[9] *de tel utrage*, C. *de tele*, D.

[10] *est moustrez*, C.

Knights and clergy are sworn to him.
His chancellor at that time was called Thomas,
Archdeacon of Canterbury, and a native of London ;
He was son of Thomas Beket, descended of the most distinguished
Of the city of London, and rich man enough.
In every case which came before him he sought the truth.
The archbishop in truth is despatched to God ;
Thomas is consecrated in his place to the dignity.
Well he sustained Holy Church and her dignities ;
Maintained the clergy by right written law.
But those who were accused by laymen of offences,
He did not suffer that they should be judged elsewhere
But in ecclesiastical court ; the king, as you will hear,
Takes anger against Thomas ; now hearken to the cause.

Ecclesiastics are often hasty, some of them act wilfully,
Often exceed justice, spare not in lay fiefs ;
Those who feel aggrieved are gone to the king,
And have prayed for amends for that injury.
The king has sent his letters through his land,
That his peace be kept between ecclesiastics and laymen ;
And if a clergyman commit an offence in his regalities
By manslaughter or wound, being accused of theft,
That it be appointed to him in the king's court
To receive judgment of his iniquities.
The archbishop Thomas has represented to the king

Quel serement il fist kant il fu coronez;
Par Deu ly defend ke klerk sait chalangez,
Si noun par saint eglyse, dount membre est clamez.
Ço fu à Claringdoun où Thomas ad parlez.
Et ad Norhauntoun vynt-il altre fez,
Deliverer ses clers, mès rens ly fu grauntez.[1]
A la court de Rome ad Thomas appelez.
Thomas devers la court va la mer passer;

Coronation of Prince Henry.

Et le ray Henry fet mayntenaunt maunder
Le erceveske de Everwyk, sun[2] [noun] fu Roger,
Et sun fiz Henry le fyst[3] corouner
Et oynder en rays le regne governer.[4]
Tort fist à Thomas, ke fust outre mer,
Ke pur veir[5] à ly appent cel[6] myster.
Kaunt Thomas le seet, fet escomenger
Le ercevesk par noun, ke ne put ministrer,[7]
Et tuz ke oveske ly dayvent communer,
Forspriz le rays Henry, ses fiz, et sa mulier.[8]
Sachez Thomas ne volt à sun repairer

Cause of Becket's exile.

Le ercevesk assoldre pur nuly prier.[9]
Les causes ws ay dit, ws les devez saver,
Pur quai[10] le ray Henry fist Thomas exyller;[11]
Al ray ne devez pas sa mort aretter.
Nent plus dist[12] le ray à sun chuvaler,
" Ay-jo[13] nule gent ke me pount[14] venger
" Sur un tel clergoun, ke fu moun chaunceler?"

Becket's death.

Quatre chuvalers, saunz plus comaunder,
Sunt alez en l'eglyse saynt Thomas tuer.

---

[1] *ly est grauntez*, C. D.
[2] *son noun*, B. C.
[3] *se fist*, C.
[4] *le regne pur g.*, D.
[5] *Qar pur voir*, B. C.
[6] *tel*, B.
[7] *q'il ne pout mustrer*, B
[8] *se fiz sa mulyer*, D.
[9] *pur nul prier*, B.
[10] *Par quei*, B.
[11] *exillyer*, D.
[12] *Qar nient plus dit*, B.
[13] *Fors a ge nule*, B.
[14] *porrunt*, B. *qe me peut*, C.

What oath he took when he was crowned;
On God's part he forbids him that an ecclesiastic be brought to trial
Except by Holy Church, by which he is claimed as a member.
It was at Clarendon that Thomas has spoken.
And at Northampton he came another time
To deliver his clergy, but nothing was yielded to him.
Thomas has appealed to the court of Rome.

Thomas proceeds to cross the sea on his way to the court;
And king Henry now causes to be summoned
The archbishop of York, his name was Roger,
And his son Henry he caused him to crown
And anoint, as king to govern the kingdom.
He did wrong to Thomas, who was beyond sea
For in truth to him belongs this duty.
When Thomas knows it, he excommunicates
The archbishop by name, who has no power to administrate,
And all who may hold communication with him,
Except king Henry, his sons, and his wife.
Know that Thomas will not, on his return,
Absolve the bishop for anybody's prayer.
The causes I have told you, you ought to know them,
Why king Henry banished Thomas;
You must not ascribe his death to king Henry.
The king said no more to his knight but,
" Have I no people who can avenge me
" Of such an ecclesiastic, who was my chancellor?"
Four knights, without further command,
Are gone into the church to slay saint Thomas.

The life of Becket referred to.

Ki volt saver coment saint Thomas vesquit,
Coment le ray de Fraunce honurer ly fist;
Coment le apostoylle par bulle ly transmyst[1]
Legat en Engleterre, coment se[2] entremyst,
Coment à Pountyné[3] le aungel à ly dist,
Coment sun lynage hors de terre fuist,
Coment l'apostoyle la payne à cels purvyst
Pur quels[4] en sainte eglyse playe et mort suffryst,
Saunz agarde de court,[5] coment il parfist
Par sa passioun ke pur Deu emprist,
Et coment Deu pur ly ovre où il gist;
Regarde [ben] sun lyvre,[6] ke n'est pas petyt,
Et là la verité trovera tut escryt.
Mort est le erceveske, et nostre[7] joven rays
Est la mer passé, et sur ly quens[8] curtays,
Sir William de Albemarle,[9] par aide des Englays,
Pris ad deus chastels, engettez les Fraunçays.[10]
[A] le chastel de Albemarle[11] barouns prist-il trays,
En Engleterre les meyne; cels sunt[12] les deus Flandrays
Ke morent en prisoun pur lur fez malvays.

Henry's grief for Becket.

Pur la mort[13] Thomas le ray avaunt nomé,
Henry fiz[14] l'emperyce, est molt angussé.

---

[1] *tramist*, B.

[2] *s'en*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "And how, or he "went, he serched alle the state."

[3] *Pounteneye*, B. D. *al Pontenye*, C.

[4] *Par quels*, B. C.

[5] *du court*, B.

[6] *Regardez bien son livere*, B. C. *Regarde bien son livere*, D.

[7] *à nostre*, C.

[8] *li quent*, B.

[9] *Aumarle*, B. *de Almemarle*, D.

[10] *le Fraunceys*, B.

[11] *Al chastel d'Aumarle*, B. C. *Al chastel de Albemarle*, D.

[12] *ses sunt*, B. This passage is translated by Robert of Brunne, in language not very intelligible, by the following lines:—

"Of Almarle in the castelle thre
"lordes he toke,
"Of messengers fulle snelle he sent
"hider to loke,
"Untille Inglond, of Flanders men
"fulle ille,
"In warde or in bond in prison leve
"thei stille."

[13] *Puis la mort*, B.

[14] *le fitz*, C.

Who desires to know the life St. Thomas led,
How the king of France caused him to be honoured;
How the pope by bull sent to him
A legate in England, how he interfered,
How at Pontigny the angel spoke to him,
How his kindred fled out of the land,
How the pope provided punishment for those
Through whom he suffered in holy church wound and death,
Without judgment of court, how he completed,
By his passion, that which he undertook for God's sake,
And how God performs miracles for him where he lies,
Look well into his book, which is not small,
And there you will find the truth all written.

Dead is the archbishop, and our young king
Has crossed the sea, and from the courteous count,
Sir William de Albemarle, with the aid of the English,
Has taken two castles, and expelled the French.
In the castle of Albemarle he captured three barons,
He brings them into England; these are the two Flemings
Who remain in prison for their evil deeds.

For the death of Thomas the king before named,
Henry son of the empress, was much chagrined.

War with Scotland.

William ray de Escoce de plus est conforté,
Et sur le ray Henry guere ad comencé.
Le chastel de Burge ad pris en sa pousté,
Malgarde fu par ly perduz, Prudhowe[1] salvé.

The king of Scotland taken.

S'en va vers Alnewyk, où pris est et mené
Tut drait à Richemund, où il est gardé.
Richard de Morvyle, chuvaler renomé,
Et Richard Comyn, of ly sunt herbe[r]gé.[2]
De bons fez des Norays[3] le rays Henry est lé;
Des riches douns les ad si ben rewerdoné,
Ke trestuz ly altres parmy sun regné

Peace restored.

Sunt al rays venuz[4] à sa volunté.
Contek entre countes de tot est relessé,
Barayt des barouns par tut[5] oblyé.
Ore est Engleterre en pees et charyté;
Ço fist le ray Henry par sa [grant] bounté.[6]
Le xix. an le ray Henry[7] regnayt,
Henry le joven rays, ke sun fiz estayt,
La sore le ray de France esposé avait.

The young king raises war against his father.

Phelippe counte de Flaundres, ke durement amait
Henry le joven rays, sovent ly consaillait,
Et Thebald de Blesence,[8] ke Henry molt creait,[9]
Et le ray de France sun poer donait
A Henry le joven, dount il començait
Suspendre sun pere, où il ne avayt[10] drayt.
Kaunt sun pere le seet, tost maunder fesayt
William ray d'Escoce, ke vynt of graunt[11] esplayt,
Et David sun frere William of ly[12] menayt.
Le counte de Leycestre cel houre[13] ben guyait.

---

[1] *Proudhowe*, C. Robert of Brunne says, "Mulgard thorgh him was "lorn, Prudhow saved welle."

[2] *od li sunt herbergé*, B.

[3] *les Norays*, C. *Des bons fetz de Norays*, D.

[4] *à li venuz*, B.

[5] *de tote*, D.

[6] *grant* is omitted in A.

[7] *Le dise neefsme an qe Henri*, B. C. *Le dys et le noefyme an ke Henry*, D.

[8] *Ethelmud de Plesence*, B. *Ke Thebald*, C.

[9] *croit*, B. *crait*, C. D.

[10] *où n'avoit*, B.

[11] *od grant*, B. *oue grant*, D.

[12] *od le*, B. *oue ly*, D.

[13] *cel ost*, B. *cel host*, C. *Le count de Gloucestre cel host*, D.

William king of Scotland is the more encouraged,
And has commenced war against king Henry.
He has taken into his power the castle of Burgh;
Mulgarde was lost through him, Prudhoe saved.
He proceeds towards Alnwick, where he is captured and carried
Straight to Richmond, where he is kept in guard.
Richard de Morville, a knight of renown,
And Richard Comyn, are lodged with him.
King Henry is glad of the good deeds of the men of the North;
He has so well rewarded them with rich gifts,
That all the others throughout his kingdom
Are come to the king to be at his will.
Strife among earls is entirely appeased,
Discord of the barons everywhere forgotten.
Now is England in peace and charity;
King Henry effected that through his great goodness.

In the nineteenth year that king Henry reigned,
Henry the young king, who was his son,
Had espoused the sister of the king of France.
Philip count of Flanders, who loved extremely
Henry the young king, often counselled him,
And Theobald of Blois, in whom Henry had great faith,
And the king of France gave his power
To Henry the young, with which he began
To supersede his father, where he had not right.
When his father knew it, he immediately sent for
William king of Scotland, who came with great retinue,
And William brought with him David his brother.
The earl of Leicester commanded well that army.

The siege of Rouen raised.

Henry of cele gent en Normendye alayt,
La cyté de Roanne[1] assegé trovayt;
Henry par poer sun fiz enchascayt,
Et le ray de Fraunce ses tentes i lessayt;
Phelippe quens de Flaundres le dos ly tornayt;
La cyté de Roan[2] Henry par là salvayt.
Le primer mays[3] de May le ray volt repairer
Of sa compaygnye en Engleterre arer.
Sun fiz Henry le joven, le duk de Payter,

The king and his son reconciled.

Richard fiz Alayn, vayllaun[t] chevaler,
Le counte de Brettayne Geffray, lur counsailler,
Sunt venuz à Loundres et fount messager
Le counte de Brettayne,[4] ke va le ray prier
Ke sun fiz à ly se peuse[5] affayter,
Et ad sa volunté sun trespas amender.
Ataunt le joven rays ly vent[6] mercy cryer.
Le pere le fiz rescayt de molt gentil quer,
Et sun maltalent le volt pardoner;
Par serement, par escryt, le fet[7] obliger,
Ke jamès après fra guere sur ly mover,

Submission of the king of Scotland.

Ne sa pes enfrayndre par terre ne par mer.
Kaunt sunt accordez ly fiz et ly per,
Vent le ray d'Escoce grace demaunder;
Et ly ray Henry ses chastels fet liverer,
Et fraunchement li soffre Escoce governer.
Al ray Henry estut en Fraunce rethorner,
Et parmy Normendye ses terres visiter;
Of le ray de Fraunce ad[8] à Parys parlementer;

---

[1] *de Reme*, B. C. D. Of course the writer means the city of Rouen, but Robert of Brunne translates it, rather naively, "That "reame was biseged with the "power of France."

[2] *Reme*, B. C. D.

[3] *le primer jour*, B.

[4] All that precedes, from *Geffray* in the second line before, is omitted in B.

[5] *se puisse*, B. *se puis*, C. *se peusse*, D.

[6] *reys veent*, C.

[7] *Par serment e escrit li fet*, B.

[8] *ad* omitted in B. C. D.

Henry with that people went into Normandy,
He found the city of Rouen besieged;
Henry by force put his son to flight,
And the king of France left his tents there;
Philip count of Flanders turned his back upon him;
Henry thereby saved the city of Rouen.

The first day of May the king would repair
Back to England with his company.
His son Henry the young, the duke of Poitiers,
Richard fitz Alan, a knight of worth,
Geoffrey count of Britany, their counsellor,
Are come to London, and make their messenger
The count of Britany, who goes to solicit the king
That his son may be reconciled to him,
And make amends for his trespass at his will
And then the young king comes to solicit forgiveness of him.
The father receives the son with very gentle heart,
And is willing to pardon his perverse conduct;
He makes him enter into obligation by oath and writing,
That he will never afterwards cause war to be moved against him,
Nor his peace to be broken, by land or water.
When the son and the father are reconciled,
The king of Scotland comes to demand grace;
And king Henry causes his castles to be restored to him,
And suffers him freely to govern Scotland.
It was necessary for king Henry to return into France,
And visit his lands throughout Normandy;
He has to hold a conference at Paris with the king of France;

Ne seet si il dait par la guere comencer,
Ou par les xij. peres du tut amourer.[1]
Ben set ke il ne poet[2] ray tuz jours regner;
Pur quai sun tresor comence diviser,[3]
Saver put la summe ky volt[4] escoter.
Cessaunt myl[5] mars de blauns esterlyns
Maunda le rays en Acre par marchauns de Provyns,[6]
Encountre sa venue sur les Sarazyns;
Cynkaunte mil mars, dount payn[7] aver et vyns,
Prestayt as abbays ke furent en ruyns;[8]
De l'avoyr ke demort en cofres et coffyns
Fist sunt testament, cum funt les pelryns.

Cel si est le testament le rays Henry secounde.

King Henry's will.

A Waltham va le rays fere sun testament;
Partye de sun aver devysa bonement:
Al Temples en Acre v. mil mars d'argent;
Autaunt à l'Hospital al sustenement.
As genz ke demorent Acre à defendre,
Cynk mil mars lour donne[9] en ayde à despendre;
Al mesouns de la terre de altre religyoun,
As hermytes et malades, v. mil mars de doun;
As moynes et chanoynes,[10] et altre compaynye[11]
Ke sunt en Engleterre en habite de sainte vye,
V. mil mars dona de sa tresorye;
Et ad tuz cels ke en Normendye estaynt,
Del testament le rays iij. mil mars avaynt;[12]

---

[1] *de tut en amourer*, B. *de tut amourer*, C. D.

[2] *ne put*, D.

[3] *devyser*, D.

[4] *qe veut*, C.

[5] *Sexsaunte mil marz*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne makes it only "Sex thousand marke." A reads *myl mil.*

[6] *par marchaundys de Province*, C. *par marchaunz de Provynce*, D.

[7] *payns*, D.

[8] *enruinez*, C.

[9] *en aide lour doune*, B. C. D.

[10] *Al moignes et al chanoygnes*, C.

[11] Robert of Brunne translates *et altre compaynye* by "and other of "suilk raf."

[12] *v. mil mars aveit*, B. Robert of Brunne follows this reading, "Five "thousand mark unto ther tre-"sorie."

Does not know if he ought to begin with war,
Or by making love altogether to the twelve peers.
He knows well that he cannot reign king for ever,
Wherefore he begins to dispose of his treasure,
Who will listen, may know the sum.

Sixty thousand marks in white sterlings
The king sent into Acre by merchants of Provyns,
Against his coming to war upon the Saracens;
Fifty thousand marks, with which to have bread and wines,
He lent to the abbeys which were in ruin;
Of the property which remains in chests and baskets
He makes his will, as the pilgrims do.

This is the will of king Henry the Second.

To Waltham goes the king to make his will:
Part of his wealth he disposed of worthily:
To the Temple in Acre, five thousand marks of money;
As much to the Hospital for its support.
To the people who remain to defend Acre,
He gives them in aid five thousand marks to spend;
To houses in the land of other orders of monks,
To hermits and sick people, five thousand marks of gift;
To monks and canons, and other company
Which are in England in garb of holy life,
He gave five thousand marks from his treasury;
And to all those who were in Normandy,
They had three thousand marks by the king's will;

King Henry's bequests.

Al mesuns de meseals[1] de mesme le pays
Trays cens mars d'esterlyns dona de sun devys;
As dames de habite[2] de Mortayne et Vilers[3]
Devysa ij. c. mars d'esterlyns en deners;
Et as religiouns ke sunt en Aquitaine[4]
Devisa mil mars, le tenent ben pur[5] gayne;
Et ad cels[6] ke Fount Ebrarde à lour mesun[7] delà
Le ray par sun devys ij. mil mars dona;
As dames de Brettayne, de saynt Supplice nomez,
De mesme le testament ount .c. mars coverez;
Les mesouns de Kartouse[8] ij. mil[9] mars en ount;
Et iij. mil mars le ordre de Graunt Mount;
Le ordre de Cystels[10] ij. mil mars avayt;
Le ordre de Clunye[11] mil mars rescayt;
Le ordre de Premoustre ij. c. mars d'esterlyns;
Les dames de Markayne c. mars ount[12] à vyns;
Al mesouns de Artoys,[13] ke sunt delà la mer
Devisa ij. c. mars, ne failly nul dener;
Al femmes[14] de Engleterre, de gentil lynage,
Trays c. mars d'or[15] à lour maryage;
A femmes[16] gentils et povers ke sunt en Normendye,
C. mars de fyn or devysait en aye;
C. mars d'or al darayn gentil femmes avaynt,
K'en la terre de Angeou descounsaylés estaynt.
Tut saunz le testament[17] ke le ray fesait,
Et saunz le graunt avoyr ke en Acres avait,

---

[1] *des mesals*, D.

[2] *A dames en habit*, B. *As dames en habit*, C. D.

[3] *de Mortayn en Vilers*, C.

[4] This line and the preceding are transposed in C. Robert of Brunne translates, "to tho religiouses."

[5] *le tienent pur gayne*, B. *ke tenent*, D.

[6] *A ceus qe*, B. *A cels de*, C. *A cels del*, D.

[7] *mesons*, B. C. D.

[8] *de Charnise*, B.

[9] *iij. mil*, C.

[10] *Cisteaus*, B.

[11] *Clony*, B.

[12] *ount* omitted in D.

[13] *de Arroys*, B. C. *As mesouns de Arroys*, D.

[14] *As femmes*, D.

[15] "A hunderth mark of gold," Robert of Brunne.

[16] *As femmes*, D.

[17] *le grant testament*, B.

To the houses of lepers of the same country
He gave by his will three hundred marks sterling;
To the ladies of the habit of Mortain and Villers
He left two hundred marks sterling in money,
And to the convents which are in Aquitaine
He left a thousand marks, they hold it well for gain;
And to those of Fontevraud, to their house beyond sea,
The king by his will gave two thousand marks,
The ladies of Britany, named of St. Supplice,
By the same will have received a hundred marks;
The houses of Chartreux have a thousand marks by it;
And the order of Grandmont three thousand marks;
The order of Citeaux had two thousand marks;
The order of Cluny receives a thousand marks;
The order of Premonstratenses two hundred marks in sterlings;
The ladies of Markayne have a hundred marks for wines;
To the houses of Artois, which are beyond the sea,
He left two hundred marks, not a penny was wanting;
To the women in England of gentle lineage
He left three hundred marks of gold for their marriage;
To the women, gentle and poor, who are in Normandy
He left for an aid a hundred marks of fine gold;
A hundred marks of gold finally had gentle women,
Who in the land of Anjou were without friends.
Besides the will which the king made,
And besides the great wealth which he had in Acre,

A les religiouns, as quels[1] avaunt prestait,
Quaraunte mil mars pur Deu pardonait.

Henry's visit to Paris.

Kaunt le ray Henry ad fet sun testament,
Al parlement de Fraunce demaunde amendement.[2]
Tuz les melz vanez de Dovre à Derwent
Sunt of le ray alez atyrez richement;
Dunt parmy Parys est dit communement,
Ke unkes virent rays of si bele gent.
Henry du ray de Fraunce demaunde[3] amendement.
Les .xij. pers se levent,[4] et vount parler ent,
Et[5] entre les .ij. rays fount acordement.
Le ray Henry revent kaunt fet ad sun talent.

En l'an suaunt après, à la my esté,
Countes et barouns le ray ad[6] maundé,
Parlement tenir volt à sa cyté,

The king of Scotland goes to the parliament at Oxford.

Cel houre en Oxenforde; par bres[7] l'ad nouncyé
Al ray William d'Escoce, et cyl i vynt de gré;[8]
Devaunt le ray Henry ilokes ad joré
Ke à Everwyk vendrayt, of klers, of barné,[9]
A l'Assumpcioun Marye la mere Dé.
Sun serement ad tenuz de fraunche volunté;
Ses clers et sun barnage[10] à Everwyk ad mené.
Al rays et ad sun fiz,[11] par lettre confermé,
Ount els trestuz fet homage et fealté,

Arrangements between the two countries.

Et ke le eglyse d'Escoce serrait obligé
Al mouster de Engleterre, cum al primalté.[12]
Et si le ray d'Escoce sait jammès trové
Encountre sun seygnur Henry avaunt nomé,
Les clers et les barouns d'Escoce ount graunté,

---

[1] *Al religions à quels*, C. *As religiouns as quels*, D.

[2] *du France son chemin emprent*, B. C. and D., which has *de Fraunce*. The reading of the three MSS. probably the correct one.

[3] *maunde*, C.

[4] *qe levent*, D.

[5] *Et* omitted in B.

[6] *ad le rei*, B. C. D.

[7] *par bref*, B. C. D.

[8] *e od barné*, B.

[9] *of clers et ouf barné*, C. *oue clérs, od barné*, D.

[10] *son barné*, B.

[11] *e son fitz*, B.

[12] *de l'Angleterre com à primalté* C.

To the abbeys, to which he before advanced loans,
He forgave for God's sake a thousand marks.

When king Henry had made his testament
He demands amends of the parliament of France.
All the men of most worth from Dover to Derwent
Are gone with the king, in rich attire,
Of which it is commonly said in Paris,
That they never saw a king with such a fair retinue.
Henry demands amends of the king of France.
The twelve peers rise, and go to confer on it,
And effect an agreement between the two kings.
King Henry returns when he has done his will.

In the year following after, at Midsummer,
The king has sent for earls and barons,
He will hold a parliament at his city,
This time in Oxford; he has announced it by writs
To king William of Scotland, and he came there willingly;
There before king Henry he has sworn
That he would come to York, with clergy and barons,
At the Assumption of Mary the mother of God.
He has kept his oath by free will;
He has brought his clergy and his barons to York.
To the king and his son, by letter confirmed,
They have all performed homage and fealty,
And that the church of Scotland should be subject
To the church of England, as to the primacy.
And if the king of Scotland be ever found
Against his lord Henry before named,
The clergy and the barons of Scotland have granted,

Ke al ray[1] de Engleterre serrount touz doné,
Et le ray d'Escoce serrait[2] defyé;
Et ke nul felun Englays eschapé
Sait en la terre [le ray] d'Escoce[3] recetté;
Si, en la court le rays de Engleterre clamé,
Ne veygne et preygne agarde, sait-il appelé.[4]
Ausint de gent d'Escoce[5] est la pes tayllé,
Ke nul en Engleterre felount sait herbe[r]gé,
Si al bayllyf du pays ne face seureté,
Ke al ray d'Escoce, kaunt serra[6] chalengé,
Irra saunz debat, et là serra jugé.

The sovereignty of England acknowledged.

Le ray Henry est sage, et doute gylerye,
Il volt ke ço[7] covenaunt sait ben establye,
V. chastels ad resceu par taunt en sa ballye;
Quatre countes hostage[8] sunt en sa mercye,
Et xvj. chuvalers, chascun ad baronye.[9]
Kaunt Henry est seur de cel seygnurye,
Et le fet conuz par tut Albanye,[10]
Les chastels, les hostages, rend par curtaysy.
Par chartre enselé le ray d'Escoce se lye,
Et ly et ses hairs en successerye,

The Scottish king's homage.

A tenir Escoce of la manauntye
Par homage et servise, taunt cum homme ad vye,
Du ray de Engleterre; or est la pes fynye,
Et ly joven rays alez en Normendye.

Kaunt xxviii. aunz du tut[11] sunt passez
Ke le ray Henry ad tenu les regnez,
En le mays de August[12] à Kardoyl est alez;
Le seygnur de Galwaye, ke Rouland fu nomez,[13]

---

[1] *Et al ray*, C.
[2] *ferra*, B.
[3] *la tere le ray d'Escoce*, B. C. D.
[4] *s'il soit appellé*, B. C. D.
[5] *des genz d'Escoce*, C.
[6] *serrayt*, B. *serreit*, D.
[7] *qe ceste*, B. *qe cel*, D.
[8] *ostagers*, B. *hostagez*, C. *hostages*, D.
[9] *od baronie*, B.
[10] *parmy tot Albanye*, C. D.
[11] *de tut*, C.
[12] *de Haust*, D.
[13] *est nomez*, B.

That to the king of England they shall be all given,
And the king of Scotland should be defied;
And that no fugitive English felon
Be received into the land of the king of Scotland;
If, cited in the king of England's court,
He come not and take his judgment, be he appealed.
Similarly is the peace of the people of Scotland shaped,
That no felon be harboured in England,
Unless he make surety to the bailiff of the district,
That to the king of Scotland, when he shall be claimed,
He shall go without dispute, and there shall be judged.

King Henry is wise, and fears deceit,
He wills that this covenant be well established;
For this reason he has received into his keeping five castles,
Four earls are in his hands as hostages,
And sixteen knights, each has barony.
When Henry is assured of that lordship,
And the fact known through all Albany,
He restores by courtesy the castles and the hostages.
By charter sealed the king of Scotland binds himself,
Both him and his heirs who shall succeed,
To hold Scotland with the lordship
By homage and service, all their lives,
Of the king of England; now is the peace completed,
And the young king gone into Normandy.

When twenty-eight years are entirely past
That king Henry has held the kingdoms,
In the month of August he is gone to Carlisle;
The lord of Galway, who was named Rouland,

Et David, frere le ray [d'Escoce avant nomez,][1]
Sunt venuz à ray[2] Henry le senez,
Galway clayment tenir, cum lur herytez,
De ly et de ses hairs par homage[3] et fealtez,
Death of Henry the young king. Al ray Henry le fount; sa pes loure [est][4] grauntez.
Henry sun [fitz][5] cel houre fu mort, et enterrez
A Roanne[6] en Normendye, à Nostre Dame de prez.

Après la mort Baldewyn le Mesel, ray de Jerusalem, vynt sun successour en Engleterre quere ayde.

Death of Baldwin king of Jerusalem, and misfortunes of the Holy Land. Kaunt le joven ray Henry mort estait,
Baldewyn le Mesel, ke une feylle avait,
En Jerusalem noblement regnait,
Enaynt[7] et coroné, unkes sur ly gaynait
Sarazyn plain pé de terre k'il guyait.
Si orde fu en lepre à nul ne communait;
En bataille kaunt il vint, les Sarazyns chascait.
Chuvaler estraunge of ly demorait,
William de Aquitayne home ly appelait;
Kant Baldewyn fu mort, sa fillye esposait,
Et de Jerusalem fu rays par tel drait.
Après la mort Baldewyn, la guere començait,
Et la descomfiture sur Krystyens tornait.
Le ray William ilokes[8] demorer ne poait,
Mès vent en Engleterre, où aide aver quidait;
Et al ray Henry pytousement parlayt,[9]
Coment la Terre Sainte le soldan destruait,

[1] *frere le rei d'Escoce avaunt parlez*, B. *frere le reys d'Escoce avant nomez*, C. The line is omitted in D. *frere le ray Henry le senez*, A.
[2] *al reys*, C. D.
[3] *par home*, B.
[4] *lur est grantez*, B. D. *lour ad grantez*, C.
[5] *sun fitz*, B. C. D. *frere*, A.
[6] *A Rohan*, B. *A Reme*, C. D.
[7] *Enoynt* B. C. D. *Quaynt et coroné*, A.
[8] *de illoque*, B.
[9] *pitousement moustreit*, B. D. *Et le rey Henri pitusement priayt*, C.

And David, brother of the king of Scotland before named,
Are come to king Henry the wise;
They claim to hold Galway, as their inheritance,
Of him and of his heirs by homage and fealty;
They perform it to king Henry; his peace is granted them.
Henry his son at this time was dead, and buried
At Rouen in Normandy, in Notre Dame des Prés.

After the death of Baldwin the Leper, king of Jerusalem, his successor came into England to seek aid.

When the young king Henry was dead,
Baldwin the Leper, who had one daughter,
Reigned nobly in Jerusalem,
Anointed and crowned, never from him gained
The Saracen a full foot of land which he ruled.
So foul was he in leprosy that he held communion with nobody;
When he came into battle, he put the Saracens to flight.
A foreign knight dwelt with him,
People called him William of Aquitaine;
When Baldwin was dead, he married his daughter,
And was king of Jerusalem by that right.
After the death of Baldwin, war began,
And defeat turned upon the Christians.
King William could not remain there,
But came into England, where he thought to have aid;
And told king Henry feelingly,
How the soldan was destroying the Holy Land,

Henry promises to assist Acre.

Ly priast k'yl venist,[1] si noun Akres serrait
En main de Sarazyn, ke à l'oure l'assegait.[2]
Le rays ly respount, et du dolur[3] lermait,
" Moun fiz ayné [est mort],[4] à ky ma terre devait[5]
" Après ma mort descendre, coroune pur ço[6] portait,
" Si jo fus[7] hors de terre, la guere se moverait;
" Si jo i alasse, mon fiz Richard irrait,
" Et sun[8] heritage par aventure perdrait ;
" Mès ayde purveroums ke Akres salvé sait."
Le ray William repaire of molz riche douns,
Et vent al ray de Fraunce, et moustre[9] ses resuns ;
Et ly ray Phelippe ad chargé ses barouns,
Ke al ray William facent le respouns.[10]
Les xij. pers[11] ount fet loure discuciouns,
Dyent al ray Phelippe, " Escotez nos sermouns,

The French king's answer.

" Deçà la mere de Grece[12] sunt deus regiouns,
" Engleterre et Fraunce, en divers[13] baundouns.
" Henry, rays Englays, tent argent à fusouns ;
" Ses deus fiz,[14] Richard et Jon, sunt forz et feluns ;
" Si en la Terre Sainte ws et nous[15] fussums,
" Par cas pussums perdre terre[16] et mesouns.
" Mès kaunt le ray Henry, ses fiz, et ses Gascouns
" Irrount cele part, nous serroums[17] compaynouns."
Le ray William retorne à ses possessiouns.

Henry at Becket's shrine.

Henry fiz l'emperyce fet molt graunt honurs
Al fertre saint Thomas, où sovent gist en plurs.
Vj. auns après vesquit[18] en paynes et dolours ;
En Normendye s'en va, et chet en langours.

---

[1] *Li pria q'il venit*, B. D.
[2] *qe à lower le segait*, C.
[3] *et de dolour*, D.
[4] *Mon fitz ainez est mort*, B. C. D.
[5] *donait*, C.
[6] *cornu pur ceo*, C.
[7] *Si jeo fusse*, B. D.
[8] *A son*, B.
[9] *de Fraunce, ly moustrer*, C. D.
[10] *les respouns*, C. D.
[11] *Les xij. peres*, D.
[12] *Dekes al mere de Grece*, C.
[13] *endevers*, C.
[14] *Ses fitz*, B.
[15] *nous et vous*, C.
[16] *terres*, C.
[17] *vus serrunt compaygnouns*, B. C. D.
[18] *vesquit après*, C.

Prayed him that he would come, otherwise Acre would be
In the hand of the Saracen, who at that time was
besieging it.
The king replied to him, and shed tears of grief:
" My eldest son is dead, to whom my land ought
" To descend after my death, wherefore he bore crown,
" If I were out of the land, war would be stirred up ;
" If I went there, my son Richard would go,
" And by chance would lose his heritage ;
" But we will provide aid that Acre be saved."

King William returns with very rich gifts,
And comes to the king of France, and explains his
mission ;
And king Philip has charged his barons
That they should make the reply to king William.
The twelve peers have concluded their discussions,
Say to king Philip, " Hear our advice,
" On this side the sea of Greece are two kingdoms,
" England and France, under different powers.
" Henry, the English king, possesses money in abun-
" dance ;
" His two sons, Richard and John, are strong and
" wicked ;
" If you and we were in the Holy Land,
" Perhaps we might lose land and houses.
" But when king Henry, his sons, and his Gascons
" Shall go thither, we will be companions."
King William returns to his possessions.

Henry son of the empress does very great honours
To the shrine of St. Thomas, where he often lies in tears.
He lived six years after in pains and griefs ;
He goes into Normandy, and falls into weakness.

Richard, sun fiz, ly vent[1] pur solaz et soccours;
Le pere ly charge et prie, pur Deu et ses honurs,
Ke en la Terre Sainte use ses valours;
Aver ly doune assez dount porra fere le cours.[2]
Richard dit "Volenters, par saynt Martyn[3] de Tours."

Death of Henry II.

Après xxxiiij. aunz, vj. mays, et xij. jours,
Del regalté ray Henry cessaynt les labours;
Il gist al Fount-Ebrarde à l'abbaye[4] des sorours.

Anno Domini M°. *centesimo octogesimo nono.*

En le mays[5] de Septembre, le dymaynge primer,
Le primat de Caunterbyre, Baldwyn, vint corouner
Le bon ray Richard tut drait à Westmouster.

Richard I. crowned.

L'elyt de Everwyk le ray fet maunder,[6]
Vynt à cele feste, Geffray le day nomer,[7]
Sun frere fu par pere, et plus[8] le dait amer;
Saunt quere l'apostoyle ly fist[9] confermer.
Le pallyoun[10] de Rome ly vint par messager.

Venuz sunt al rays ly counte et ly baroun,
Chuvaler et sergaunt parmy la regioun,
Cytayn et burgays, cum ben fu[11] resoun;
Il prent les homages[12] les fealtez en soun,

He prepares his journey to the Holy Land.

Establye sa pes, se purvait garnysount
Devers la Terre Sainte, pur la capcioun
De Akre, ke fu prise par Sarazyn feloun.
Englays et Normaunz, chuvalers en guerdoun,
Demorent of le ray par convencioun.[13]

[1] *son fiz, i ccent*, D.
[2] *fere les thours*, C.
[3] *Martyn*, omitted in B.
[4] *en l'abbay*, C.
[5] *en mois*, B. C. D. Richard I. was crowned on Sunday, Sept. 3, 1189.
[6] *le rei le fet maunder*, B. C. D.
[7] *qe Geffrai doi nomer*, B. C. D.
[8] *en plus*, C. D.
[9] *Sanz qwere l'apostoylle li fet*, C. *Saunz quere le apostoyle ly fist*, D.
[10] *Le pallium*, C.
[11] *cum fu bien reson*, B. D.
[12] *ses homages*, B. *Ly prent les homages*, D.
[13] *en convencioun*, D.

Richard, his son, comes to him there for solace and
succour ;
The king charges and prays him, for the sake of God
and his honours,
That he employ his valour in the Holy Land ;
He gives him wealth enough, with which he may
execute the expedition.
Richard says, " Willingly, by St. Martin of Tours."
After thirty-three years, six months, and twelve days,
The labours of the royalty of king Henry ceased ;
He lies at Fontevraud in the abbey of the sisters.

Anno Domini 1189.

On the first Sunday in the month of September,
The primate of Canterbury, Baldwin, came to crown
The good king Richard straight at Westminster.
The king sent for the elect of York,
He came to that feast, I must name him Geoffrey.
He was his brother by the father, the more he ought
to love him ;
Without going to the pope, he caused him to be con-
firmed.
The pallium came to him from Rome by a messenger.

To the king are come the earls and barons,
Knights and serjeants throughout the kingdom,
Citizens and burgesses, as it was quite right.
He takes all their homages and their fealties,
Establishes his peace, and provides forces
Towards the Holy Land, for the capture
Of Acre, which was taken by the wicked Saracen.
English and Normans, knights in pay,
Remain with the king by agreement.

Sun pere ly lessa deners à fusoun ;
La aler ly comaunde sur benyçoun.[1]

The suspicions of the king of France.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce fust à Saynt Dynye [2]
En privé parlement, où il ad oye
[K]e le ray[3] Richard of sa chuvalerye
Bye quere sur Sarazyn la terre de Solye.
A Parys s'en va, et barnez et clergye
Fet là venir à ly, devotement les prie
De aide et [de] counsail[4] sur la paenerye ;
Et dist, "Le ray Richard,[5] par sa surquiderye,
"Volt embler cel vayage saunz ma compaynye."
Escotez ore coment le ray[6] Phelippe dist folye.
Al parlement de Fraunce sunt venuz messagers
A ly ray Phelippe et à les xij. pers[7]
Par le ray Richard, counte de Payters,
Le counte de Albemarle,[8] et ly quens Roger,
Sir Lucas de Lucye, et Robert de Coyners,[9]
Saluent sire Phelippe et ses counsaillers.

Richard's message to him.

Dist ly quens de Albemarle,[10] "Sir, en graunt amurs
"Te salut nostre rays, cum fere dait[11] sun seygnur.
"Te maunde ke la noyse et tut le graunt[12] clamour
"Ke de Akre est venuz, à tuz est dolour;
"Mort sunt les Kristiens, nul i vist cel[13] jour ;
"Pur quai le ray Richard te prie, pur l'amour
"Ke morust en la croyce humayne Salveour,
"Aydez as Kristyens[14] en ço graunt[15] tristour.

---

[1] *Aler li manda sur sa benisçon*, B. *L'aler ly comaunda sur sa benisçoun*, C. D.

[2] *Dionie*, B. C.

[3] *Qe le rey*, B. D. *De*, A.

[4] *e de conseil*, B. C. D.

[5] *Et le rey Richard*, C.

[6] *coment rei P.*, B.

[7] *e à ses xij. peres*, B. *et al xii. peers*, C.

[8] *Aumarle*, B. *Almarle*, D. Robert of Brunne has here, "Of "Almarle erle William, and an erle "Rogers."

[9] *de Coigners*, B. *Coygners*, C. D. "de Coynguers," Robert of Brunne.

[10] *Aumarle*, B.

[11] *com sire dait*, C.

[12] *et le grant*, C. D.

[13] *nul n'i vist ceo*, B. *ceo*, D

[14] *au Cristiens*, C.

[15] *en cel grant*, D.

His father left him money in abundance;
Enjoins him the expedition on his blessing.

King Philip of France was at St. Denis
In private conference, where he has heard
That king Richard, with his knights,
Is designing to seek the land of Syria from the Saracen.
He proceeds to Paris, and barons and clergy
He summons to him there, prays them earnestly
For aid and for advice against the pagans;
And says, " King Richard, through his presumption,
" Will steal this voyage without my company."
Hear now how king Philip talked foolishness.

To the parliament of Paris are come, as messengers
To king Philip and to the twelve peers
From king Richard, the earl of Poitiers,
The earl of Albemarle, and the earl Roger,
Sir Lucas de Lucy, and Robert de Coniers,
They salute sire Philip and his councillors.

Says the earl of Albemarle, " Sire, in great love
" Our king salutes thee, as he ought to do his lord.
" He sends thee word that the rumour and all the
" great outcry
" That is come from Acre, is grief to all;
" The Christians are dead, not one is alive there at
" this day;
" Wherefore king Richard prays thee, for the love
" Of him who died on the cross the Saviour of man-
" kind,
" Help the Christians in this great sorrow.

" Le ray Richard s'atyre, ne volt aver sojour:
" Si tu as de ly et il de tay succour,
" La terre est regayné, molt serrayt graunt honur."
Les xij. pers de Fraunce al ray Phelippe ount dit,
" Sir, le duk Richard n'est pas ray petit;
" Plus vaillaunt seygnur huy ne port habit.
" Larges sunt les terres ke sun pere conquist;
" Argent ad saunz noumbre, chuvalers par escrit
" Sunt à ly lyez, as quels[1] saunz countredit
" Akres ert renduz par Richard ray elyt;
" Lesser sa compaynye à Deu serrait despyt."

Philipjoins Richard in the Crusade.

Le ray Phelippe remaunde molt curtaysement,
Et al ray Richard mercy[2] molt sovent
Sa bone volunté et sun maundement;
Ly maunde k'il bye passer à Marsyl verrayment
Le primer jour de Marce, si Deu prest le vent;[3]
Et prie a[l ray] Richard[4] et à sa bone gent,
Ke cel aler ne lessent pur nuly[5] prechement.

The latter collects money for the undertaking.

Kaunt le ray Richard les respouns[6] savait
De Phelippe ray[7] de Fraunce, sun counsail assemblait,
Et trestut le moble ke en Engleterre avait
Et partye de ses terres vendre comaundait,
Ne cyté, ne burge, ne marchaunt taillayt,
Ne disme, ne vyntyme, à clers[8] demaundait.
Le evesk de Dureme Sadberge[9] achatait,

Sells lands.

Of le wapentak, pur avoyr k'il donayt.
Le eveske de Wyncestre issi[10] barganayt,

---

[1] *ad quel*, C. *à quels*, D.

[2] *mercyst*, C. D.

[3] *si Dieu li preste vent*, B. *ly prest vent*, C. D.

[4] *al rey Richard*, B. C. D.

[5] *pur nul*, C.

[6] *le respons*, B.

[7] *Du rei Philip de*, B. *De Philipp rey de F.*, C. A. reads *Ke Phelippe*, which is evidently incorrect.

[8] *de clers*, B. D. *de vytteime des clers* C.

[9] *Saberg*, B., and Robert of Brunne. *Sagberge*, D. It has been supposed to be Sedgefield in the county of Durham.

[10] *issint*, B. C.

" King Richard is preparing, he will not have delay ;
" If thou hast of him, and he of thee, assistance,
" The land is regained, it would be very great honour."

The twelve peers of France have said to king Philip,
" Sire, duke Richard is no little king ;
" No more valiant lord wears the garb at this day.
" Broad are the lands which his father conquered ;
" Money he has without count, knights by writing
" Are bound to him, to whom without contradiction
" Acres will be rendered through Richard the king
" elect ;
" To leave his company would be an affront to God."

King Philip sends back very courteously,
And thanks king Richard very often
For his good will and his message ;
He says he intends to proceed to Marseilles truly
On the first day of March, if God grant the wind ;
And prays king Richard and his good people,
That they abandon not this expedition for anybody's
preaching.

When king Richard knew the reply
Of Philip king of France, he assembled his council,
And all the goods that he had in England
And part of his lands commanded to be sold,
Nor taxed either city, or borough, or merchant,
Nor asked of the clergy either tenth or twentieth.
The bishop of Durham bought Sadberg,
With the wapentake, for the wealth which he gave.
The bishop of Winchester similarly bargained,

Ke le ray Richard pur argent ly feffait
De deus bons maners, of kaunt ke aportenait.[1]
De tel entendement le ray Richard estait,
Ke de autry avoyr esplaiter se dotait
En la Terre Sainte, où aller beayt.
Obtains money from the king of Scotland.
Partaunt al ray d'Escoce tost maunder fesait
Venir fere sa pes, de kaunt ke ly devait.[2]
En le mays de Novembre[3] à Caunterbyre tut drait
William ray d'Escoce vint of graunt esplait,
Et of le ray Richard taun[t] bel là parlayt,
Ke le ray Richard sun homage là rescait
Pur terres ke de ly en Engleterre tenait ;
Et sur ço fist sa pes, et countez ly liverayt
Xvj. mil lyvres[4] pur le graunt surfait
Ke le ray Richard à William pardonait,
William comes to London.
Salve les servises ke Malcolm solait
Fere al rays Englays, et devait de drayt,
En venaunt, en alaunt,[5] kaunt maundez serrait
Al parlement de Loundres, et sa livré prendrait,
Cum covenaunt taillé entre els volait.
Et le ray Richard, saunz contek et saunz plait,
Rokesburge et Berwik al ray William rendait,
La une part et l'altre ottraye ke si[6] sait.
Richard appoints guardians of the kingdom.
William ray d'Escoce ad pris ses congez,
Repaire en sun pais à ses parentez.
Le ray Richard demort entre ses barnez,
Establye deus gardayns de tut[7] ses regnez ;
Huge de Durem[8] eveske renomez,

---

[1] *ouf quanque portenait*, C. *purtenayt*, D.

[2] *de quantq'il deveit*, B.

[3] Robert of Brunne has it, "The "moneth of Novembre, after Al- "halwemesse."

[4] Robert of Brunne has, "sexti "thousand pounde." According to Roger de Hoveden king William paid ten thousand marks sterling.

[5] *En venaunt et en alaunt*, D.

[6] *La une parte à l'autre outrahe si*, C.

[7] *Establi gardeyns à touz ses r.* B. *de tuz*, C. D.

[8] *Hugo de Dureme*, D.

That king Richard for money enfeoffed him
With two good manors, and all that pertained to them.
Of such sentiment was king Richard,
That he was afraid of making use of other people's property
In the Holy Land, whither he designed to go.
For this cause he sent immediately to call the king of Scotland
To come and make his peace, of all that he owed him.
In the month of November, direct to Canterbury
William king of Scotland came with great retinue,
And spoke so fair there with king Richard,
That king Richard received his homage there
For the lands which he held of him in England;
And thereupon he made his peace, and delivered him counted
Sixteen thousand pounds for the great misdeed
Which king Richard pardoned to William,
Save the services which Malcolm used
To do to the king of England, and ought by right,
In coming and going, when he should be summoned
To the parliament of London, and should take his livery,
As the agreement concluded between them willed;
And king Richard, without strife and without dispute,
Delivered up Roxburgh and Berwick to king William,
One part and the other grants that it be so.

William king of Scotland has taken his leave,
Returns into his country to his kindred.
King Richard remains among his barons,
Appoints two guardians of all his kingdoms;
Hugh the renowned bishop of Durham,

Et William le evesk[1] de Ely, sunt chargez
Justices appointed. Garder la regioun of les dignetez.
Chuvalers justises les sunt associez,
Huge[2] Bardolf, et William le Mareschal clamez,
Geffray le fiz Pers, chuvaler avisez,
William de la Bruere fu le quarte nomez,
Al plez de la coroune et maintenir les feez.
Kaunt le ray Richard sa terre ad establye,
Richard's departue La garde comaundé[3] et la justiserye,
Se mette en mer à Dover devers Normendye,
Où fet sa purveaunce de aler en Solye.[4]
En sa cité de Roanne,[5] of sa chuvalerye,
Tint ses Noelez of trop graunt noblye.
Le Lundy primer après la Tiphanye[6]
Le ray de Fraunce et ly[7] al Gué de Saint Remye[8]
Tindrent parlement dount fere la compaynye
Union between the two kings. Ferme[9] pur conquere sur la paenerye.
Ly un et ly altre par escrit se lye
Fere le pelrinage saunz fraude et boydye.
Freres sunt jorez, pur quai la clergye
Ad doné la sentence sur la flechaunt partye.
Le ray Phelippe s'en va de ilokes à Saint Dynye.[10]
Le ray Richard s'en va purver sa navye
Des tutes les countrez[11] parmy sa seygnurye,
Et guiours[12] de sun host, les nouns noun ay oblye.
Commanders of the fleet. Li ercevesk de [Aneus][13] daun Gerard par noun,
Et li bon eveske Bernard de Bayoun,
Richard de Camevile, et Robert de Sabloun,[14]

---

[1] *William evesqe*, C.
[2] *Hugo*, D.
[3] *ad comaundé*, C.
[4] *à Sulie*, B. *Sully*, Robert of Brunne.
[5] *de Rome*, C. *de Rone*, D.
[6] *le Teopinné*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "The Monen-" day that felle to be next after the " tuelft day."
[7] *à ly*, C.
[8] Robert of Brunne says, "at " the river of S. Rymay."
[9] *Freine*, B.
[10] *Dionie*, B. C.
[11] *De tote les countés*, C.
[12] *les gwiburs*, C.
[13] Omitted in A.; here supplied from B. *Auyns*, C. D. *Anxus*, Robert of Brunne.
[14] *de Gobloun*, C. *de Sabloun*, Robert of Brunne.

And William bishop of Ely, are charged
To guard the kingdom with the dignities.
Knights justices are associated with them,
Hugh Bardolf, and William entitled the Marshal,
Geoffrey fitz Peter, a prudent knight,
William de la Bruyere the fourth was named,
To the pleas of the crown and to maintain the fees.

When king Richard has settled his land,
Has ordered the guardianship and the administration
of justice,
He puts to sea at Dover towards Normandy,
Where he makes his provision for going into Syria.
In his city of Rouen, with his knights,
He held his Christmas with very great nobility.
The first Monday after the Epiphany
The king of France and he at Vé St. Remy
Held conference, in order to make their company
Powerful for conquest over the pagans.
One and the other binds himself by writing
To perform the pilgrimage without fraud and deceit.
They are sworn brothers, wherefore the clergy
Has pronounced the curse on the party which fails.
King Philip departs thence to St. Denys.
King Richard goes to provide his navy
From all the countries throughout his lordship,
And commanders of his host, I have not forgotten
their names.

The archbishop of Auxienne, named dan Gerard,
And the good bishop Bernard of Bayonne,
Richard de Camville, and Robert de Sabul,

Et William de Forz,[1] sire de Oleroun,
Ount les nefs le rays en proteccioun,
A guyer par mer of sa garnisoun
En la Terre Sainte sur Sarazyn feloun.
Le ray Richard comaunde ke[2] sanz evasioun
Aryvent en Marsil[3] sur sa benyçoun.[4]
They sail. La primer semayn de la Passioun
Al sigle ount le vent li clerk et ly baroun.[5]
Des ore les condye[6] Deus et Saint Symoun.
Parmy cel halte mer siglent al raundoun,
Cent et x. graunz nefs, defalte de avyroun[7]
N'ad nul endrait de sai, ne[8] mestre de garçoun ;
Chascun a gens assez ke sevent lur lesçoun.[9]
Overtaken by a storm. Le quinte jour après se[10] chaunga le vent,
La mer de Brettayne ount vayné quitement ;[11]
En la mer d'Espayne sunt chascez par tourment
Entre Saracyns, mès Deu omnipotent
Les salva molt ben de lur encombrement.
X. nefs de la route sunt desavisement
Forsvées des altres, ly mestres est dolent.
Une fu là naé,[12] de Depe[13] verraiment ;
Les ix. sunt de Loundres,[14] ke cryent durement
Sur Deu et sur sa mere, priaunt devotement
Ke salver les voille, les garde, et les defent,
Are saved by a miracle. Pur l'amour Thomas,[15] ke martirement
Suffrist pur sainte[16] eglise ; et Deu certaynement
Oyst la priere, escotez ore coment.

---

[1] *William de Fortez*, Robert of Brunne.

[2] *ke*, omitted in B.

[3] *Arivent à Marsile*, B. C.

[4] *sur la benyçoun*, D. Robert of Brunne translates here,

" Richard said tham his wille,
" ' Mariners, if ze moun,
" ' Aryves in to Marsille, with
" ' Godes benisoun.' "

[5] *e clerk e baroun*, B.

[6] *les comaunde*, C.

[7] *defaut aviroun*, C.

[8] *ne*, omitted in B. *de se, ne mestre ne garçoun*, D.

[9] *lour escoun*, B.

[10] *si*, B.

[11] *unt wainé cointement*, B. *ount waigné quitement*, C.

[12] *naeez*, B.

[13] *de Cepe*, C.

[14] *Les x. sont à Londres*, C.

[15] *Sein Thomas*, B.

[16] *par saint*, C.

And William de Fortz, lord of Oleron,
Have under their charge the king's ships,
To lead by sea with his host
Into the Holy Land against the wicked Saracen.
King Richard commands that, without fail,
They arrive at Marseilles, on his blessing.
The first week of the Passion
The clergy and barons have the wind in their sails.
Henceforth be their guide God and St. Simon.
Through that high sea they sail rapidly,
A hundred and ten great ships, want of oar
No one had in regard of itself, nor need of hands;
Each has men enough who know their business.

The fifth day afterwards the wind changed;
They have gained in safety the sea of Britany;
They are driven by tempest into the sea of Spain,
Among Saracens, but God Almighty
Saved them very well from their danger,
Ten ships of the company are by mismanagement
Separated from the others, the master is in grief.
One was there sunk, a ship of Dieppe truly;
The nine belong to London, who cry earnestly
On God and on his mother, praying devoutly
That he will save them, keep them, and defend them,
For the love of Thomas, who martyrdom
Suffered for holy church; and God certainly
Listened to the prayer, hear now how.

En une nef de Loundres de ryche atiffement
The vision. Sunt deus bons cytayns, ke jovencels ount cent,
Prest pur Deu servir cum à pelryn apent.
Encost du governaille apparust bonement [1]
Un bon erceveske [2] en revestement;
Un rays corouné près de ly s'estent,
Et pus un eveske,[3] veaunt cele gent.
Lors dist ly ercevesk à Loundrays verrayment,[4]
" Jo suy cyl sur ky ws cryez sovent,
" Thomas de Caunterbyre, Loundrays,[5] ne dotez ent;
" Saint Emoun [6] le Martir of may cy est present,[7]
" Et saint Nicolas, ky touz jours prestement
" Est aide al mariners,[8] les meyne salvement.
" Nous trays de Deu là sus [9] avoums comaundement
" Gaiter [10] les nefs Richard, et ws ensement."
Tost cessa le tempest [11] après le prechement.

Departure of the king of France. Taunt cum les nefs le rays Richard sunt en mer,[12]
Et ne sevent [13] quel part dayvent aryver,
Le ray de Fraunce et ly se fount assembler
A Lyouns sur la Roanne,[14] purveer et ordiner,
Où al quel [15] port porrount la mer entrer.
Lour hoste fu si graunde, ne poaint herberger
En cité, burge, ne vile, ensemble ne passer.
Felippe devers Gene [16] sun hoste fet aler;
Richard à Marsil passa [17] saunz targer.
Ilokes kant devaynt tromper à manger,[18]
Bataunt de Cecille vint un messager.[19]

---

[1] *verrayment*, C.
[2] *Un bel ercevesqe*, B. C. *Un bele ercevesqe*, D.
[3] *un altre eveske*, B.
[4] *doucement*, B. D. *à Loundrès doucement*, C.
[5] *Loundre*, C,
[6] *Edmoun*, B.
[7] *ou moy est à present*, B.
[8] *as mariners*, B. C. *à maryners*, D.
[9] *de Deu le roys*, C.
[10] *garder*, C. D.
[11] *la tempeste*, D.
[12] *le neifs Richard sunt entre mer*, B.
[13] *ne sovent*, C.
[14] *A Bouns sur le Rone*, C. *la Rone*, D.
[15] *à quel*, C. D.
[16] *Geuen*, C.
[17] *de Marsille passe*, C. *passe*, D.
[18] *al manger*, D.
[19] *vint messager*, B.

In a ship of London richly equipped
Are two good citizens, who have a hundred youths,
Ready to serve God as is a pilgrim's duty.
Beside the helm appeared truly
A good archbishop in his robes;
A crowned king stands near him,
And then a bishop, in the sight of these people.
Then said the archbishop in a low tone to the Londoners,
" I am he upon whom you call often,
" Thomas of Canterbury, Londoners, do not doubt it,
" St. Edmund the martyr is with me here present,
" And St. Nicholas, who always at hand
" Is an aid to the seamen, leads them safely.
" We three from God there above have command
" To watch over Richard's ships, and you likewise."
Immediately after the preaching the tempest ceased.

While the ships of king Richard are at sea,
And know not on what side they are to arrive,
The king of France and he hold a meeting
At Lyons on the Rhône, to provide and order
Where and at what port they will be able to put to sea.
Their army was so great, they could not lodge
In city, borough, or town, or pass together.
Philip causes his army to go towards Genoa;
Richard passed to Marseilles without delay.
There when they were on the point of sounding the horn for dinner,
A messenger came in haste from Sicily.

Changes in Sicily affecting king Richard.

La lettre la rayne de Cecille va doner
Al Richard[1] sun frere, et le[2] va counter,
Mort est le ray William, ke solait regner[3]
En Cecille of Jone, sore le riche[4] Richer;
Et ke le counte[5] Tancrede, combataunt chuvaler,
Cosyn le ray William, se fist coruner,
Et Jone la rayne en prisoun là fist[6] garder.
Pur quai le ray Richard se comence[7] coroucer;
Ses busces, ses galayes, fet[8] tost aprester,
Et pense al primour sa soer deliverer.
Avys[9] ly est k'il ad genz dount conquester
Cecille sur Tancrede, et vaindre[10] sun poer,
Si par pees ne voylle en resun acorder.

[*Anno Domini millesimo c. nonagesimo. Rex Ricardus transfretavit versus Terram Sanctam.*][11]

Richard hastens thither.

Le seine jour en August de l'an entytelé,[12]
Le bon rays Richard est en mer entré,
Tost s'en va vers Gene,[13] où il ad trové
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce malade en lyt coché.
Richard li confort, après prent congé,[14]
Et va devers Cecille of tute sa mesné.
Ad Tibre kant il vent, la pape l'ad maundé
Octave[15] sun cardinal, ke of ly ad parlé.

---

[1] *Au rei Richard*, B. *Al ray Richard*, C. D.

[2] *ele va counter*, C.

[3] *là regner*, B.

[4] *le rei R.*, B. *soer le rey*, C.

[5] *qe counqe*, B. *qe count*, C.

[6] *en prison fist g.*, B. C. D.

[7] *se comenca*, B. D.

[8] *fist*, B. *tost fet*, D.

[9] Instead of this and the following line, D. has one line:

Et Cecylle sur Tancrede par poer conquester.

[10] *reincre*, B. *reindre*, C.

[11] This rubric is inserted from B. and C.

[12] *entillé*, B. *de August de l'an en titelé*, C. *en Aust de l'an encyclé*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "The sevent day of hervest, in that "ilk yer."

[13] *en Gene*, B. *vers Genen*, D.

[14] *le rei confort, après il prent cungé*, B.

[15] *Octone*, B. *Octave son chardman*, C. "Sir Octobone," Robert of Brunne. Hoveden calls him Octavianus cardinal-bishop of Ostia.

He goes and gives the letter of the queen of Sicily
To Richard her brother, and proceeds to tell him,
King William is dead, who used to reign
In Sicily with Joan, the sister of king Richard,
And that earl Tancred, a warlike knight,
Cousin of king William, had caused himself to be crowned,
And caused Joan the queen to be kept there in prison.
Wherefore king Richard begins to be wroth;
Causes quickly to be put in readiness his busses and his galleys,
And thinks in the first place of delivering his sister.
It is his opinion that he has people enough to conquer
Sicily from Tancred, and to subdue his power,
Unless he will peacefully agree to reason.

Anno Domini 1190.

King Richard passed the sea towards the Holy Land.

The seventh day of August of the year given in the title,
The good king Richard has entered on the sea,
He goes immediately towards Genoa, where he has found
King Philip of France ill and confined to bed.
Richard comforts him, afterwards takes leave,
And goes towards Sicily with all his attendance.
When he comes to the Tiber, the pope has sent to him
Octavian his cardinal, who has conversed with him.

Illness of king Philip.

Le ray par taunt i est trays jours demoré,
[E le rey Philippe du lit relevé.][1]
A Meschine en Cecylle est Phelippe aryvé;
Et le ray Richard après i vint de gré.
Le jour de la croyce en aust renomé[2]
La navye Richard, dount fu desperé,[3]
Al port de Meschynes ly vint en salveté;
Forpris une de Depe,[4] ke fu forvayé.
Le terce jour après le ray ad sojorné,

Queen Joan set at liberty.

Ad ray de Cecille ad Richard prié
Delivrer ly[5] sa soer Jone en amysté.
Le ray Tankrede fu sage, dotait adversité,
Deliverait[6] la rayne of graunt honesté,
Et convayer la fist of tut sun barné
Tot drait à Meschines, sa principale cyté.
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce encountre l'est alé,
Of le ray Richard, ke cele ount mené
Al palays sun frere, où ele fust herbergé.

Richard reduces the isle of La Baniare.

Le ray Richard si tost en avaunt[7] estait,
En le floum de [la] Fare rychement entrayt;[8]
Le ylle de Labaniare,[9] ke un paen avait,
Et tynt des Cristyens pur [rent] k'il[10] donait,
Conquist le ray Richard, le paen[11] en chascayt.
Cel ylle à sa soer of gardayns assignait.
Un ylle i fu decost,[12] ke ly Griffoun gardayt,

[1] Omitted in A.; supplied from B. C. and D.

[2] *en haut renomé*, C. D.

[3] *dount fu feré*, B.

[4] *un depe*, C.

[5] *li* omitted in B.

[6] *Delivera*, B.

[7] *com avant estait*, C.

[8] *En le flum de la Fare derechef entroit*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne has translated this rather clumsily, "A water that closed it in that flum "was de la Fare."

[9] *Le ydle de Albemarle*, C.

[10] *pur rentes q'il*, B. *pur rent q'il*, C. D.

[11] *les paens*, C. D.

[12] *de costé*, B. D. *yile fu de costé*, C. Robert of Brunne singularly misunderstood this, and supposes that the isle was called Griffonie, "men cald it Griffonie," whereas Pierre de Langtoft says that Griffons, or Greeks, inhabited it. Griffonie would mean the empire of Greece.

The king on that account has remained there three
days,
And king Philip is risen from his bed.
Philip is arrived at Messina in Sicily;
And king Richard afterwards came there willingly.
The day of the Cross highly renowned
Richard's navy, of which he had lost hope,
Came in safety to him in the harbour of Messina;
Except one of Dieppe, which was lost.
The third day after the king had abidden there,
Richard has prayed the king of Sicily
To deliver to him in friendship his sister Joan.
King Tancred was wise, feared adversity,
Gave up the queen with great courtesy,
And caused her to be conveyed with all his barons
Direct to Messina, his principal city.
King Philip of France is gone to meet him,
With king Richard, who have brought her
To the palace of her brother, where she was lodged.

King Richard immediately came forward,
Entered the river of the Faro in rich array.
The isle of La Baniare, which a pagan possessed,
And held of the Christians for rent which he paid,
King Richard conquered, and drove the pagan out
of it.
This isle he assigned with guardians to his sister.
There was an island beside it, which the Greeks held;

Disputes with the city of Messina.

Le ray Richard la prist,[1] ly Griffoun la voydait.[2]
Ly citayn de Meschine le ray Richard dotait,
La porte de la cyté encountre ly fermayt;
Le contek en taunt entre els levait.
Par quai le ray Richard sun serement fesait,
Ke si le ray Tankrede amender ne volait[3]
Le outrage de ses cytayns, si com il durait,[4]
Et parfere sa demaunde, cum resun chaunterayt,[5]
Del testament le rays ke devaunt ly regnayt,
De chose[6] ke ad sa soer de dowerye appendait,
Si en amours[7] ne pust, par guere conquerait.

Conduct of the king of France.

Kaunt le ray de Fraunce entendist coment
Entre cels deus rays estait descordement,
De l'amur se entremyst, pur veirs molt faintement.[8]
Nun pur[9] ço le rays Tankrede curtaysement
Vint al ray Richard, of molz de bone gent,
Ly dist ke prest estait complir[10] sun talent,
Pur le ray William parfere[11] sun testament,

Behaviour of king Tancred,

Et de tuz conteks pur ly et pur sa gent
A fere[12] sun assez, en ore ou en argent;
Et dist ke à sa soer avait[13] plainement
Fet ke fere dust,[14] par tesmoynement
De la dame mesme, ke tost vint present,[15]
Et dist, "Le ray Tankrede m'ad fet verrayment
" Taunt cum fere devait,[16] de kaunt ke à may appent;

And of queen Joan.

" Mès à tay, moun frere, respoundre ly covent

---

[1] *Le rei tost le prist*, B.
[2] *le Griffun voidait*, C.
[3] *ne vodreit*, B. C. *ne voudrait*, D.
[4] *il disoit*, B. *il dirrait*, C. *Le outrage des cytayns sicum ly dirrait*, D.
[5] *voleit*, B.
[6] *Des choses*, B. *Ces choses qe soer sa soer de dowere*, C. *de dower*, D.
[7] *en amour*, B.
[8] *feyntement*, D.
[9] *Nounpas pur*, B. *Noun pur ce*, D.
[10] *acomplit*, B.
[11] *pur fere*, C.
[12] *Affere*, C.
[13] *fet avoit*, B
[14] *Quanqe fere deit*, B. *Fet qe feere dait*, C. D.
[15] *vient en present*, B. C.
[16] *fere doit*, B.

King Richard took it; the Greek abandoned it.
The citizen of Messina feared king Richard,
Shut against him the gate of the city;
Consequently strife arose between them.
Through which king Richard made his oath,
That if king Tancred would not make amends
For the insolence of his citizens, as he ought,
And comply with his demand, as reason would sing,
Concerning the will of the king who reigned before him,
Of things which belonged to his sister of dowry,
If he could not by love, he would obtain it by war.

When the king of France understood how
There was disagreement between these two kings,
He interfered to reconcile them, in truth very insincerely.
Nevertheless king Tancred courteously
Came to king Richard, with many good people,
Told him that he was ready to fulfil his desire
Of carrying out the will of king William,
And in all causes of strife for him and for his people
To do his best, in gold or in silver;
And said that he had to his sister fully
Done what he ought to do, by testimony
Of the lady herself, who soon came forward,
And said, " King Tancred has truly done for me
" As much as he ought to do, in all that relates to " me;
" But to thee, my brother, he has to answer

" De un graunt pavillyoun de ryche atyffement,
" De une table de or, de tresteles [1] ensement,
" De vessal argentays endorrez richement,
" Dount servir l'emperour à sun parlement.
" Mon seygnur le rays, à sun finement,
" A tay, Richard mon frere, devis[a] [2] seurement
" Les choses avaunt dites, dount tesmoyne ne ment."
Tancred makes his peace with Richard.
" Dame," dist Tankrede, " de son devisement
" Of mon seygnur le rays fray accordement."
Xl. mil ounces d'or le ray Tankrede ly tent.
Et le ray Richard, saunz plus dire, les prent,
Issi ke sun nevou Arthur, par descent [3]
Quens serrait de Brettayne, prendrait solempnement
La fillye Tankrede à femme, hair de sun tenement,
De pees perpetuel, d'amur [4] enterement.
Et de ço maryage ount fet confermement.
Taunt cum ço ij. rays sunt sur cele [5] dalyement,
Arrival of queen Eleanor.
La mere le ray Richard prent aryvement
Al port de Meschynes, de busces avait trent,
Estorez de vitaylle, à sun fiz les present.[6]
Phelippe quens de Flaundre, gentil ber et sage,
Fu dustre la rayne [7] of cele vesselage,[8]
Alyanore sa mere Richard de halt corage [9]
Une damoisele i mene, ky pere [10] par heritage
Fu rays de Naverne [11] de gentil lynage,
Berneger ad à noun,[12] plus bel de sun age
Fu nule part trové, ne de greignur parage.
De cele estait en Cypre fet le maryage
Of le ray Richard, par counsail sun [13] barnage.

---

[1] *des trestels*, C. D.
[2] *devisa*, B. *devise*, C.
[3] *qe par descent*, D.
[4] *de amour*, C.
[5] *cel* ii. *rays son sur tel*, C. *cels* ij. *reis sount sur tele*, D.
[6] *les prent*, C.
[7] *je la reygne*, C.
[8] *vasselage*, B.
[9] *la mere . . . . de fer corage*, B. *la mere*, D.
[10] *juvene, qe pere*, B.
[11] *de Naverre*, C.
[12] *Berngere ad noun*, B. *a noun*, C. *Bernege ad noun*, D. *Berengere*, in Robert of Brunne.
[13] *de son*, B.

" For a great pavillion of rich equipments,
" For a table of gold, with trestles likewise,
" For vessel of silver richly gilt,
" With which to serve the emperor at his parliament.
" My lord the king, at his end,
" Bequeathed surely to thee, Richard my brother,
" The things before named, of which witness lies not."
" Lady," said Tancred, " of his will
" I will make agreement with my lord the king."
King Tancred offered him forty thousand ounces of gold,
And king Richard, without more talk, accepts them,
On condition that his nephew Arthur, by descent
He would be count of Britany, should take solemnly
The daughter of Tancred to wife, the heir of his possessions.
For perpetual peace and love entirely.
And of that marriage they have made a confirmation.
While these two kings are in this business,
The mother of king Richard arrives
In the port of Messina; she had thirty busses
Laden with victuals, and presents them to her son.

Philip count of Flanders, a gentle baron and wise,
Was the queen's leader with that fleet.
Elianor, the mother of Richard, of high spirit,
Brings there a damsel, whose father by inheritance
Was king of Navarre of gentle lineage;
She was named Berengaria, a fairer of her age
Was found nowhere, nor of greater family.
Of her was made the marriage in Cyprus
With king Richard, by the advice of his barons.

Kaunt affyez estayent et purvou l'esposage,[1]
L[a] rayne Elianore[2] rethorne of sun menage
Pur[3] sun fiz Richard à Rome[4] en message.
Bernerger demort, ne pas cum hostage ;
La rayne de Cecille vers ly la prent en gage,
Et venent[5] ensemble cum oysels en cage.

King Richard at Catania.

Kant le ray Richard assez ad sojornez,
Et le ray Tankrede ad fet ses voluntez,
Ad Katayne[6] la cyté est Richard alez,
La toumbe saint Agate ad molt honurez.
Le ray Tankrede i est, of molz de ses barnez,
Et fet al ray [Richard reverenz assez].[7]
Ilokes of Tankrede ad trais jours demorez,

Tancred's cordiality.

De aler sun vayage après[8] ad pris congez.
Tankrede ly convaye de ilokes à deus jornez,
Et en amour graunt de doun ad[9] presentez
Quatre nefs chargez de deus maners de blez,
Quinz graunt galayes[10] pur guere apparaylliez,
Et plusurs autre choses ke cy ne sunt nomez.
Le ray Richard saunz plus à ly ad redonez
La meyllur espeye ke unkes fu forgez,
Ço fu Kaliburne, dount Arthur le senez
[Sei] solait[11] guyer en gueres et [en] mellez.[12]

He warns king Richard of the falseness of the king of France.

Lors ly dist Tankrede, "Deus, en ky poestez
" Les riches et les povers sunt abaundonez,
" Te salve,[13] ray Richard, et garde des enemystez[14]
" Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, et[15] de ses falsetez.

---

[1] *et purveez les passage*, C. *purveuz*, D.
[2] *Alienore*, B.
[3] *Par*, D.
[4] *Rohan*, B.
[5] *vivent*, B. C. D.
[6] *A Catayn*, C. *A Katayne*, D.
[7] The words within brackets are omitted by A,. and are supplied from B.
[8] *après* omitted in D.
[9] *en grant amour des douns l'ad*, B. *en grant amour du doun l'ad*, C. *en graunt amour de doun l'ad*, D.
[10] Robert of Brunne has "and five "other galies." But the French text is correct.
[11] *Sei soleit*, B. C. D.
[12] *en gwere et en medlez*, C.
[13] *Te sauve*, B.
[14] *de enemytez*, D.
[15] *et* omitted in B.

When they were affianced and the wedding provided,
Queen Elianor returns with her household
To Rome on a message for her son Richard.
Berengaria remains, not as hostage;
The queen of Sicily takes her to herself in pledge,
And they live together like birds in cage.

When king Richard has dwelt long enough,
And king Tancred has conformed with his wishes,
Richard is gone to the city of Catania,
And has much honoured the tomb of St. Agatha.
King Tancred is there, with many of his barons,
And makes to king Richard reverence enough.
There he has dwelt three days with Tancred,
Afterwards he has taken leave to go his voyage.
Tancred conducts him thence two days,
And in great love has presented to him in gift
Four ships charged with two kinds of wheat,
Fifteen great galleys equipped for war,
And several other things which are not named here.
King Richard without more has given him in return
The best sword that ever was forged;
That was Caliburn, with which Arthur the wise
Used to guide himself in wars and in battles.
Then Tancred said to him, " God, in whose power
" The rich and the poor are left,
" Preserve thee, king Richard, and guard thee from the
" enmity
" Of king Philip of France, and from his falseness.

" Par Huge [1] de Burgoyne, ke duk est clamez,
" Me maunda par sun [2] bref, sicom ws orrez,
" Ke trahy serray par tes [3] iniquitez;
" Et si guere entre nous fust continuez,
" En aide me serrait pur ws [4] mettre suz pez.
" Et, cher amy Richard, ke [5] jo dye veritez,
" Prenez,[6] sir, le bref, à ly le moustrez;
" Si il le volt dedire,[7] sur ly serra provez."
Le ray Richard le prent, ke devent irez,
Et le ray Tankrede à Deu l'ad comaundez.

Richard accuses Philip.

Le ray Richard repaire par molt graunt hatye
Arere à Meschines à sa chuvalerye;
Ilokes trové ad [8] sa soer et sa amye.
Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce daillier [ne] volt-il mye.[9]
Phelippe en ad mervaille, et quaintement espye,
Et maunde à Richard,[10] en noun de compaynye,
Quel houre et kaunt vodrait [11] aprester sa navye
Devers le sege de Akre, ke trop est saunz aye.
Richard respount et dit, molt serrait graunt folye,
[Mustrer consail à cil qi n'est pas amie;][12]
Et par sun bref demene sur ço ly certifye,
Par quai [13] de cel houre de ly ne se affye.[14]

The excuse of the king of France.

" Ben say," dist Phelippe, " ke ço signifye,
" Ke ço bref [fu] forgé [15] par graunt felonye
" Et pur ma soer Alyse, ke issint est guerpye [16]
" Pur cele de Nauverne; par Deu le fiz Marye,
" Ne serra pas issint, si Dé me preste vye."

---

[1] *Hugo*, D.
[2] *Me manda son*, B.
[3] *par vos i.*, B. C. D.
[4] *dont vous*, C. D.
[5] *E, mon cher ami, qe jeo*, B.
[6] *Pernez*, D.
[7] *S'il veut dedire*, C. *S'il volt dedire*, D.
[8] *ad trové*, B. C. D.
[9] *ne voet-il mie*, B.
[10] *à rai Richard*, B. *al rey Richard*, D.
[11] *vodra*, B. D.
[12] This line is omitted in A., and supplied here from B. C. D.
[13] *Pur quay*, C. D.
[14] This line is omitted in B.
[15] *fu forgé*, B.
[16] *Est pur ma soer Aleyse q'ensi est guerpie*, B. *Est pur ma soer Alice k'ensynt est gwerpye*, C. D.

" By Hugh of Burgundy, who is called duke,
" He sent me word by his letter, as you shall hear,
" That I should be betrayed by thy wickedness;
" And, if war were continued between us,
" He would give me assistance to put you under foot.
" And, dear friend Richard, that I tell truth,
" Take, sir, the letter, show it to him;
" If he seek to contradict it, it shall be proved upon
" him."
King Richard takes it, who becomes angered;
And king Tancred has bid him adieu.

King Richard returns with very great haste
Back to Messina to his chivalry;
There he has found his sister and his sweetheart.
With king Philip of France he will have no dealing.
Philip has wonder at it, and cunningly watches,
And sends to ask Richard, in the name of companion-
ship,
At what hour and when he would make ready his
navy
Towards the siege of Acre, which is too long without
aid.
Richard replies and says, it would be very great folly
To show council to him who is not a friend;
And he certifies him thereupon by his own letter,
Wherefore from that time he puts no trust in him.
" I know well," said Philip, " what that signifies,
" That that letter was forged through great wicked-
" ness,
" And for my sister Alice, who is thus deserted
" For her of Navarre; by God the son of Mary,
" It shall not be so, if God lend me life."

King Richard's explanation.

Respouns le ray[1] Phelippe kaunt Richard [ad] oye,[2]
Al matyn ly prove devaunt la clergye
Ke le ray sun pere, duk de Normendye,
Avait conu Alys kaunt le avait en ballye,
Et fillye engendrait, ke mort est et sevelye;
La lay de saint eglise trop serrait blemye,
Et Richard et Alyse[3] de Dampnedeu maldye,
Si en maryage Richard par là se lye.
"O,"[4] dist le ray Phelippe à ses[5] gens de Fraunce,
" En le ray Richard ne quiday descaivaunce,
" Gisors ly dona[y][6] of le apurtenaunce,
" Et x. mil mars, pur fere le alyaunce
" De ly et de ma sor, dount est ore destaunce.
" Des ore est moun avoyr et ma terre en balaunce,
" Et jo par tut trahi; par Deu et sa pussaunce,
" Si de mes covenauntes n'en ai restoraunce,
" Jo frai al ray Richard, en fet e en parlaunce,
" Desçà mer et delà, of moun poer grevaunce."
" Nai, sir," dist Richard, "lesset[7] ta manaunce;
" Tu averas tun avoyr, ta vile, of l'apendaunce."

The two kings are reconciled.

Les clers et les barnez ne soffrent[8] descordaunce
Entre cels .ij. rays, vount fere accordaunce;[9]
Richard de sun avoyr ly fet asseuraunce,
Et Gisors ly rend par bone tesmoniaunce;
Sa soer ly quite clayme, et prent aquitaunce,
Ke marier ly pusse saunz sa desturbaunce.

Philip proceeds to Acre.

Phelippe après l'acord ne fet [là][10] demoraunce,
Prent congé de Richard, et vers la mer se launce,
En Akres kaunt il veent, poy valt l'apparaunce,
Avaunt ke Richard i veent[11] ren i fet par chaunce.[12]

---

[1] *du rei*, B. *de rey*, C. *del rey*, D.
[2] *ad oie*, B. C. D.
[3] *de Aleyse*, C.
[4] *O*, omitted in C.
[5] *e ses*, B.
[6] *donay*, B. C. D.
[7] *lessez*, C. D.
[8] *ne soeffrunt*, C.
[9] *l'acordaunce*, B. C.
[10] *ne feit là*, B.
[11] *Richard veent*, C. *Richarde vint*, D.
[12] *rien n'i feit*, B.

When Richard has heard the reply of king Philip,
In the morning he proves to him before the clergy
That the king his father, duke of Normandy,
Had been intimate with Alice when he had her in ward,
And had begotten a daughter, who is dead and buried;
The law of holy church would be too much stained,
And Richard and Alice accursed of the Lord,
If Richard binds himself in marriage in that quarter.

" Oh," says king Philip to his people of France,
" I did not look for deceit in king Richard;
" I gave him Gisors with the appurtenance,
" And ten thousand marks, to make the alliance
" Of him and of my sister, of which there is now a breach.
" Henceforward my wealth and my land are in balance,
" And I everywhere betrayed; by God and his power,
" If I have not a restoration of my covenants,
" I will do to king Richard, in fact and in talk,
" On this side the sea and beyond, grievance to
" my power."
" Nay, sire," said Richard, " leave thy threat;
" Thou shalt have thy wealth, thy town, with the
" appurtenance."
The clergy and the barons suffer not discord
Between those two kings; they go to make accord;
Richard makes him assurance of his money,
And restores Gisors to him by good witness;
His sister cries him quit, and takes acquittance,
That she can marry without his interference.
Philip, after the agreement, makes no stay,
Takes leave of Richard, and hurries towards the sea,
When he comes to Acre, little worth is his appearance;
Before Richard comes there, he does nothing there as
it happens.

Richard's departure for Syria.

Après le ray Phelippe, le ray Richard remist,
Et hors de Meschines sun chastel abatist,
Ke, avaunt[1] Tankrede sa pes deservyst,
Pur recette avoyr ilokes lever fist ;[2]
Et kaunt amys estayent, abatre le promist,[3]
Ke nul enemy après ly tenist.[4]
Pur quai[5] al ray Tankrede damage avenist.[6]
Après de jour en altre sa navye purvist
Devers le sege d'Akre, et servir Jhesu Kryst.

Encounters a great tempest,

Sa soer et sa amye en une busce assist,
Et Roger Maukaele sun chuvaler suyst,[7]
Of busces et galayes et gens ke les sufyst.[8]
Cum en cele halte mer la navye venist,
Tempest trop horrible les busces surprist ;
Ly mariner al sigle encountre combatist.
Dame Jone la rayne Deus issint[9] requist

and is driven to Cyprus.

Ke salvement à porte[10] en Cypre descendist,
Et dame Berneger,[11] ke poy se joyst,
Pur ço ke sun seygnur de nul part i vist.
Deus busces i morirent, le chaunceler i peryst,[12]
Et le sel le rays entur sun col pendist.

Behaviour of the emperor Isaac.

Isake, ray de Cypre, les bens des morz[13] saysist,
Et kaunt ke furent vifs en sa prisoun mist.
Kaunt le ray Richard la meschaunce oyst,
Of tote sa navye i vint saunz respit,
Et al rays Ysake devotement escrit,
Ke, pur l'amur cely ke mort pur ly suffrit,
Les bens de ses genz rendre ly vousist.

---

[1] *Ke veaunt Tankrede, A.*
[2] *lever le fist,* B.
[3] *abatre le fist,* C.
[4] *après la tenist,* B. *après le tenist,* C.
[5] *Par quei,* B. C. D.
[6] *damage en avenist,* C. D.
[7] *fuist,* C. *son chaunceler suist,* D.
[8] This line is omitted in C.
[9] *issi,* B.
[10] *al port,* C. D.
[11] *Berengere,* B.
[12] *le chaunceler perist,* B. C. D.
[13] *de morz,* C.

After king Philip, king Richard remained,
And threw down his castle outside Messina,
Which, before Tancred made his peace,
He caused to be raised there to have a refuge;
And when they were friends, he promised to throw it down,
That no enemy might hold it after him,
Whereby injury might come to king Tancred.
Afterwards from day to other he provided his navy
Towards the siege of Acre, and to serve Jesus Christ.
His sister and his sweetheart he placed in one busse,
And Roger Mankael his knight followed,
With busses and galleys, and people who were sufficient for them.
When the navy came into that high sea,
A very terrible tempest overtook the busses;
The mariner contended against it with his sail.
Then Lady Joan the queen supplicated God
That she might safely land in a haven in Cyprus,
And lady Berengaria, who was little joyful,
Because she saw her lord there on no side.
Two busses were lost there, the chancellor there perished,
And the king's seal hung round his neck.
Isaac, king of Cyprus, seized the goods of the dead,
And put all who were alive in his prison.
When king Richard heard of the misfortune,
He came there with all his navy without delay,
And wrote to king Isaac earnestly,
That, for the love of him who suffered death for him,
He would restore the goods of his people.

Isake, ray de Cypre, tost ly countredit [1]
Deliverer les prisouns, les bens ke là conquist;[2]
Retenir les volt, et fere ent sun profit.[3]
Kaunt le ray Richard sa duresce entendist,
[Coment à sa prier iij. fiez fist despist.][4]
Sun aler devers Akre cel houre suspendit,
Et sur le ray de Cypre à la guere se prist.

King Richard invades Cyprus.

Eodem anno applicuit rex Ricardus Cipriam, et cepit eam.[5]

Isake, ray de Cypre, emperour de Griffouns,[6]
Kaunt vist le ray Richard en mer of ses barouns
Aprochaunt la terre, sun pople ad somouns
De Griffonye et Cypre, tuz venent al sablouns,[7]
La rivaille en long bataillent environs,
Se profrent à defendre de launces et bastouns.
Richard les regard, escrye sur les Gascouns,[8]
" Mettez-vus à terre,[9] confoundoums cels brecons!" [10]
Forces a landing and defeats Isaac.
Et les maryners par les avirouns
Aryvent à la terre, tresbuchent les felouns.
Isake se mette al fute, ne put aver fusouns,
Et jekes à lendemayn [11] se tent en tapisouns.
Le ray Richard escrie les c. Londrais par noun,
" Desore mey suez tuz, en noun de graunt guerdoun![12]
" Parnoums cest emperour,[13] deliveroums nos prisouns."

---

[1] This and the following line are transposed in C. and D.

[2] *et plus les ne tensit*, C. *et plus ne les tenist*, D.

[3] *e fere son profit*, B. *et fere en son profist*, C. D.

[4] This line is omitted in A. and B., and given here from C. and D.

[5] Omitted in A., given here from B. and C. *Anno prædicto rubricato*, C.

[6] *des Griffouns*, C. D.

[7] *De G., de Cipre, t.v. à sablons*, B. C. D.

[8] *sur les garscons*, B. *sur ses Gascouns*, C. D.

[9] *Mettom-nus à terre*, B. *Mettez nous*, C.

[10] *bretouns*, C.

[11] *jesqe lendemayn*, B. *jekes lendemayn*, C.

[12] *Des ore me suetz touz, en noun de g[ra]utz guerdons*, B. D.

[13] *cel emperour*, C.

Isaac, king of Cyprus, immediately refused him
To deliver the prisoners and the goods he obtained there ;
He resolved to retain them, and make his profit thereof.
When king Richard heard of his harshness,
How he had three times treated his prayer with contempt,
He suspended his journey towards Acre at that time,
And prepared himself for war against the king of Cyprus.

The same year king Richard landed in Cyprus, and captured it.

Isaac, king of Cyprus, emperor of the Greeks,
When he saw king Richard at sea with his barons
Approaching the land, has summoned his people,
Of Greece and Cyprus, all come to the sands,
Draw up in battle order along the shore,
Offer to defend it with lances and clubs.
Richard looks at them, shouts to the Gascons,
" Put yourselves on the land, let us confound these " rascals ! "
And the mariners by their oars
Reach the land, overthrow the wretches.
Isaac takes to flight, he cannot have many followers,
And he holds himself in hiding places till the next day.
King Richard calls to the hundred Londoners by name,
" After this all follow me, in the name of great re- " wards !
" Let us take this emperor, let us deliver the prisoners ! "

Isake par ses espyes [1] entendist lour resouns,
Se prist [2] à les mountaynes, se tynt en les boscouns.
La nout survynt, Richard se dota de tresouns,
Retorne à la ryve, estent ses pavillouns,
Du gayne à la jorné fist [3] ses larges douns,
Enportaunt [4] la praye tuz sunt compaynouns.

Boasts of Isaac.

Isake ad fet sun vou à Deu et saint Symouns,
Ke al matyn vendra saunz evasiouns,
Of launce en poyng,[5] eskeu al col, pur ses regiouns
Encountre [6] les Englays, ke fount destruccioun
Sur ly et sur ses gens ke sunt en ces [7] baundouns.
Et si le ray Richard veygne en ses laçouns,[8]
Ou counte ou baroun de ses naciouns,
Jammès [n']eschaperount [9] saunz grevouse raunçouns,
Pur pape ne patriarke, pur tuz lur [10] sermouns.

Richard takes possession of Limesun, where his sister and Berengaria arrive.

Le ray Richard la nout en tentes reposait,
Le jour après suaunt à Lymesçoun alayt,
Cyté riche et graunde, ke guerpy estait
Des Gryffouns ke la tyndrent; le ray Richard entrayt,
Sa soer et sa amye aryvez i trovait.
Isake l'emperour estoré la avait [11]
De vitaille pur ij. aunz, de reen i faudrait.[12]
Le ray Richard ses barges de furment chargait;
Repaire à sun hoste, et privément parlait,
Ke à l'estaille jornal mover se volait,
Coure sur l'emperour, où trovez serrait.
Chascun des barouns tost se apparayllait;
Le ray fu ly primer ke se myst laundrait,
De trestut sun host nes un demorait,

---

[1] *par espyes*, C.
[2] *Et prist*, C.
[3] *fet*, B. C. D.
[4] *Enpartaunt*, D.
[5] *lance en point*, B. *poygne*, D.
[6] *En countres*, C.
[7] *en ses*, B. *les genz ke sount en ses*, C. D.
[8] *vienge en ses lasçons*, B. *veent en ses lasçouns*, C.
[9] *n'eschaperunt*, B. *ne eschaperent*, C. *ne eschaperount*, D.
[10] *lur* omitted in B.
[11] *estorez la avait*, C.
[12] *de rien ne failleit*, B.

Isaac by his spies heard of their designs,
Took to the mountains, held himself in the bushes.
Night came on, Richard was apprehensive of treachery,
Returns to the shore, spreads his tents,
Makes his large gifts of the plunder taken in the day;
In carrying off the prey all are companions.
Isaac has made his vow to God and St. Simon,
That he will come in the morning without fail,
With spear in fist, shield at his neck, for his kingdom
Against the English, who make destruction
Upon him and his people who are under his power.
And if king Richard come into his nets,
Or earl or baron of his nations,
They shall never escape without heavy ransoms,
For pope nor patriarch, for all their talking.

King Richard reposed the night in tents;
The day following after he went to Limesun,
A rich and great city, which was abandoned
By the Greeks who held it; king Richard entered,
He found his sister and his sweetheart arrived there.
Isaac the emperor had stored it
With victuals for two years, there was want of nothing.
King Richard loaded his barges with wheat;
Returns to his army, and privately talked,
That he would move with the morning star
To attack the emperor, wherever he should be found.
Each of the barons immediately made him ready;
The king was the first who put himself in position;
Of all his army not one remained behind,

Fors Bernard de Bayoun, ke la mer gardait.
Richard of ses barouns l'emperour aprochait,
Flight of Isaac. Et trop horriblement Isake escryait,
Ses tentes abatist, Ysake avylait;
En chemys et brays[1] fuyaunt eschapait,
Ses chuvals, ses armes, al ray Richard lessait.[2]
La baner de l'empire[3] Richard ilokes waynait.
La partye del pople ke encountre[4] se donait
Le rays en la batayile trop malement menait,
Les uns pris-il vifs, les uns i tuait,[5]
Et à graunt[6] nobleye victor repairait.
Marriage of king Richard and Berengaria. Sa feste à Lymesçoun cryer lors fesait,[7]
Et dame Bernerger ilokes esposait.
Le terce jour de sa feste,[8] le ray comaundayt
Ke Bernard de Bayoun la dame corounayt.
En cel halte feste tut drait à Lymesçoun
Sunt venuz à court[9] par graunt affeccioun
Arrival of Guy king of Jerusalem and others. De Jerusalem le gentil ray Guyoun,
Et Galfray sun frere,[10] et Aumfry de Turoun,[11]
Raymoun de Antyoche, prince de graunt renoun,
Bomound counte de Triple, et le duk Leoun,
Frere Ruffyn des mounz,[12] trop vaillaunt baroun,
Offrent lur homages et[13] lur servyse en soun
Al gentil ray Richard, à morir en le noun
De cyl ke suth Pylate suffry passioun.
Richard les resçait of graunt devocioun,
Par ount chascun se lye par obligacioun
Ke leals ly serrount suth[14] sa protecciouu,

---

[1] *En chemise e en brais*, B. *En chemyse, en brayes*, D.
[2] *à Richard lessait*, C.
[3] *La banere de Cypre*, B.
[4] *qe countre*, C.
[5] *e les uns tueit*, B. *les uns il tuayt*, D.
[6] *al grant*, C.
[7] *hors fesoit*, B.
[8] *de la feste*, B. D.
[9] *a la courte*, B. *al court*, C.
[10] Geoffrey de Lusignan.
[11] *Amfray de Turon*, C. He is called by Hoveden, Amfrid de Tours.
[12] In Robert of Brunne, it is: "Frere Ruffyn Delmount." Rupin de la Montaigne, in Hoveden.
[13] *et* omitted in C.
[14] *sur sa*, C.

Except Bernard of Bayonne, who guarded the sea.
Richard with his barons approached the emperor,
And shouted upon Isaac very terribly,
Threw down his tents, reviled Isaac ;
He escaped by flight in his shirt and breeches,
Left his horses and arms to king Richard.
Richard there won the banner of the empire.
The part of the people who made resistance
The king in the battle treated very evil ;
Some were taken alive, others slain there.
And with great nobleness he returned conqueror.
He then caused his feast to be proclaimed at Limesun,
And there he espoused lady Berengaria.
The third day of his feast, the king commanded
That Bernard of Bayonne should crown the lady.

In this high feast direct to Limesun
Are come to the court through great affection
The gentle king Guy of Jerusalem,
And Geoffrey his brother, and Amfrid de Tours,
Raimond of Antoch, a prince of great renown,
Boamond count of Tripoli, and the duke Leo,
Brother of Rupin of the Mountain, a very valiant baron,
They offer their homages and their service wholly
To the gentle king Richard, to die in the name
Of him who under Pilate suffered passion.
Richard receives them with great devotion,
Whereupon each binds himself by bond
That they will be loyal to him under his guidance,

Et sa seygnurye par nul evasioun
Lerrount pur altrye, dount aver guerdoun.

They pursue Isaac.

Le ray Richard si tost as armes fet cryer,
Sun hoste en deus partyes comaunde deviser ;
De sa chuvalrye partye fet lyverer[1]
Al gentil ray Guyoun,[2] ke ben les seet guyer.
L'emperour Ysake en oyst parler[3]
Quels gens sunt venuz al ray Richard aider,
Se doute durement de lur encombrer ;
Par les melz vanez de tut sun poer
Prye al ray Richard k'il pussent accorder,[4]
Et venir devaunt ly la forme recorder
Coment il purra son trespas amender.

Submission of the Emperor Isaac.

Le ray Richard[5] respount, et dist "Volenter."[6]
L'emperour i vent, et dist al ray Richer,
" Sir, moun trespas te prie pardoner ;
" Ton homme devendray par terre et par mer,
" Et tendray ma terre de tay à toun voler.
" Tes gens, ke fesay cum fol enprisoner,
" Te rendray saunz demore, of trestut le aver
" Ke tes genz naez perdirent l'altr'er.
" En toun pelrymage of tay voyl aler,
" Of cent caynt d'espaye, chascun chuvaler,
" Quaraunte c. mountés al foer d'esquyer,[7]
" Et à v. c. à pé,[8] as quels fray payer
" Solde pur deus aunz of tay demorer.
" Ma fyllye, hair de mes terres, te durray à garder,
" Taunt cum ço covenaunt[9] te averay fet enter."

---

[1] *partie fet lever*, B.

[2] *Au rey sire Guyon*, B.

[3] *en oi de ceo parler*, B.

[4] *q'il puis acorder*, C. *q'il pusse acorder*, D.

[5] *Le rey, rey Richard*, B.

[6] *Volenters*, B. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Richard ansuerd therto, 'I grante it blithely.'"

[7] *Quatre cenz mountz, à foer d'esquier*, B. *Quatre cent mountez*, C. Robert of Brunne has similarly translated it, "And four hundreth " to bote, squieres of gode aray."

[8] *Od cink cenz à pè*, B. *Et ouf v. cent au pée al quels*, C.

[9] *ceste covenant*, B.

And his seigneury by no evasion
Will they leave for that of another, from which to
have reward.

King Richard immediately orders to cry "As armes!"
He causes his army to be divided into two parts;
A part of his chivalry he commits
To the noble king Guy, who knows well how to lead them.
The emperor Isaac heard talk of it,
What people are come to aid king Richard,
Fears greatly their attack;
By the men of most renown of all his power
He prays king Richard that they may be reconciled,
And to come before him to record the form
How he shall be able to make amends for his offence.
King Richard replies, and says, "Willingly."
The emperor comes there, and says to king Richard,
"Sir, I pray thee to pardon my offence;
"I will become thy man by land and by sea,
"And will hold my land of thee at thy will.
"Thy people, whom like a madman I caused to be
"imprisoned,
"I will restore to thee without delay, with all the
"property
"Which thy drowned people lost the day before
"yesterday.
"I will go with thee on thy pilgrimage,
"With a hundred men girt with sword, each a knight,
"Four hundred mounted in the manner of a squire,
"And with five hundred on foot, to whom I will cause
"to be paid
"Pay for two years to remain with thee.
"My daughter, heir to my lands, I will give thee in ward,
"Until I shall have entirely performed that covenant
"to thee."

Richard's indulgence towards Isaac.

Lors le ray Richard, de molt gentil quer,
Pardoune le trespas, se acorde à l'emperer,[1]
Pavylloun et tente le fet assigner,
Et taunt com ly mesme ly comaunde honurer.
Isake mesme le jour, kaunt tuz[2] vount reposer,
Repentir se comence de sun dayller,
Hors de ses pavyllouns eschapez est cum leer,[3]

Isaac repents.

Maunde al ray Richard par sun messanger
Ke à ço covenaunt ne volt obliger
Terre ne tenement,[4] ne sun cors lyer,
Ne pur sa terre[5] rendre à ly un dener,
Ne par tel servage ses hairs desheriter.
" O Deus ! " dist Richard, " cum cestuy est fol beer,
" Kaunt quide nus Englays issint tregetter."
Ore va le ray Richard ordiner coment
Il purra l'emperour suspendre vistement.
A Guyoun et Raymound, et à cele gent,
Assigne xx. galayes, et graunt busces cent,
Ke vount queraunt Isake par vers le orient.[6]

Richard proceeds against him.

Il mesme va par terre en graunt hardement;
Des viles et cytez[7] chascun à ly se rend.
Robert de Tur[n]ham[8] se mene noblement,
La terre suth maryne[9] ad conquys nettement,
Revent à sun seygnur, et vount vers le occydent.
La cyté de Nychoise[10] estoré richement
Ount pris, et la vile de Cheryn[11] ensement;
Del chastel dedeynz la fyllye Isake descent,
Et cheet devaunt le rays ploraunt tendrement,

---

[1] *s'acorde l'emperer*, D.
[2] *tuz* omitted in C.
[3] *Hors des pavillons eschapez cum leer*, B. C. *Hors des pavilliouns*, D.
[4] *Tere et tenement*, C.
[5] *terre* omitted in B.
[6] *par mer vers l'orient*, B. D. *quere Isak par mere vere l'orient*, C.
[7] *et des citez*, C.
[8] *Turnham*, B. D.
[9] *sur marine*, B.
[10] *Nichocie*, B.
[11] *de Cheryng*, C. *Cheryne*, D. Hoveden calls it Cherin.

Then king Richard, with very generous heart,
Pardons the offence, becomes reconciled with the emperor,
Causes pavilion and tent to be assigned to him,
And orders him to be honoured as much as himself.
Isaac the same day, when all go to repose,
Begins to repent of his proceeding,
Is escaped from his pavilions like a thief.
He sends to king Richard by his messenger
That to that covenant he will not oblige
Land nor tenement, nor bind his body,
Nor pay him for his land a penny,
Nor disinherit his heirs through such slavery.
"Oh God!" said Richard, "what a mad baron this is,
When he thinks thus to enchant us Englishmen!"

Now goes king Richard to arrange how
He will be able to suspend the emperor quickly.
To Guy and Raimond, and to that people,
He assigns twenty galleys and a hundred great busses,
Who go seeking Isaac towards the East.
He himself goes by land in great boldness,
Every one of the towns and cities surrenders to him.
Robert de Turnham behaves himself nobly,
The land on the coast he has conquered clean,
Returns to his seigneur, and they go towards the West.
The city of Nicosia, richly stored,
They have taken, and the town of Cherin likewise;
From the castle within the daughter of Isaac descends,
And falls before the king tenderly weeping,

Richard's proceedings in Cyprus.

De mercy ly prie pur Deu omnipotent;
Et le ray l'ottrye assez cortaisement.
Le chastel et les bens dedenz trovez[1] prent,
La pucele à sa femme fet maunder gentement.
Guyoun et Raymound revenent uniement,[2]
Pur ço ke il ne ount conquis terre ne tenement.
Robert de Tur[n]ham[3] lors pria sun seygnur
Aler à Buffenet asseger[4] la thour;
En tote Gryffonye n'ad chastel meyllur.
Le [ray][5] Richard i va, ilokes ne prent sojour.
Taunt com le ray Richard est en cel errour,[6]
Adresce ses engyns, i gette[7] nout et jour.

The story of the emperor Isaac and Statin.

Statyn le seneskal dist à l'emperour,
Al manger où il sist[8] en regal honur,
" Sir ray Isake,[9] jo suy toun vavasour,
" Et gardayn de tes terres, jo vay ke deshonur
" Tai aproche durement par cel[10] conquerour,
" Ke rays est des Englays, et sage guerraiour.
" Va et faz sa pes, ke par[11] ton errour
" Ne sait perdu le regne, dount ton auncessour[12]
" Ad tenuz jekes en sçà cum bon governour."
Isake se corouce vers tel counsaillour,
Du cotel l'esena gettaunt en tel errour,[13]
Le colpoun de sun nees coupait del trenchour.[14]

---

[1] *trovez*, omitted in C.

[2] *nuement*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Sir Guy and Bumund thei com as thei ȝede."

[3] *Turnham*, B. C. D.

[4] *et asseger*, B.

[5] This word, evidently wanting to complete the line, is only given by B. C.

[6] *cel estour*, B. D. *tel estour*, C. This and the following line are transposed in B. and C.

[7] *il gette*, C.

[8] *où il seet*, C. D.

[9] *Isakins*, B. C. D. and Robert of Brunne.

[10] *ceste*, B. *ceo*, C.

[11] *qe pur*, B.

[12] *antecessour*, C.

[13] *l'essena gettant en errour*, B. C. D. *le sena*, A.

[14] Robert of Brunne has translated this rather freely:—

" Fulle brotherly and brim he
" kept up a trencheour,
" And kast it at Statin, did him a
" schamfulle schoure,
" His nese and his ine he carfe at
" misaventoure."

Prays him for mercy for the sake of God Almighty;
And the king grants it very courteously.
He takes the castle and the goods found inside,
Causes the maiden to be sent in gentle manner to his wife.
Guy and Raimond return empty handed,
Because they have neither conquered land nor tenement.

Robert de Turnham then prayed his lord
To go to Buffenet to lay siege to the tower;
There is not a better castle in all Greece.
King Richard goes thither, there he makes no delay,
He directs his engines, and throws there night and day.
While king Richard is occupied in this assault,
Statin the steward says to the emperor,
Where he is seated at his meal in royal honour,
" Sire king Isaac, I am thy vavasor,
" And keeper of thy lands, I see that dishonour
" Approaches thee greatly through this conqueror,
" He is the king of the English, and a wise warrior.
" Go and make his peace, that by thy error
" The kingdom be not lost, which thy ancestor
" Has held till now like a good governor."
Isaac becomes angry against such a counsellor,
With the knife he struck him, throwing it carelessly,
A slice off his nose he cut with the carving-knife.

Statin surrenders the towns of Cyprus to king Richard.

Statyn s'en fuyst en hounte et dolour,[1]
Et vent al ray Richard of molt graunt[2] clamour.
Le ray prent sun homage; kaunt Statyn ad soccour,
Il rent al ray Richard saunz plus de labour
Baffe et Buffenet, Candare et Dendamur,
Et totes les cytez dount Ysake fu gyour.
Trestuz les graunz seygnurs ke sunt demorez
Of le ray Richard, sunt ben confortez
Ke Cypre of le honur est si tost waynez.
Ad cape[3] Saint Andreu, abbay fort assez,
Est le ray Isake privément muscez.[4]
Le ray Richard l'oyt dire, laundrayt est alez;

Capture of Isaac.

Isak ly vent encountre, en croyz ly chet al pez,[5]
Ly dist, "Sire, pur Deu, ayez de may pitez,
"Grauntez may vie et membre, en prisun me mettez,[6]
"Saunz ferges de fer pur hounte de parentez."
"Tu averas ta priere," dist ly rays, "levez."
Et pur ço ke ly sot[7] en taunt fu forsenez,
Ke mencioun ne fist de raunçoun ne de regnez,[8]
Desore sunt les manicles [et] ses anels forgez[9]
De plus pur argent en tresor[10] trovez;

The government of Cyprus entrusted to Statin.

A les deus raynes sun cors est comaundez,
Johanne et Berneger[11] ly ount en lur poestez.
Et le ray Richard ad maintenaunt donez
Al seneskal de Cypre la garde des cytez;
Pur taunt ke il estait[12] si vilement mahaynez,
Statyn le Naes[13] desore est surnomez.

---

[1] *et en dolour*, C.
[2] *en mult grant*, C.
[3] *A cape*, C.
[4] *mousez*, D.
[5] *en croice chiet à peez*, B. *en croice cheet al peez*, C. *en croyce chet as peez*, D. To fall on the ground with the arms stretched out in form of a cross was the most humble mode of supplication.
[6] This line is omitted in D.
[7] *ly sez*, C.
[8] *ne regnez*, B. D.
[9] *ses manicles e ses forges*, B. *ses manicles, ses anels*, C.
[10] *en tresorie*, B.
[11] *Johane e Berengere*, B. *Jone et Bernegere*, D.
[12] *cum il estoit*, B. C. *Partaunt com il estait*, D.
[13] *le nasée*, B. *le nasé*, D.

Statin flies thence in shame and grief,
And comes to king Richard with very great outcry.
The king takes his homage; when Statin has succour,
He delivers to king Richard without more ado
Baffa and Buffenet, Candare and Dendamur,
And all the cities of which Isaac was ruler.

All the great lords who are remained
With king Richard, are well comforted
That Cyprus with the honour is so soon won.
At Cap St. Andrew, a very strong abbey,
King Isaac is secretly concealed.
King Richard hears it, is gone thither;
Isaac is come to meet him, falls suppliant at his feet,
Says to him, "Sire, for God's sake have pity on me;
" Grant me life and limb, put me in prison
" Without fetters of iron for shame of my kindred."
" Thou shalt have thy prayer," said the king, "rise."
And because the fool was so far devoid of sense,
That he made no mention of ransom or of the kingdom,
Henceforward are his manacles and his fetters forged
Of the finest silver found in his treasury;
To the two queens his body is entrusted.
Joan and Berengaria have him in their power.
And king Richard has now given
The keeping of the cities to the steward of Cyprus;
Because he was so foully wounded,
Henceforth he is named Statin le Nasé.

Cypre est perdue par Ysake le tyraunt,
Et gayné par l'espeye[1] Richard ly vaillaunt,
A ky le pople tut vent mercy cryaunt,
A tenir de ly par servise fesaunt.

King Richard establishes his rule in Cyprus.

" Sir," dist Statyn, " fa venir ly marchaunt,
" Chuvaler, esquyer, cytayn, et sergaunt,
" De burges et de viles chascun terre tenaunt,
" Et preigne tes homages[2] cum novel conqueraunt."
Le ray fet issint, et les gens par taunt
La moyté de lour bens ly vount presentaunt,
Pour tenir les lays ke tenuz[3] ount avaunt,
Ke Manuel[4] le rays, of seal[5] pendaunt,
Confermait[6] en Cypre kaunt il fu governaunt[7]
L'empyre de Griffonye; le ray Richard le graunt.

Leaves it in charge of Statin and Robert de Turnham.

Ore ad le ray Richard parfet sa mestrye,
Et par graunt conqueste Cypre ad saisye.
Al Statyn[8] le Nasé fet graunt cortaisye;
Cypre l'ad doné à tenir par l'espeye
De ly et de ses heirs, salve la seygnurye
Ad tuz les rays Englays taunt cum homme ad vye.
Statyn l'ad resceu, et le rays emprie[9]
De Robert de Thurnham en soccour et aye,[10]
Tant ke la pes en Cypre sait melz establye.
Robert i demort, le [ray][11] Richard l'ottrye.
Kaunt le ray Richard ad fet sun voler
En la terre de Cypre, et pris ad[12] par poer
Isake l'emperour, Johanne et Berneger
Sunt alez vers Triple Isake ilokes mener.
Le ray Richard après ne volt[13] demorer,

---

[1] *par espeie*, B.
[2] *E prenez les homages*, B.
[3] *qe tenez*, C.
[4] Robert of Brunne has "Samuel."
[5] *od son seal*, B. *ouf son seal*, C. *ou son seal*, D.
[6] *Conferma*, B.
[7] *quant il governayt*, C.
[8] *A Statin*, B.
[9] *empire*, B.
[10] *en socour e en aie*, B.
[11] This word is evidently wanting.
[12] *qe pris ad*, B.
[13] *veut*, B

Cyprus is lost by Isaac the tyrant,
And gained by the sword of Richard the valiant,
To whom the people all come crying mercy,
To hold of him by doing service.
" Sire," said Statin, " cause to come the merchant,
" Knight, esquire, citizen, and sergeant,
" Of towns and cities every one holding land,
" And take thy homages as a new conqueror."
The king did so, and the people thereupon
Go and offer him the half of their goods.
To hold the laws which they have held before,
Which Manuel the king, with his seal attached,
Confirmed in Cyprus when he was governing
The empire of Greece; king Richard grants it.

Now has king Richard completed his business,
And by great conquest has seized Cyprus.
To Statin le Nasé he does great courtesy;
He has given him Cyprus to hold by the sword
Of him and his heirs, saved the seignury
To all the English kings as long as man has life.
Statin has received it, and prays the king
For Robert de Turnham in succour and aid,
Until the peace in Cyprus be better established.
Robert remains there; king Richard grants it.

When king Richard has done his will
In the land of Cyprus, and he has taken by force
Isaac the emperor, Joan and Berengaria
Are gone towards Tripoli to carry Isaac thither.
King Richard will not remain afterwards,

Richard sails for Acre.

Ne le ray Guyoun, al sygle fount[1] cryer.
Nes un de la mesné après demorust[2] arer,
Fors Robert de Turnham k'en est justizer.
Le jour suaunt[3] à noune ount veu en la mer
Un graundesime busce,[4] ke sygle fet lever,
En noun le ray Phelippe vers Akre prent l'aler,[5]
Se[s] armes enviroun[6] la nef fount hors boter.

Meets with a ship of the enemy sailing under false colours, and sinks it.

Pur saver moun[7] dount sunt s'en va[8] ly maryner;
Respouns ly ount doné et dyent, "Sir cher,
" Nus sumes de Antyoche de gentil mister,[9]
" Et alums vers Akre, servise pur doner[10]
" Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ke nous fist maunder."
E dist[11] le ray Richard, "Of cels volums parler."
Le prince de Antioche la nef fet regarder,[12]
Revent of graunt alayne, et dist[13] al ray Richer,
" Touz sunt Sarazyns, ke vount envenimer
" Le pople Krestyen par pusoun amer."
" Ore tost!" dist le rays, "vous allez batailler;
" Assaillez la nef, la fetes enfoundrer,[14]
" Et ayt chascun sun waigne[15] saunz altre chalanger."
Il mesme en sa galaye fu tut ly primer.[16]
Ly Sarazyn se dresce,[17] comence à getter
Le fu Gregays encountre, et Richard va percer
Le bek de sa galaye la neef pur naer.[18]
Xv. c. paens ly mestre va counter

---

[1] *vount crier*, B.
[2] *après demurt*, B. C. *demort*, D.
[3] *Le jour avant*, C.
[4] *Une grandisme busce*, B. C.
[5] *prent aler*, C.
[6] *ount enviroun*, C.
[7] *mon*, B. C. *Pur saver dount sunt*, D.
[8] *se va*, C.
[9] *mester*, B. C. D.
[10] *vers Acres pur serviez doner*, B. *servir pur dener*, C. D.
[11] *O, dit*, B. *O, dist*, C. D.
[12] *va regarder*, B. C. D.
[13] *od grant e dit*, the word *alayne* omitted, B. *à grant aleyne*, C. D.
[14] *confoundrer*, B. *enfounder*, C.
[15] *la gwayne*, D.
[16] Robert of Brunne translates this, "The kynges owen galeie, " he cald it Trencthemere."
[17] *se adresce*, C. D.
[18] *Du beek sa galeie la neef va naer*, B. *Del bek sa galey*, C. D.

Nor king Guy ; they raise the cry " To the sail."
Not one of his household afterwards remained behind,
Except Robert de Turnham, who is justiciary of it (Cyprus).
The day following at none (3 o'clock P.M.) they have seen at sea
A very great busse, which causes its sail to be raised ;
It takes the way towards Acre in the name of king Philip ;
They cause his arms to be exposed around the ship.
The mariner goes off to see whose they are ;
They have given him an answer, and say, " Sir dear,
" We are of Antioch, of gentle employ,
" And we are going towards Acre, to give service
" To the king of France, who sent for us."
And said king Richard, " We will talk with them."
The prince of Antioch goes to survey the ship ;
Returns with great breath, and says to king Richard,
" They are all Saracens, who are going to poison
" The Christian people with bitter poison."
" Now quick !" said the king, " you are going to give " battle ;
" Attack the ship, make her sink,
" And let each have what he gets without other claim."
He himself in his galley was the very first.
The Saracen comes to, begins to throw
Greek fire against him, and Richard goes and pierces
With the beak of his galley the ship to sink it.
The master goes and counts fifteen hundred pagans

Ke là sunt naez, [ne] put[1] nul eschaper,
Fors xl. et vj. ke le ray fet[2] salver,
Et ad ray[3] de Fraunce partye presenter.
D'or,[4] de riche chose, n'est soume[5] de l'aver
Ke en la nef estait, put nul[6] homme counter.
De pusoun ke là fust put[7] homme enpusoner
Trestuz ke lors vindrent[8] Akres asseger;
En mer fu [tut] getté, saunz rens[9] esparnier.
Le ray Richard les sigles comaunde eshaucer,[10]
Et haster[11] vers Akres les Kristiens aider.
Ore les condue Deus et salve de encombrer![12]

Anno Domini millesimo c. nonagesimo primo recessit rex Ricardus de Cipria, et venit Acon, quæ etiam capta est per eundem.[13]

King Richard arrives at Acre.

En la sainte vigile de la Trinité
Est ly ray Richard suz Akres aryvé.
Sa femme et sa soer ilokes ad trové,
Et la fillye Isake jadis ray nomé;
Sun pere est en garde[14] à Triple demoré.

The Greeks elect an apostate monk to succeed Isaac.

Et, quant le ray Richard de Cypre fu alé,
Les Gryffonye gens[15] un moyne eschapé,
Cosyn l'emperour Ysake [le] deposé,[16]
Ount fet ray de Cypre, et Statyn ount grevé.

---

[1] *Qe sunt là naez, ne put*, B. *Ki sount là naez, pout nul*, D.
[2] *le rei les fet*, B. C. D.
[3] *Et al ray*, C. D.
[4] *De ore*, C. *De or*, D.
[5] *ne summe*, B. C. D.
[6] *ne puit nul home*, B.
[7] *qe fust poeit*, B.
[8] *qe là vindrent*, C.
[9] *En mer fu tut getté sanz rien espanier*, B.
[10] *enhaucer*, B. C. D.
[11] *E haster*, B. D. *Et hastier*, C.
[12] This line is omitted in B. C. D.
[13] The rubric is here given from B. In C. it is as follows, *Anno Domini mo. nonagesimo primo recessit rex Ricardus a Cypria, et venit Actu, quæ capta est.* Robert of Brunne has translated this rubric into two lines of his metrical text:—
"The date was a thousand, a
"hundreth, nienti and one,
"Fro Cipres he was sailand, a
"toun he wan, Acon."
[14] *est gardé*, B.
[15] *Les gens de Grifonie*, B. C. D.
[16] *le deposé*, B. C. D.

Who are there drowned; none could escape,
Except forty and six, whom the king caused to be saved,
And part to be presented to the king of France.
Of gold and of rich objects, and the total of the wealth
Which was in the ship, could no man count.
Of the poison which was there, one might poison
All entirely who then came to besiege Acre;
It was all thrown into the sea without sparing any.
King Richard ordered the sails to be haled up,
And to hasten towards Acre to aid the Christians.
Now may God conduct them and save from trouble!

Anno Domini 1191, *king Richard departed from Cyprus, and came to Acre, which also is taken by him.*

On the holy eve of the Trinity
Is king Richard arrived under Acre;
There he has found his wife and his sister,
And the daughter of Isaac formerly entitled king.
Her father remains in guard at Tripoli.
And, when king Richard was gone from Cyprus,
The people of Greece an apostate monk,
Cousin of the deposed emperor Isaac,
Have made king of Cyprus, and have given trouble to Statin.

Robert of Turnham takes proceedings against the monk.

Robert de Thurnham est molt mespayé,[1]
Et le va queraunt jekes ly ait[2] trové;
Par poer le prent, à Cheryn l'ad mené,
Où hors de prisoun[3] nuytauntre est passé.
Statyn et Robert as armes ount cryé;
Le pople tut de Cypre i venent de volunté.[4]
Le chaityf est repris, à Cheryn remené.
Le terce jour après Robert ad comaundé
Somoundre la court de tote la countré.
Les fraunkes et les serves sunt[5] venuz de gré
Al jugement le rays del moyne[6] corouné.
Escotez ore coment Robert l'ad jugé.

De monaco rege facto, et postea suspenso.[7]

The monk emperor is judged and hanged.

"Sire," dist Robert, "tu fustes moyne jadis,
" A Deu omnipotent estayez enemys,
" Kaunt pour terryen honur[8] tun habit werpys.
" Robbour en cel[9] realme par nous fustes pris,
" En prisoun à Cheryn cum robbour fustes mys.
" La prisoune debrisastes, fustif[10] fu tu pris;
" Tu averas jugement par lay de moun pays.[11]
" Fetes lever les fourches, et pendez[12] le chaityfs.
" Plus bel te serrait en cloystre aver sys,[13]
" Et chaunter[14] ta messe, et fet le Deu servys,

---

[1] *mespaé*, B. C. D.

[2] *querant, jesqe il cit*, B. D. *queraunt jekes il ad*, C.

[3] *de la prisoun*, C. D.

[4] *de Cypre vient à volenté*, B. *et* (for *i*) *veent de v.*, C. *i veent*, D.

[5] *serfs i sunt*, B. C. *serves i sunt*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Lered men and lay, fre and bond " of toune."

[6] *de moygne*, C. D.

[7] B. C. *De monaco rege facto*, D.

[8] *pur terrrene honur*, C. "for "the worldes blisse," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *en ceste*, B. *en cele*, D.

[10] *futifs*, B. *debrusastes, futyf*, C. *e futyf repris*, D.

[11] "That lawe I salle the make " that is Richard lond." Robert of Brunne.

[12] *e pendre*, B.

[13] *aver assis*, B. D.

[14] *E chaunté*, B. C. D.

Robert de Turnham is much provoked,
And he goes in search of him until he has found him;
He takes him by force, has carried him to Cherin,
Where he escaped out of prison by night.
Statin and Robert have cried "To arms!"
All the people of Cyprus come there voluntarily.
The wretch is retaken, and carried back to Cherin.
The third day after Robert has given orders
To summon the court of all the country.
Freemen and bondmen are come gladly
To the king's judgment of the monk crowned.
Now listen how Robert has pronounced judgment on him.

Of the monk made king, and afterwards hanged.

"Sir," said Robert, "thou wast formerly a monk;
"Thou wast enemy to God Almighty,
"When for earthly honour thou forsookest thy habit.
"Thou was taken by us as a robber in this kingdom,
"As a robber thou wast put into prison at Cherin;
"Thou brakest the prison, as an escaped prisoner wast "thou taken;
"Thou shalt have judgment by the law of my country.
"Cause the gallows to be raised, and hang the wretch.
"It would be better for thee to have been sitting "in a monastery,
"And chaunting the mass, and doing God's service,

" Ke chalanger realme ke Richard ad conquys,
" Et pendre[1] cum laroun si près de tes amys."
Kaunt ço novel rays[2] à mort fu liverez,
Et la pes le rays en Cypre affermez,
De Statyn le Nasée Robert prent congez,
Retorne à sun seygnur of rychesce assez,
King Richard disapproves of this treatment of a king.
Ly counte coment un moyne, estret de parentez[3]
L'emperour Isake, fu emperour cryez
Par gens de Gryffonye, ke pus ount chalangez
La seygnurye de Cypre, et furent entrez;
Coment ço novel rays fu pris et menez
Al prisoun de Cheryn,[4] et coment eschapez;
Coment il fu repris, coment[5] remenez,
[Coment en la courte estoit encoupez,][6]
Et coment par agarde ilokes fu jugez.
Dist[7] le ray Richard, " Allas! viletez!
" Ky pendist[8] unkes rays? fus-tu[9] forsanez?[10]
" Tu faistez vilaynye à touz corounez."
" Sire," dist Robert, " de ly nent plus parlez![11]
" Taunt com le ray Phelippe ad si[12] demorez,
" Uncore ne assailist Akres unkes une fez;[13]
" Tu as fet esplait, à Deu le mercyez.[14]
" Adrescés vos engyns, [et] passet[15] les fossez."
King Richard attacks Acre.
Le ray Richard adresse suth[16] Akre ses engyns;
Conforte les Englays, Normaunz, et Paytevyns;[17]

---

[1] *E prendre*, B. C.
[2] *Quant cele novele rey*, B. *cele novel rois*, D.
[3] *des parentez*, C.
[4] *En la prison Cherin*, B.
[5] *comenez*, B.
[6] Omitted in A., and supplied from B. C. D.
[7] *O dit le rey*, B.
[8] *Qi pendi*, B.
[9] *fors tu*, B. C. D.
[10] *forsenez*, C. D.
[11] *de li plus ne parlez*, B. *de ly ne plus parlez*, C. D.
[12] *ci*, B. C.
[13] *ne assailleit Acres ne mie un fez*, B. D. *Uncor assaillist Acres ne my un feez*, C.
[14] *a Dieu mercier*, B.
[15] *et passez*, C. D.
[16] *sur*, C.
[17] *Paytesyns*, C. *Paytefyns*, D.

" Than to claim a kingdom which Richard has conquered,
" And hang like a thief so near thy friends."

When this new king was delivered to death,
And the king's peace established in Cyprus,
Robert takes leave of Statin le Nasé,
Returns to his sovereign with riches enough,
Tells him how a monk, descended from the kindred
Of the emperor Isaac, was proclaimed emperor
By people of Greece, who have afterwards claimed
The sovereignty of Cyprus, and were entered;
How this new king was taken and carried
To the prison of Cherin, and how escaped;
How he was retaken, how carried back,
How he was brought to trial in the court,
And how by sentence he was there judged.
Said king Richard, " Alas! shame!
" Who ever hanged a king? wast thou mad?
" Thou didst shame to all crowned heads."
" Sire," said Robert, " say no more of him!
" As long as king Philip was remaining here,
" As yet he never assaulted Acre once;
" Thou hast done action, thank God for it.
" Prepare your engines, and pass the fosses."

King Richard prepares his engines under Acre;
Comforts the English, Normans, and Poitevins;

En barges et galayes fet[1] lever molyns.[2]
Les vens sunt en les vailes, lez[3] sunt les peleryns.
Les alesce et movent[4] les molées des Ryns,[5]
Richard's courage and activity.
Fu gettent cum foudre, fumés sulferyns,
La noyse fust hidouse al vespre[6] du matyns.
Ke fet le ray Richard? entre ses vaisins
Ne cesse de couper les chenes acheryns;[7]
Les fossez ad saisi malgré les Sarazyns.[8]
Les fossez enchenez le ray Richard passait,
Et sur la cyté assalz plusurs i donait;[9]
Et le ray Phelippe ausynt[10] le fesait;
Ly un et ly altre trop de ennoy[11] avait.
Phelippe pur negligence ses engyns lessait
King Philippe's engines of war burnt.
Une nout saunz garde, li Sarazyn gettait
Fu de la cyté, et si les eschafait,
Ke le ray Phelippe fors carbuns[12] i trovait;
Pour quai[13] le ray Richard al matyn le prechait,[14]
Ke sage guerreour dait doter descait,
Et plus de la nout[15] ke kaunt le solail vait.
Richard de ses engyns à Phelippe prestait,[16]
Et del remenaunt vigorousment overait.
Le assalt de cels ij. rays si longement dorrait
Sur les Sarazyns, par si graunt esplait,
Ke le frere[17] Saladyn, ke la cyté gardait,

---

[1] *e en galeies feit*, B.

[2] *melyns*, C. Robert of Brunne translates, "In bargeis and galeis "he set mylnes to go."

[3] *leez*, B. C. D.

[4] *Les aletz en movent*, B. *en movent*, C. D.

[5] *Le Ryns*, B. C. D. This line appears to be very obscure, nor are we much assisted by Robert of Brunne's translation, "The stones were of "Rynes." Hearne, in his Glossary, explains this last word by "Rhine, a "river so called, from whence they "used to have strange odd stones to "be shot in engins."

[6] *à vespre*, C. *à vespre de m.*, D.

[7] *asceryns*, B. D. *les cheyns asseryns*, C. *à Cheryns*, A.

[8] *caracyns*, D.

[9] *plusurs doneit*, B. C. D.

[10] *ausi*, B.

[11] *demoie*, B.

[12] *fors carboun*, D.

[13] *Par quei*, B.

[14] *ly prechait*, C.

[15] *en la nuyt*, B. C. *en la nocte*, D.

[16] *aprestait*, B.

[17] *Ke frer*, C. *Qe frere*, D.

Causes mills to be raised in barges and galleys.
The winds are in the sails, glad are the pilgrims.
The machines cast the weighty stones,
They throw fire like thunder, and sulphurous smoke:
The noise was frightful from morn to evening.
What does king Richard? among his neighbours
He ceases not to cut the iron chains;
He has made himself master of the fosses in spite of the Saracens.
King Richard passed the chained fosses,
And on the city gave there several assaults;
And king Philip did the same;
The one and the other had too much weariness.
Philip through negligence left his engines
One night without guard; the Saracens threw
Fire from the city, and so warmed them,
That king Philip found there nothing but charcoal;
Wherefore king Richard in the morning preached to him,
That a wise warrior ought to fear deceit,
And more by night than when he sees the sun.
Richard lent some of his engines to Philip,
And worked vigorously with the rest.
The assault of these two kings lasted so long
Upon the Saracens, with so great effect,
That the brother of Saladin, who commanded the city,

The Saracens treat for peace, but the kings refuse.

Of Richard et Phelippe sovent de pees parlait,
Les offre[1] la cyté, et rendre les volait,
Issi ke de nul de soens[2] ke dedens estait
Serrait retenuz ne membre perderait.
Nul de cels[3] deus rays l'offre accordait,
Ne ly Sarazyn rendre les volait[4]
Les cytés ne les terres[5] ke Richard demaundait;
Pour quai li Sarazyn en Akre retornait,[6]
Et ly Kristien à l'assalt alait.

The miraculous arrow.

Novele sovent[7] lur vint ke molt les[8] confortait,
Un dart marveylluse,[9] dedenz i fu purtrait
La parole ke suyt en[10] Latyn tut drait.

In nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti.
Amen.[11]

Kristyen fu nul ke unkes houre savait
Coment ne par ky la sette hors passait,
Et vint de la torele[12] ke Richard assegait;
Et ke kantke[13] Sarazyn dedenz ordinayt
Fust en la fleche escrit; le ray Richard loait[14]
A[15] Deu de tel miracle, et loer devait.[16]

Offers of the Saracens.

A Phelippe et Richard les Sarazyns volaynt
Sovent la cyté rendre, et ben promettaynt
Ke la saynte terre Jerusalem[17] rendraynt,
Et xx. mil Cristiens, ke en prisoun avaynt.

---

[1] *offri*, B. *offrist*, C.
[2] *qe nul de seuns*, C. *qe nul de sons*, D.
[3] *de ses*, C.
[4] *la rendre ne poeit*, B. *rendre les poayt*, C. D.
[5] *et les terres*, C.
[6] *en Acres li turneit*, B.
[7] *Nove sovent*, D.
[8] *mult lour*, B.
[9] *mult merveyllous*, C. D.
[10] *qe fust en*, C. *qe suist en*, D.
[11] B. C., with the omission of *Amen*.
[12] *de la torere*, D.
[13] *Et quanqe*, C. *Et kaunt qe*, D. *ke* appears superfluous.
[14] *loaist*, C.
[15] *A* omitted in C. *Dieu de cel myracle*, D.
[16] *i deveit*, B.
[17] *de Jerusalem*, C.

Often spoke of peace with Richard and Philip,
Offers them the city, and would surrender it to them,
On condition that no one of his people who were inside
Should be arrested or lose member.
Neither of these two kings agreed to that offer,
Nor could the Saracen surrender to them
The cities nor the lands which Richard demanded;
Wherefore the Saracen returned into Acre,
And the Christians went to the assault.
News often came to them which much comforted them,
A wonderful arrow from within, in it was written
The sentence which follows, all in Latin.

In nomini Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti.
Amen.

There was no Christian who ever knew
How nor through whom the arrow passed out,
And came from the tower which Richard was besieging;
And whatever the Saracen within was planning
Was written in the arrow; king Richard praised
God for that miracle, and praise him he ought.

To Philip and Richard the Saracens desired
Often to surrender the city, and firmly promised
That they would deliver up the holy land of Jerusalem,
And twenty thousand Christians whom they had in prison.

Ne Phelippe ne Rychard de ço s'affyaynt ;[1]
Mès de jour en altre al salt[2] alaynt.
A breach made in the walls. Les minours Rychard les founz del mour[3] percaynt,
Et un graundesyme pece del mour cravauntaynt.[4]
Les Frauncays cel houre minaynt et gettaynt,
Et vers la Thour Maldite sur les mours entraynt.
Les Sarazyns saunz doute tost les rechascaynt ;
A plusurs donaynt playes, et plusurs tuaynt.
Les Englays à lour bryke[5] taunt ben combataynt,
Ke à lour ray Rychard vaye esé[6] fesaynt.
Richard [i] est entré,[7] les Sarazyns ly vaynt,[8]
Tutes lur rychesses à ly comaundaynt.[9]
Les Frauncays trestuz Phelippe escryaynt,
" Entrez en la cyté ke tes[10] gens i sayent ;
" Prys sunt les Sarazyns, tes vayes[11] estopaynt."
Acre is taken. Ore est la vile de Acre par Rychard saysye,
Sa baner en la thour en signe de mestrie.
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ouf sa[12] chuvalerye,
Il boute sa baner, nul ly countredye.
Le duk de Austrice i vent, et[13] sa banere desplye,
La boute en une thorele cum homme de compaynye
Ke fust al assaut de Crestyen partye.
Le ray Rychard en taunt ne se paye mye,[14]
Fet venir le duk, demaunde par hatye,

---

[1] *de ceo saffieieint*, B. *se afyaint*, C. *se affyaynt*, D. Robert of Brunne translates, " Thei treistid not ther-" tille."

[2] *à l'asaut*, B. *à l'assaut*, C. *à l'assalt*, D.

[3] *de mures*, B. *Richard les mures percaint*, C. *de mour*, D.

[4] *du mur cravanteient*, B. *del mure cravantaynt*, C. *del mur craventaynt*, D.

[5] *à lour brige*, B. *ad lour brike*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this line, " The Inglis at ther triste " bifor tham bare alle doun."

[6] *voie aisé*, B. *vey esée*, C. D.

[7] *Le rei Richard en entre*, B. *Richard i est entré*, C. D.

[8] *luy vayent*, D.

[9] *recomandeient*, B. C. D.

[10] *tels*, D.

[11] *qe ces veies*, B.

[12] *od sa*, B. *ou sa*, C. D.

[13] *et* omitted in B. and C.

[14] *de taunt ne s'apaia mie*, B. *ne se paia mye*, C. D.

Neither Philip nor Richard trusted in that,
But from day to day went to the assault.
Richard's miners pierced the foundation of the wall,
And threw down a very great piece of the wall.
The French at that time were mining and casting,
And were entering on the walls towards the tower Maudite.
The Saracens without doubt soon drove them back;
To many they gave wounds, and many they slew.
The English at their combat fought so well,
That they made an easy way for their king Richard.
Richard is entered there, the Saracens yielded to him,
They surrendered to him all their riches.
All the French shouted to Philip,
" Enter the city, that thy people may be there;
" The Saracens are taken who stopped thy way."

Now is the town of Acre taken possession of by Richard,
His banner on the tower in sign of mastery.
King Philip of France, with his knights,
Fixes his banner, no one prevents him.
The duke of Austria comes there, and unfolds his banner,
Raises it on a tower as a man of the company
Who was at the assault on the Christian party.
King Richard thereupon is not at all satisfied,
He sends for the duke, demands with haughtiness,

King Richard and the duke of Austria.

" Coment teens-tu ta terre,[1] de ky seygnurye?
" Et pour quay ta baner as boté par mestrie
" Entre baners as rays,[2] saunz avouuerye?"
" Sir rays," dist le duk, " pour veirs le ws dye,
" Jo suy cy venuz en Crystyene vye
" Destrure à moun poer la mescreauncye;
" Et, sire, si ws[3] plest, jo tenk ma ducherye
" De Deu et de saint Pere, par lour garauntye."
" Sire duk," dist le rays,[4] " par le fiz Marye,
" Si tu n'as seygnur, ta terre ert altrye."
Après orrez quel mal avynt de cel[5] envye.
Akre fu perdue, ke ore est regayné;
Les deus rays i sount of molt grant mesné,
A cels sustenir[6] la terre est molt chargé,
De beyvre et manger[7] kaunt est[8] la chereté.
Entre les deus rays par taunt fu ordyné,
Ke l'oste Cristyen fu là devysé
Aler en deus partyes sur les enemys Dé.

The army divided in two.

Devisez [est] en deus le hoste[9] par accordaunce.
Conquer un chastel enprist le ray de Fraunce
Ad une jorné de Acre, ke molt fist grevaunce[10]
Maynt jour à Kristyens, trop fu[11] la tenaunce.
Le ray Rychard s'en va par Deu et sa pussaunce,
Viii. jornés ad conquys sur les mescreaunce.[12]

King Philip besieges a castle.

Le ray Phelippe cel houre avait[13] nule chaunce
Le chastel conquere, par fet ne par manaunce.
Le ray Richard l'oyt dire, doute de descayvaunce,[14]
Ke forsclos serrayt[15] de graunt chevisaunce,

---

[1] *Coment tienes ta tere*, B.
[2] *des reys*, B. *au reys*, C. *al reis*, D.
[3] *si le vous plest*, C. *s'il vous plest*, D.
[4] *dit Richard*, B.
[5] *de cele*, B.
[6] *A tels gens sustenir*, B. C. D.
[7] *e de manger*, B. C.
[8] *grant est*, C. D.
[9] *Devisez est en dous l'ost*, B. C. D.
[10] *fist grant grevaunce*, B.
[11] *trop fort fu*, C. D.
[12] *sur la mescreaunce*, B. C. D.
[13] *n'avoit*, B.
[14] *doute deceivaunce*, B. C. D.
[15] *fort chose serrait*, C.

" How holdest thou thy land? of whose seignory?
" And why hast thou raised thy banner by force
" Between the banners of the kings, without autho-
" rity?"
" Sir king," said the duke, "for truth I tell it you,
" I am come here in Christian life
" To destroy to my power the infidels;
" And, sire, if you please, I hold my duchy
" Of God and St. Peter, by their warrantry."
" Sir duke," said the king, "by the Son of Mary,
" If thou hast not a seigneur, thy land will belong to
" another."
Afterwards you will hear what evil sprang from this jealousy.

Acre was lost, which now is regained;
The two kings are there with very great company;
The land is heavily charged to support them,
Great is the dearness of drinking and eating.
Between the two kings it was therefore resolved,
That the Christian army was there divided
To go in two parts against the enemies of God.

The army is divided into two by agreement.
The king of France undertook to subdue a castle
At a day's journey from Acre, which did great grievance
Many a day to the Christians; very strong was the force which held it.
King Richard departed, through God and his power,
He has conquered eight days' journey on the infidels.
King Philip at this time had no chance
Of subduing the castle, by act or by threat.
King Richard heard it said, fears deceit,
That he should be cut off from great aid,

Si le ray Phelippe i feist demoraunce,
Et le soudan[1] venist sur ly par purveaunce.
Sun host tost retorne, of tresor saunz noumbraunce,[2]
Et al ray Phelippe revent en aydaunce.

King Philip returns to Acre.

Kaunt le rays Phelippe par mareschal savayt
Coment le rays Richard si loynz conquys avayt,
Coment et pur quay retorner volayt,
Dist à ses barouns, "Nus ne fesums[3] esplayt,
" Rethornoms vers Acre, kar hounte nous serrayt,
" Si en nos presences ço chastel conquys sayt
" Par le ray Richard, et meyns[4] [nus] doterayt
" Payen, et Kristyens meyns nus honurayt."

Richard arrives to besiege the castle.

Le ray Phelippe repaire[5] vers Acre of sa gente ;
Le ray Richard i vent of pavylloun et tente.[6]
A loger se fet ben et rychemente,
De manger et [de] bayvre[7] kaunt fet à talente,
Ses waytes establye, et al repos se prent.
Al matyn se leve, et à la messe[8] attent ;
A Deu et ad sa mere prya devotement
De aide et soccour, autresi[9] verrayment
Cum tut[10] sun desir ad doné playnement
Venger la mort Jhesu sur Pylatyn parent.
Ore ad le ray Richard sa[11] messe paroye ;
Escotez cum dist à la[12] chuvalerye.
" Del ray Phelippe ne avoms soccours ne aye ;[13]
" Pensez de vos honurs,[14] ne me fayllez mye ;
" A Deu face le avou, jà[15] jour de ma vye

---

[1] *saldun*, D.
[2] *sanz numbre*, C.
[3] *nus vus fesoms*, B.
[4] *meins nous d.*, B. C. D.
[5] *reperire*, B.
[6] *ouf pavilloun estent*, C.
[7] *e de beivere*, B. C. D.
[8] *e sa messe*, B. *et la messe*, C. D.
[9] *De aie e de socour auxi v.*, B. *De aye et de socour autresi verrayment*, C. *De aye et socour*, D.
[10] *Cum tretut*, C. D.
[11] *la*, B. C.
[12] *cum il dit à sa*, B. *cum il dist à la c.*, C. D.
[13] *socour ne nul aie*, B. *socour*, D.
[14] *nos honeurs*, B.
[15] *faz le vou qe jà jour*, B. *face le wou jà l'our*, C. *face le vow jà jour*, D.

If king Philip make delay there,
And the soldan should come upon him in force.
His army immediately turns back, with treasure without count,
And returns to the assistance of king Philip.

When king Philip knew by a marshal
How king Richard had conquered so far,
How and why he intended to return,
He said to his barons, " We obtain no success;
" Let us return towards Acre, for it would be shame " to us
" If in our presence that castle be conquered
" By king Richard, and less would fear us
" The pagan, and the Christian would honour us less."

King Philip returns towards Acre with his people;
King Richard comes there with pavilion and tent.
He causes himself to be lodged well and richly.
When he has caused to eat and drink at will,
He establishes his sentinels, and gives himself to repose
In the morning he rises, and attends at mass;
To God and to his mother he prayed devoutly
For aid and succour, inasmuch truly
As he had given all his desire fully
To avenge the death of Jesus upon the kindred of Pilate.

Now has king Richard finished hearing his mass;
Hear how he spoke to the knights.
" From king Philip we have neither succour nor aid;
" Think of your honours, do not fail me at all;
" To God I make the vow, never day of my life

" Plus près Akre vendray, avaunt ke ay[1] saisye
" Mesmes cel chastel, ke Phelippe ad guerpye ;
" Refusé nous ad par molt grant envye ;[2]
" Alums à l'assalt, Jhesu nous condye !"

The English attack the castle.

Le fossé est molt large,[3] et parfound assez,
Le chastel de tutes pars[4] est environez ;
Une chaucé estrayt, et puys un pount-levez,
Tut drait jekes à la porte, of dobble cheyne barrez.
La porte fust overt, des Sarazyns armez[5]
Cynkaunte ad cel entré sunt porters assignez.
Des mangonels[6] et lenges al ray ount gettez.
Les Crystiens encountre autel les ount[7] maundez.
X. sergauns des plus fers et des melz[8] vanez

The king's bravery.

Devaunt le cors le ray sa targe[9] ount portez.
Il mesmes, cum geaunt, les cheynes ad coupez ;
Tut drayt à la porte est ly rays passez,
Combaty cum leoun, sun destrer fu tuez,
Et le ray Rychard la presse perçayt al pez,

He enters the castle.

Parmy les Sarazyns le chastel est entrez.
Les Cristyens ben quidaynt ke pris fust[10] et menez.
" Le ray Richard est mort !" ount ly Normaunz cryez ;
Tuent et destruent les gens renayez,
Le chastel ount saysy, et si ount trovez
Le ray Rychard al des en la sale mountez,
Combataunt of chens Sarazyns nomez ;
Tuez sunt trestouz, for[s] trays renomez,
Quels al ray Phelippe Richard ad presentez.
Molt est graunt honur as Englays avenu
De lur ray Richard, taunt valliaunt tenu.

---

[1] *qe j'ei*, B.
[2] *haitye*, C.
[3] *Des fossez mult large*, B.
[4] *de tote pars*, B. *Le chaustel totes partz*, C. D.
[5] *de Sarazins arivez*, B. C.
[6] *De mangonels*, B.
[7] *encountre au tiels unt m.*, B. *encountre à altels les unt m.*, C. *autels*, D.
[8] *e de melz*, D.
[9] *le targe*, C.
[10] *Les Cristiens quideient qe pris est*, B. C. D.

" Will I come nearer to Acre, before I have gained
" possession of
" This same castle, which Philip has forsaken ;
" He has refused us through very great jealousy ;
" Let us go to the assault, Jesus be our guide ! "

The moat is very large, and deep enough,
The castle on all sides is surrounded by it ;
A narrow causeway, and then a drawbridge,
Right up to the gate, barred with double chain.
The gate was open, of armed Saracens
Fifty are assigned as porters at that entrance.
With mangonels and slings they have cast at the king.
The Christians have sent against them similarly.
Ten sergeants of the fiercest and most famous
Have carried his shield before the king's body.
He himself, like a giant, has cut the chains ;
Straight to the gate is the king passed,
Combated like a lion, his steed was slain,
And king Richard on foot pierced through the crowd,
Is entered the castle among the Saracens.
The Christians quite thought that he was taken and
carried off.
" King Richard is dead ! " the Normans have cried ;
They slay and destroy the infidel people,
They have gained the castle, and so have found
King Richard mounted on the dais in the hall,
Combating with dogs named Saracens ;
They are all slain, except three of name,
Whom Richard has presented to king Philip.

Very great is the honour accrued to the English
By their king Richard, esteemed so valiant.

King Philip's mortification.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce est durement envieu,[1]
Ke pur le chastel prendre, ke est ore[2] rendu,
Ala ses bens despendre, [et] si les ad[3] perdu.
Le soldan[4] par espyes ad ben entendu
Ke le ray Phelippe ne se paye[5] poynt del jeu.[6]
Du soldan par lettre à Phelippe est venu,
Et du ray Richard un Sarazyn resceu;
Il vent en message, si est trop ben conu,[7]
Et dist al deus[8] rays, "Le soldan ws salu,
" Et dist ke pur set aunz bon serrayt le treu;
" Kar si vostre Deu est de tel[9] vertu,
" Cum ws ly avez preché al North et al Seu,
" Nous serroums de ça issynt purveu,[10]
" Ke la terre ert vostre, et nous convertu,
" Saunz plus de saunk espandre ke n'est ore[11] espaundu.
" Le waynum[12] saunz chalaunge ws sait retenu."

The soldan proposes a truce for seven years.

King Philip in favour of of it, but Richard disapproves.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce ad tost[13] respoundu,
" Ke[14] mesure refuse, sovent est[15] desceu."
"Allas!" dist Rychard, "ke unkes nul tel dit
" Sur promesse de paen[16] de Krystyen issyst.
" Nus sumes cy venuz servir[17] Jhesu Kryst,
" Ke pur nus morust, kant en la croyz pendist;[18]
" Nus sumes tuz ses fiz, il nus formast[19] et fist,
" Nus chalangoums la terre où nostre pere nasquit,

---

[1] *emeu*, D.
[2] *ore est*, B.
[3] *e si les ad*, B. C. D.
[4] *Ke le soudan*, C.
[5] *Phelipp se paye*, D.
[6] *de jeu*, B.
[7] *message, trop fu bien*, B. C. D.
[8] *à deus*, C. D.
[9] *sait de tel*, C. D.
[10] *issint tiel hour purveu*, B. *de ça cel hour issint p.*, C. *de cy à cel houre issint*, D.
[11] *ore* omitted in B. C.
[12] *Le gayn*, B. *La waigne*, C. *Le waygne*, D.
[13] *ad tant r*, B.
[14] *Qi*, B. *Ki*, D.
[15] *est sovent*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne renders king Philip's reply in two lines:—
"And said, 'Ther men bedis skille,
" 'skille men ouh to take;
" 'Tho that wille not that tille,
" 'skille salle tham forsake.'"
[16] *Pur promesse du paen*, B. *du paen du Cristien*, C.
[17] *de servir*, B. *pur servir*, C.
[18] *morust en croiz quant p.*, C. D.
[19] *forma*, B. *fourmayt*, D.

King Philip of France is deeply mortified,
Who to take the castle, which is now surrendered,
Went to spend his goods, and so has lost them.
The soldan by spies has well understood
That king Philip is not at all satisfied with the game.
From the soldan by letter is come to king Philip,
And by king Richard a Saracen received;
He comes on message, and is very well known,
And says to the two kings, " The soldan salutes you,
" And says that a truce for seven years would he good;
" For if your God is of such power
" As you have preached of him to North and to South,
" We shall be by that time so prepared
" That the land shall be yours, and we converted,
" Without shedding more blood than is shed already.
" Let the gain be retained by you without dispute."
King Philip of France has immediately replied,
" Who refuses reason, is often deceived."

" Alas!" said Richard, " that ever any such saying,
" On the promise of a pagan, should issue from a
" Christian.
" We are come here to serve Jesus Christ,
" Who died for us, when he hung on the cross;
" We are all his sons, he formed and made us;
" We claim the land where our father was born,

" Ke ly puaunt paen sur Crystyen conquyst.
" Si il la rendre volent par [1] pes saunz countredit,
" De lur conversioun ben averoum respit.
" Et, sire, si ço noun, aloums of graunt delyt,
" Conquere par le espeye ke Krystien perdist.
" Ky sun dever ne face pur quai la croyce prist,[2]
" Hastivement ly preygne la male mort subit." [3]

King Philip prepares for his departure,

Phelippe, ray de Fraunce, assez tost entendist [4]
Ke le ray Rychard assenter [5] ne vousist
Al soldan [6] trewe prendre, se teust [7] et surrist,
Et de jour en altre privément purvyst
Repair[er] [8] en sun pays, et sovent requist

Richard's displeasure.

Congé del ray Rychard par gens ke ly [9] transmist.
Ly dist ke maladye si fort ly susprit,
Ke endurer ne pout saunz cocher en lyt,
Et ad Deu [10] voler comaunder l'espiryt.
Rychard, saunz demore, trop dolent respoundit,
" Si le ray Phelippe desore me faillyst,
" Et ad Dampnedeu covenaunt ne tenist,
" Molt serrayt chalangé de ço ke ly promist ; [11]
" En ly est la demore, en sun [12] plaisir gist
" Demorer ou aler, à Deu est le despit."

Disputes between the two kings.

Sovent avaunt cel houre estayt graunt destaunce
Entre le ray Richard et le ray de Fraunce,
Ke par compaynye et par fet de covenaunce [13]
Demaunda la mayté de terre et tenaunce [14]
Ke le ray Richard conquist par sa launce [15]
Sur le ray de Cypre, où il ne myst [16] aydaunce.

---

[1] *s'il la voilent rendre, pur pes*, B. *si il la volent rendre par pees*, C. D.
[2] *perist*, D.
[3] *la mort subit*, C.
[4] *assetz entendit*, B.
[5] *assentir*, D.
[6] *A Saladin*, B. *A saudan*, C.
[7] *se teusce*, D.
[8] *Repairer*, B. C. D.
[9] *qe à li*, B. C. D.
[10] *al Dieu*, D.
[11] *de ceo q'il promist*, B.
[12] *e à son*, B.
[13] *et par covenaunce*, B.
[14] *et de tenaunce*, B. C.
[15] *par la launce*, B. C. D.
[16] *il mist*, B. *n'en eust eydance*, D.

" Which the stinking pagan conquered from Christian.
' If they will surrender it by peace without dispute,
" We will willingly accept respite of their conversion.
" And, sire, if not so, let us go with great joy,
" To conquer by the sword what the Christian lost.
" Who performs not his duty for which he took the
" cross,
" May evil and sudden death take him quickly."
Philip, king of France, soon enough heard
That king Richard would not assent
To take truce of the soldan, he was silent and smiled,
And from day to day secretly provided
To return into his country, and often asked
Leave of king Richard by people whom he sent to him.
He told him that sickness so violent had hold of him,
That he could not endure without lying in his bed,
And recommending his soul to God's will.
Richard, without delay, in great grief replied,
" If king Philip henceforward desert me,
" And hold not his covenant to the Lord,
He will be much blamed for that which he promised
" him ;
The delay rests with him, it lies in his pleasure
To remain or depart, the offence is against God."

Often before that time there was great dissension
Between king Richard and the king of France,
Who, by company and by act of agreement,
Demanded half of the land and lordship
Which king Richard conquered by his spear
From the king of Cyprus, in which he gave no assist-
ance.

Et par taunt Phelippe, par graunt[1] humiliaunce,
Fist al ray Richard une quite clamaunce
De trestut sun wayne, et sur ço ly fyaunce
Gascoyne et Normendye garder de grevaunce,
Cum sa terre demene, of sa[2] pussaunce.
Phelippe prent congé saunz plus de parlaunce;
Philip gives the command of his army to the duke of Burgundy.
Ad Huge de Borgoyne, duk de graunt[3] vayllaunce,
Comaunda sun host, desuz la[4] governaunce
Ly bon ray Richard, ke saunz demoraunce
Court sur Saladyn, molt fust en graunt dotaunce[5]
Al feloun de[6] Cesaré, escotez ore la chaunce.
Philip's departure.
Le ray Phelippe s'en va par mer vers Lumbardye,[7]
Repaire en sun pays pur sa maladye,
Et le duk de Austrice en la compaynye.
Le ray Richard demort of sa[8] chuvalerye,
En Akres et Antyoche[9] gardayns establye,
Richard resumes hostilities.
Et vers C[a]yphas[10] sa baner desplye.
Pres de ly fu tuz jours plenté de navye.
Après de jour en altre Saladyn espye;[11]
A Joppen[12] kaunt il vent, Saladyn n'y est mye.[13]
Sus en la mountayne[14] du floum Cesarye
Est[15] sire Saladyn, espyaunt enbuschye;
Et tuz[16] les Sarazyns de sa seygnurye
Sunt venuz à deffendre le floum[17] par espeye,

---

[1] *od grant*, B. *en grant*, D.
[2] *Cum de sa terre demeyne od tote sa*, B. *ouf tut son puissaunce*, C. *oue tote sa pussaunce*, D.
[3] *graunt* omitted in B.
[4] *sa g.*, B.
[5] *en grant grevaunce*, B.
[6] *Au flum de*, B. *Al flum de*, C. D.
[7] *Philipp de Fraunce par mere vers L.*, C.
[8] *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D.
[9] *En Acres, en Antioche*, B.
[10] *Cayphas*, B. C. D.
[11] *l'espie*, B.
[12] *Al Joppen*, C.
[13] *n'est mye*, C. *kaunt i veent, Saladyn ne est mye*, D.
[14] *en la funtayne de*, B. *de flum*, C.
[15] *Et*, C.
[16] *Od touz*, B. *Ouf tuz*, C. *En touz*, D.
[17] *del flum*. D.

And in consequence Philip, by great humiliation,
Made to king Richard a quit-claimance
Of all his gain, and on that gives assurance to him
To preserve from injury Gascony and Normandy,
As his own land, with his power.
Philip takes leave without more talk;
To Hugh of Burgundy, a duke of great valour,
He entrusted his army under the government
Of good king Richard, who without delay
Marches against Saladin; he was in very great fear
At the river of Cæsarea, hear now what happened.

King Philip proceeds by sea towards Lombardy,
Returns to his country for his sickness,
And the duke of Austria in his company.
King Richard remains with his knights,
He establishes wardens in Acres and Antioch,
And towards Caiaphas displays his banner.
Near him was always plenty of ships.
Afterwards from day to day Saladin watches him;
When he comes to Joppa, Saladin is not there.
Up in the mountain of the river of Cæsarea
Is sir Saladin, keeping watch in his ambuscade;
And all the Saracens of his lordship
Are come to defend the river by the sword,

Saladin opposes the crusaders.

Ke Richard n'y passe,[1] ne nul de sa partye,
Saunz aver batayllе of sa[2] paenerye.
Saladyn les hoers[3] del floum[4] ad saysye,
Et Rychard vent si près ke Saladyn s'affye
Rychard utraer, et aver la mestrie
De tuz les Kristyens ke là furent en vye.

Battle of Cæsarea.

Le ray Richard aproche devers Cesarée;
Le floum ly estout passer si trover put le gué.
Les hoers du floum ad Saladyn estopé,[5]
Par ount le passage al rays[6] est vée.
Richard regard, et vait la terre environné
De tuz les Sarazyns ke pount porter espé;
E dist le ray Richard, "Mercy la mere Dé![7]
" Purquai nus venimes, ore le avoums trové!"
Et kant vait k'il ne poet par poer de mené

Sir Jaques de Avennes.

Passer, ne reprendre vaye en salveté,
Sun host en trays escheles tost ad devysé.
Sire Jakes de Aucunes,[8] chuvaler esprové,
De gentil norture et noble parenté,[9]
De pruesse en fet, de drait[10] verité,
De vigour en bataille, de sen avysé,
Paringal[11] ne avait en terre où fu née,
De la primere[12] eschele pur Deu ad prié;
Le ray Richard l'ottrye[13] pur sa graunt bounté,
Et cyl du ray Richard pur tuz jours prent congé.[14]

---

[1] *ne passe*, C.

[2] *od la*, B. *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D.

[3] *oers*, B.

[4] *de flum*, D.

[5] *Les oers ad Saladyn du flum estoppé*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Passage non he " nam, the forthes wer withsette."

[6] *al Richard*, D.

[7] *Mercie mere Dé*, B. C. D.

[8] *de Avenne*, B. *de Acunes*, C. *de Aucunes*, D. "Sir James of " Avenu," Robert of Brunne. In Hoveden the name is Avennes.

[9] *nureture de parenté*, B. *norture de noble parentée*, D.

[10] *en drayt*, C.

[11] *Parigal*, C. D. "Pere had he non " in the lond ther he was born," Robert of Brunne.

[12] *de primere*, B.

[13] *R. otrie*, B.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

That Richard pass not there, nor any of his party,
Without having battle with the pagans.
Saladin has seized the passes of the river,
And Richard comes so near that Saladin is confident
To overcome Richard, and have the mastery
Of all the Christians who were there alive.

King Richard approaches towards Cæsarea;
It was necessary for him to pass the river, if he could find the ford.
Saladin had stopped the shallows of the river,
Whereby the passage is forbidden to the king.
Richard regards, and sees the land surrounded
With all the Saracens who are capable of bearing sword;
And says king Richard, "Thanks to the mother of God!
"For what we came, now we have found it!"
And when he sees that he cannot by force of troops
Pass, nor retrace his way in safety,
He has immediately divided his army into three squadrons.
Sir Jacques de Avennes, a knight of experience,
Of gentle nurture and noble kin,
Of prowess in deed, of very truth,
Of courage in battle, of prudent mind,
Equal he had none in the land where he was born,
Has begged in God's name for the first squadron;
King Richard grants it to him for his great goodness,
And he takes his leave of king Richard for ever.

La secounde eschele al rays est reservé.
Al duk de Burgoyne la terce est comaundé,
[Et] al[1] mestre du Temple, of sa fraternité.

The army of the infidels.

En l'ost par de là du[2] pople canyn
La primere eschele tynt sir Saladyn;
Paen plus vayllaunt ne fust en tut sun lyn.
En la secounde eschele estayt sir Coradyn,
Seygnur des Dames,[3] et fiz Saffadyn;[4]
Soudan plus curtays ne gustayt unkes vyn.[5]
De la terce eschele mestre fu Melchyn,
Seygnur de Baudas, et de Methyffasyn,[6]
Seygnur de Galilée, et del leu où Kayn
Tua sun frere Abel par feloun engyn.
Sire Jakes de Avennes, verray pelryn,
Se seygna[7] de la croyce, et prent sun chemyn
Sur la primere eschele, cum lever[8] sur mastyn.

Death of Sir Jaques de Avennes.

Deus fez passa parmy, et du braund[9] asceryn
Tua paens saunz noumbre; mès Calaphès Duryn[10]
Coupa la jaumbe destre sir Jakes, à l'houre s'e[n]clyn,[11]
Et dist, "O ray Richard, je suy tun[12] cosyn;
"Le ray Henri, tun pere, en chastel Constantyn,[13]

---

[1] *E al*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this with some additions:—

"With [him] were the Templars,
"and ther fraternité,
"Fals in alle maners, so tellis the
"stori me."

Robert wrote after the Templars had been condemned and proscribed.

[2] *par là et del*, B.

[3] *Seigneur de Damas*, B. C. D. And Robert of Brunne translates it, "lord of Damas."

[4] *Saladyn*, C. *Fassadyn*, D.

[5] "Soudan so curteys never drank "no wyne," Robert of Brunne. Pierre de Langtoft was so earnest in using his French poetical phrases, that he forgot or probably he did not know, that the Mahometans prohibited the use of wine.

[6] *Mechiphasyn*, C. *e Melchifasyn*, D. "And Sir Matifasyn," Robert of Brunne.

[7] *Se signe*, B. C. D.

[8] *leverer*, B. C. *leverere*, D. Robert of Brunne translates, "als "grehound or mastif," if Hearne has not printed *or* for *on*.

[9] *du brank*, C. *braunt*, D.

[10] "Sir Kalaphes Duryns," Robert of Brunne.

[11] *s'enclyn*, B. D.

[12] *jeo fu toun*, C. *jeo su ton*, D.

[13] *Costantin*, B.

THE INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
ST. MICHAEL'S COLLEGE
LIBRARY

The second (middle) squadron is reserved to the king.
The third is entrusted to the duke of Burgundy,
And to the master of the Temple, with his brotherhood.

In the army of the canine people on the other side,
The first squadron held sir Saladin;
There was not a pagan more valiant in all his lineage.
In the second squadron was sir Coradin,
Lord of Damascus, and son of Saffadin;
A more courteous soldan never tasted wine.
The master of the third squadron was Melchin,
Lord of Baudas, and of Methyfasin,
Lord of Galilee, and of the place where Cain
Slew his brother Abel by wicked craft.
Sir Jacques de Avennes, a true pilgrim,
Signed himself with the cross, and takes his way
Upon the first squadron, like greyhound on mastiff.
Twice he passed through, and with the blade of steel
Slew pagans without number; but Calaphès Durin
Cut off sir Jacques's right leg, at the moment he bows down,
And says, "O king Richard, I am thy cousin;
"King Henry, thy father, in the castle of Con-
" stantine,

" Engendra ma mere sur dame Avelyn,
" Countasse de la Marche, par Deu [1] et saint Martyn ;
" Venez venger ma mort sur ço Sarazyn."
Jakes de rechef de l'espeye [2] Colonyn
Assene [3] sir Kalaphé [4] aval du patryn,[5]
L'enboela parmy ; pur veir, en la fyn
Sire Jakes perdist les braz,[6] et lendemayn matyn
Fu sun cors [7] trové près du cors Baudewyn,
Frere de l'Hospital, fiz le quens Paulyn,
Seygnur de Morayn [8] et du Mount Moryn.

Encounter between king Richard and Saladin.

Kaunt le ray savayt sire Jakes [9] fu tuez,
Vers le floum s'en va cum home forsenez.
Kaunt Saladyn ly vait, de bone voluntez
Aproche al ray Rychard, jà sunt encountrez,
Un rays et un soldan du mound les melz [10] vanez.
Pour veir, le primer coup de Richard donez [11]
En la haume [12] de sa launce, les pez ly sunt levez,
La cowe sun destrer sun chef ad tochez,
Le soldan est chaeu, et tost [est] [13] remountez,
Et le ray Richard le floum ad recovrez ;
Les gens de sa eschele le floum sunt tuz passez.
Pour veir en cel contemple sunt tuez et naez
Quaraunte mil paens et mil de baptisez.[14]
En la drayn eschele sunt dure demenez
Templers et Frauncays,[15] sir Huge est rebotez,[16]

---

[1] *pur Deu*, D.

[2] *de espey*, C. *d'espeye*, D. Cologne was celebrated for it blades of fine steel.

[3] *Assena*, C. D.

[4] *Calaphès*, B. *Caleph*é, D.

[5] *peitrin*, B. *paytrin*, D.

[6] *le braz*, D.

[7] *Fu le corps*, B.

[8] *Morian*, B. C. D. " Was lord " of Morian alle and of Mount " Modyn," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *qe Jakes*, D.

[10] *du munde meuz*, B. C. D.

[11] *qe Richard l'ad donez*, B. *le primer coupe Richard l'ad donez*, C. *coup Richard l'ad donez*, D.

[12] *En le helme*, D.

[13] *tost est*, B.

[14] *et mille baptizez*, C. *e mil des baptysez*, D.

[15] Robert of Brunne, with his feeling against the Templers, translates here, " The Templers ilka " dele failed and thien fled."

[16] *sire Hughe est rebukés*, B. C. D.

" Begat my mother on lady Avelin,
" Countess of La Marche, by God and St. Martin;
" Come and avenge my death on that Saracen."
Jacques again with his sword of Cologne
Strikes sir Calaphès below the breast,
Pierced him through the bowels; for truth, in the end
Sir Jacques lost his arms, and on the morrow morning
His body was found near the body of Baldwin,
A brother of the Hospital, son of count Paulin.
Lord of Morian and of Mount Morin.

When the king knew that sir Jacques was slain,
He proceeds towards the river like a man out of his mind.
When Saladin sees him, with good will
He approaches king Richard, now are they met,
A king and a soldan the most famous in the world.
For a truth, the first blow given by Richard
On the helm with his spear, his feet are raised up,
The tail of his horse has touched his head,
The soldan is fallen, he is soon remounted,
And king Richard has gained possession of the river;
The men of his squadron have all passed the river.
For a truth in this struggle are slain and drowned
Forty thousand pagans and a thousand of the baptized.
In the last squadron are hard bested
Templars and Frenchmen, sir Hugh is driven back,

The French hard pressed.

Ke duk est de Borgoyne, et sovent ad cryez,
" Gentyl ray Richard, rethornez et aydez,
" Ou morir nus covent, taunt sumes enchacez!"
De Jerusalem le ray Guyoun gentis
Dist al ray Richard, " Sire, tornez le vis;
" Le duk et sa eschele sunt jà taunt suppris,
" Ke[1] le soldan Saladyn à poy les ad conquis.
" Les freres of la croyce[2] tapisent cum futys;[3]
" Nes un fet sun dever fors Raynald ly Marchys."
Dist le ray Richard, " Par le cors saint Dynys,

Richard comes to their aid, and gains the victory.

" Of le ayde Deu,[4] si le duk sait pris,
" Tost sera delivré de ly paen chaitifs."
Le rays lest le floum, sun chemyn ad repris,
Et le duk aquite des mayns ses enemys.[5]
Le duk perdist cel houre chuvalers trent et sys,
Trais cens de pytaille, sergauns c. et dys.
Et de cel eschele kaunt ke sunt remys
Fet le ray passer le floum à lour amys.
De la mayn Richard ilokes est occys
Le[6] fiz le ray de Dare, copez ly fu le quys.[7]
Le soldan Saladyn est taunt dure assis,
Se prent à la mountayne en fuaunt[8] par pays.
Al floum de Cesarée Richard enporte[9] le prys.
Richard rays Englays va saysir[10] Cesarée,
Joppen, de[11] Scaloun, Cadès, de Japhé,
Et al ray Guyoun la garde ad doné.
Le duk de Burgoyn est si mal naffré,[12]
Ke ly cyrogen[13] del duk est desperé,

---

[1] *Ke* omitted in D.
[2] *od les croices*, B.
[3] *en futys*, D.
[4] *de Dieu*, B. C. D.
[5] *des e.*, B.
[6] *Le* omitted in D.
[7] *la quisse*, B.
[8] *Et prent à la m. fuant*, C.
[9] *emprent*, B. C. D.
[10] *ad saisye*, D.
[11] *et Scalon*, B. C. D.
[12] *si mal mené*, D.
[13] *li surigien*, B. *sirogene*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this passage, " That his leche was in ille " hope of him."

Who is duke of Burgundy, and often he has cried,
" Gentle king Richard, return and aid us,
" Or we must die, so hard are we pressed !"

Of Jerusalem the noble king Guy
Says to king Richard, " Sire, turn your face ;
" The duke and his squadron are now so oppressed,
" That the soldan Saladin has almost overcome them.
" The brothers with the cross seek hiding places like
" fugitives ;
" Not one does his duty except Rainald the marquis."
Says king Richard, " By the body of St. Denis,
" With God's aid, if the duke be taken,
" He shall soon be delivered from the rascally pagans."
The king leaves the river, has retraced his way,
And rescues the duke from the hands of his enemies.
The duke lost at that time thirty-six knights,
Three hundred foot, serjeants a hundred and ten.
And all who remained of this squadron
The king caused to pass the river to their friends.
There is slain by the hand of Richard,
The son of the king of Dare ; his thigh was cut off.
The soldan Saladin is so much cast down ;
He takes to the mountain flying across the country.
At the river of Cæsarea Richard carries off the prize.

Richard the English king goes and takes possession
of Cæsarea,
Joppa, Ascalon, Cades, and Jaffa,
And has given them in guard to king Guy.
The duke of Burgundy is so badly wounded,
That the duke's surgeon is without hope,

Richard returns to Acre.

Et le ray Richard molt descomforté.
Le ray le mene vers Acre pur aver la saunté.[1]
Et en repairaunt voydez ad trové
La vile de Mount Carmele, et de Nazaré;
Chastel Peleryn avaunt avayt wayné,
Caloyune et C[a]yphas[2] ad ly ad proprié;
Pur eser les naffrez en Acre vent de gré.

Saladin makes advances for peace.

Le soldan Saladyn si tost l'ad maundé
Ke parler vodrayt of ly en amysté,
Ne pas al damage de la Kristienté;
Et le rays l'ottrie par counsail du barné.
Venuz est Saladyn en fourme ordiné
Al palays le rays, si l'ad[3] salué.
Saladyn dist, "Sire, tu est[4] prodomme en Dé,
" Tuz ces Kristyens sunt en ta poesté,[5]
" Tu es lur seygnur, jo say ta dignité.
" Si tu vols la pes pur tay et ta mesné,
" Et trewe pour vij. aunz saunz mover medlé,

Richard's reply.

" Jo fray tun assez, si tu vols equité."
" Certes, Saladyn," dist le ray Richer,
" A sustenir le guere assez as-tu poer,
" Et ad respyt[6] prendre tu n'as pas mester;
" Ne jo à graunter lo,[7] ore n'ay eu voler;
" Mès de la rendre si tu vols parler,
" Et la lay mastyne vols renuncyer,
" La pes te graunteray, et te fra[y][8] baptizer;
" Realme te dorray dount te fray corouner."
" Sir," dist Saladyn, "gré te day saver,
" Ke tu saunz deserte me[9] vols honurer;
" Si tote la paynyme pusse[10] justizer,

---

[1] *pur avoir sancté*, B. D. *pur aver santeté*, C.
[2] *Cayphas*, B. *Chaloun et Cayphas*, C.
[3] *et l'ad*, C.
[4] *Sire, tuez*, C.
[5] *Sunt ceaus cristiens touz qe sunt en ta p.*, B.
[6] *Et al respit*, C.
[7] *le*, D.
[8] *fray*, D.
[9] *me sanz desert*, C.
[10] *la paiene justiser*, B.

And king Richard greatly distressed.
The king carries him towards Acre to obtain health.
And in his return he has found deserted
The town of Mount Carmel, and of Nazareth ;
Chateau Pelerin he had gained before,
Caloyune and Caiaphas he has appropriated to himself;
He comes gladly to Acre to give ease to the wounded.
The soldan Saladin has immediately sent him word
That he wishes to talk with him in friendship,
Not to the hurt of Christendom ;
And the king grants it by the advice of his barons.
Saladin is come in the established form
To the king's palace, and has saluted him.
Saladin says, " Sire, thou art a man noble in God ;
" All these Christians are in thy power,
" Thou art their sovereign, I know thy dignity.
" If thou wilt peace for thee and thy people,
" And truce for seven years without stirring up war,
" I will do thy desire, if thou seekest equity."

" Truly, Saladin," said king Richard,
" Thou has power enough to sustain the war,
" And thou hast not need to take respite
" Nor have I to grant it; till the present I have had
" no wish for it.
" But if thou desirest to speak of giving it up,
" And wilt renounce the houndish religion,
" I will grant the peace, and I will cause thee to be
" baptized ;
" I will give thee a kingdom, of which I will cause
" thee to be crowned."
" Sire," said Saladin, " I ought to con thee thanks,
" That thou wilt do me honour without desert ;
" If I could have the rule of all pagandom

" Et nul n'y fust fors may, sir, ne governer,
" Je pusse et jo vousisse à tay acorder.
" Mon frere Saffadyn tent sun regne enter,
" Ses fiz sunt graunz seygnurs, ne volent lesser [1]
" Terre ne tenement pur nuly precher."
" O," dist le ray Richard, " va tay counsayller,
" Et ad terce jour de cy venez ça arer ;[2]
" Cel houre [3] te dirray coment dayt aler,
" A parfere la guere ou la pes fourmer."
Saladyn repaire ad sa compaynye ;

Saffadin intrigues to defeat the object

Et Saffadyn, sun frere, sun repayr espye,
Et maunde al ray Richard par graunt cortaisye
Le meyllour destrer de la paenerye.
Par certayns enseygnes sur tote ço ly prie
Ke en Saladyn trop ne se affye;
Il dist, " Quant il vent entre compaynye,
" Tuz jours le ray Richard par paroles defye,
" Et dist de tay soul tost averayt [4] la mestrie,
" Si tu says taunt vayllaunt cum le monde te crie.
" Rebuke [5] le ben de sa surquiderye.
" Si tu vols chuva[l]s, hernays, ou armerye,
" Sais-tu tote certayn,[6] jo ne te faudray mye."
Saladyn revent al jour establye.

Richard receives news of the French invasion of Normandy.

Le ray Richard cel houre ad novele oye,[7]
Ke les genz de Fraunce sunt en Normendye
Par maundement Phelippe, ses terres ount saysye ;
Et si plus tost ne veygne as Normaunz en aye,
Desheritez serra de sa seygnourye.
Le ray Richard as uns la chose certifye,
Et al parler del trewe [8] al soldan plus se plye.

---

[1] *volent jà l.*, B.
[2] *cea venez arer*, B. *Et la terce jour de cy ca venez arer*, C. *de cy, cya venez arer*, D.
[3] *Del hour*, C.
[4] *avera*, B. C.
[5] *Rebukez*, D.
[6] *Soiez tu certain*, B. *Says tout certayn jeo te ne faudra mye*, C.
[7] *novel ad oye*, C.
[8] *de trewe*, C.

" And no one were there but me, lord or governor,
" I could and I would accord with thee.
" My brother Saffadin holds his kingdom entire;
" His sons are great lords, they will not yield
" Lands or tenements for anybody's preaching."
" Oh," said king Richard, " Go take counsel,
" And on the third day hence come back here;
" At that time I will tell thee how it shall go,
To carry out the war or to establish peace."

Saladin returns to his company;
And Saffadin, his brother, spies his return,
And sends to king Richard with great courtesy
The best steed in the pagan land.
By certain tokens he prays him on all that
That he trust not too much in Saladin;
He says, " When he comes among companions,
" Always by words he defies king Richard
" And says that of thee alone he would soon have the
" mastery,
" If thou be so valiant as the world proclaims thee.
" Rebuke him well for his presumption.
" If thou desirest horses, harness, or arms,
" Be quite certain, I will not fail thee."
Saladin returns on the day fixed.
King Richard at that time has heard news,
That the people of France are in Normandy
By sending of Philip, and have seized his lands;
And if he does not before come in aid to the
Normans,
He will be disinherited of his lordship.
King Richard gives information of the matter to some,
And inclines the more to talk of peace with the soldan.

Second conference with Saladin.

Desuz le mount Tabor, en une praerye,
Est Saladyn venuz, en amour, saunz boydye,
Et prie al ray Richard ke[1] sun playsir ly dye.
Du dyt Saffadyn le rays ad graunt envye;
Par quai à respoundre Richard estudye.
Chose ne volt promettre, si il ne sayt complye;[2]
Respouns ilokes donné à nul jour[3] ert ublye.
Le rays à Saladyn dist en respoundaunt,
" De trewe kant tu parles, tu me voys[4] mokaunt.
" Parmy la paynime[5] le pople est molt graunt,
" Et tu de tute le monde es le plus vayllaunt,[6]
" Le melz apris des armes, et le melz[7] combataunt;
" Pour quai[8] parmy la terre es-tu alé prechaunt,
" Si soul me trovyssez,[9] mountez ou alaunt,
" La teste perderay par coup de launce ou braund?[10]
" Si tu vols ço prover, cy ad leu avenaunt,
" Pur tote ta value ore mey grauntez[11] taunt,
" Combatoums solayns, ke nul n'y sayt aydaunt,[12]
" Et ly quel de nous sait trové recreaunt,
" Accioun et claym perde à remenaunt
" De tote la graunde terre dont Kristyen[13] avaunt
" Fu festuz[14] et saisy, de Deu là suz tenaunt."
" Sire," dist Saladyn, " si homme sait vivaunt,
" Paen ou Crystien, ke unkes oyst kaunt
" Ouf tay soul combatre m'en alay avauntaunt,
" Ou fere à tay despyt, si noun[15] encountraunt
" En bataylle champestre ma terre defendaunt,
" Trestut moun heritage te dorray mayntenaunt."
Le halt mestre du Temple lors[16] vynt procuraunt

---

[1] *ke* omitted in C.
[2] *si ne seit acomplie*, B.
[3] *à nul le jour*, C.
[4] *tu me vas*, C.
[5] *la paene*, B.
[6] *le plus grant*, B.
[7] *apris en armes e meuz c.*, B. *et meltz*, C.
[8] *Par quay*, C. D.
[9] *troissez*, B.
[10] *brank*, C. D.
[11] *me grantez*, B. C. D.
[12] *soleins e nul i aidant*, B. C. D.
[13] *qe Cristien*, B.
[14] *Fu vestu*, B. C. D.
[15] *si moun*, B.
[16] *hors*, B.

Under Mount Tabor, in a meadow,
Saladin is come, in love, without deceit,
And prays king Richard that he will tell him his pleasure.
The king has great ill-will of the saying of Saffadin ;
On which account Richard studies his reply.
He will not promise anything, if it be not carried into effect ;
The reply there given, will never be forgotten.

The king to Saladin says in reply,
" When you talk of truce you are only mocking me.
" Among the pagan lands the population is very ' great,
" And thou art the most valiant of them all,
" The best taught in arms, and the best in fighting ;
" Why hast thou been preaching throught the land,
" If you should find me alone, on horse or on foot,
" I should lose my head by stroke of spear or of sword ?
" If thou wilt prove that, here is a convenient place,
" For all thy worthiness now grant me so much,
" Let us fight alone, that no one assist in it,
" And whichever of us shall be found recreant,
" Let him lose for ever action or claim
" Of all the great land of which the Christian before
" Was enfeoffed and seised, holding it from God there " above."
" Sir," said Saladin, " if there be man living,
" Pagan or Christian, who ever heard when
" I went boasting to fight with thee singly,
" Or to do despite to thee, if not in encountering
" In field of battle defending my land,
" I will give thee now all my heritage."
The high master of the Temple then came pleading

Richard and Saladin agree on a truce for seven years.

Ke sire Saladyn, pur tuz ly mescreaunt,
Promette al ray Richard la trewe parduraunt
Seet aunz en bone pees ; le ray Richard le graunt,
Salve as Krystiens, par ço covenaunt,
Kaunt ke il ount waygné saunz ren recoupaunt.
Le ray Rychard vers Akre sun chymyn repren[t] ;
Le ray Guy et sun fiz fet venir vistement,
Le prince de Antyoche, Raymound, of sa gent ;
Amfrede de Thuroun[1] i vynt bonement ;
Bomound counte de Triple i fu prestement ;
Et Leoun,[2] frere Ruffyn,[3] vent al parlement ;
Et le ray Richard les counte tut coment
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, par malvays talent,
Court en Normendye, destrut sun tenement,
Aler ly estout[4] et prendre vengement.

King Richard arranges his affairs in the East, and returns to Europe.

Les terres par dela les prye devotement
Garder et guyer vij. aunz enterement.
Freres de l'Hospital, del Temple ensement,
Sunt coadjutours del governement.
A Deu les comaunde, et sun congé prent.
Le ray[5] de Antyoche, et le ray Guyoun,
Bomound quens de Triple, et Amfray de Thuroun,[6]
Ount citez et viles en proteccioun,
Ke le ray Richard conquist sur feloun.
Isake[7] l'emperour prent sa lyveraysoun
Al Temple al freres[8] demoraunt à mesoun ;
Sa fyllie la rayne quert pur garisoun.[9]
Le rays, en repayraunt devers sa regioun,
Fet marier sa soer of ly quens Raymoun,

---

[1] *Aunfrede de Turim*, B. *de Turun*, C. *Aumfrede de Turyn*, D.
[2] *Eloon*, B.
[3] *Rophin*, C. *Rupyn*, D. "Sir Ruffyn brother Leoun," Robert of Brunne, meaning, of course, Sir Ruffyn's brother.
[4] *esteut*, C.
[5] *Le prince*, B. C. D.
[6] *e Aunfrai de Turon*, B. D.
[7] *Jakes l'emperour*, B.
[8] *entre freres*, B. C. D.
[9] This line is omitted in C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "His douhter with the quene was "for hir warisoun."

That sir Saladin, for all the misbelievers,
Promise to king Richard a truce lasting
Seven years in good peace; king Richard grants it,
Assured to the Christians, by that covenant,
All they have gained without retracting anything.

King Richard resumes his road towards Acre;
He sends immediately for king Guy and his son,
The prince of Antioch, Raymond, with his people:
Amfrid de Tours comes there willingly;
Boemond, count of Tripoli, was there in readiness;
And Leo, brother of Ruffin, comes to the conference;
And king Richard relates to them all how
King Philip of France, through ill will,
Is invading Normandy, and destroys his lordship,
It is necessary for him to go and take revenge.
He prays them devoutly the lands on that side
To guard and rule seven years entire.
The brothers of the Hospital, of the Temple also,
Are coadjutors in the government.
He recommends them to God, and takes his leave.

The prince of Antioch and king Guy,
Boemond count of Tripoli, and Amfrid de Tours,
Have cities and towns in protection,
Which king Richard conquered from the wicked people.
Isaac, the emperor, takes his provisions
At the Temple, among the brothers, dwelling in the house;
His daughter seeks the queen for her provision.
The king, in his return towards his kingdom,
Causes his sister to marry count Raymond,

Le[1] counte de Saint-Gile,[2] homme de graunt renoun.
King Richard goes secretly into Austria.
Ne say coment après, ne par quel resoun,
Le ray laissa ses genz tuz, [et] en tapisoun[3]
Ala devers Austrice[4] à sa confusioun,
Espyaunt à tort autry possessioun;
Ne coment en Austrice par procuration
He is imprisoned.
Fu pris sodaynement, et tenuz en prisoun;
Quel avoyr fu doné pur[5] sa redemcioun;
Coment l'apstoyle dona sa maliçoun
Sur tuz ke ly pristrent, ou par consensioun[6]
Furent al counsail de sa capcioun;
Mès ben ws dirray par quel devocioun
Il vynt par saint Thomas en processioun.
Returns to England.
Kaunt le ray Richard delivers[7] estait,
Of Helyanore[8] sa mere, ke molt ly aidait,
Vint en Engleterre, à Sandwyce[9] aryvait,
Devers Caunterbyre devotement alayt,[10]
Vij. lews de la ville à pé le saint querait,[11]
De molt riche offeraunde le martir honurait;
A Deu et à sa mere[12] sovent mercyait
Conduct of his brother John.
Ke sa graunt angusse si ben eschapait.
Ta unt cum en prisoun le rays demorait,
Jon,[13] sun frere, pur veir mesfet[14] ly avait;
Ses chastels saisist, ses rentes enportayt,
De sa deliveraunce unkes mot parlait,
Mès cum [rays] de terre[15] et seygnur se portait;[16]

---

[1] *Le* omitted in B. and D.
[2] *de Saynt Gily*, C.
[3] *lessa ses gens, e en t.*, B. D.
[4] *Ostrice*, B.
[5] *Qe il avait fu doné pur*, C.
[6] *contencioun*, C.
[7] *deliverez*, C. D.
[8] *Od Elianore*, B. *Ouf Alienore*, C. *Oue Elyanore*, D.
[9] *Sandwyz*, D.
[10] *devoute aloit*, B.
[11] *Sete lewes de la vile le saynt al pée querayt*, C. *al pée le seint querait*, D.
[12] *e à li*, B. C. D.
[13] *Johan*, B. C. D.
[14] *messez*, C.
[15] *cum reys de tere*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "Bot als a kyng of lond Jon bare "him fulle stoute."
[16] *se partait*, C.

Count of Saint Giles, a man of great renown.
I know not how afterwards, and for what reason,
The king left all his people and in disguise,
Went towards Austria to his confusion,
Spying wrongfully the possession of another;
Nor how in Austria by procuration
He was suddenly taken, and kept in prison;
What money was given for his redemption;
How the pope pronounced his curse
On all who took him, or by consent
Were in counsel for his capture.
But well I will tell you by what devotion
He came by St. Thomas in procession.

When king Richard was set at liberty,
With his mother Eleanor, who much assisted him,
He came into England, arrived at Sandwich,
Went devoutly towards Canterbury,
Seven leagues from the town he sought the saint on foot,
Honoured the martyr with very rich offering;
He often gave thanks to God and to his mother
That he escaped so well from his great distress.
During the time the king remained in prison,
John, his brother, in truth had misconducted himself towards him.
He seized his castles, laid hands upon his rents,
Never spoke a word of liberating him,
But bare himself as king and lord of the land;

Pur quai[1] le ray Richard juger le volait
Solom ses desserz, mès Jon[2] mercy criayt.
Helianore, lur mere, taunt ly priayt,[3]
The king pardons his brother.
K'il [l']ad pardoné, et lors ly disayt,
" Tuz jours en ta memore[4] ta mesprise sait,
" Jà plus n'en[5] penseray, pur ren ke venir dayt."
Calls his parliament and consults on war with France.
Le rays est à Loundres, et volt[6] parlementer ;
Ses countes, ses barouns là fet[7] tuz maunder ;
Trestuz i sunt venuz, chascun de bon quer.
Escotez ore coment le ray va counsayller.
Ad clers et [ad] lays[8] ke sunt à Westmouster[9]
Dist le ray Richard, " A ws voyl moustrer
" Coment le ray de Fraunce m'en va[10] desheriter.
" Taunt cum jo estay arestuz outre mer,
" Saisist mes chastels, despendist moun aver ;
" De ws, mes lige gens, voyl counsail demaunder,
" Coment plus[tost] porray[11] ma terre regayner."
Le counte Roger respount, à ky alme[12] Deus aye,
" Countes et barouns, chuvalers par espeye ;
" Erceveske, eveske, cytayn, et burgaye,
" Et persouns de eglyses,[13] aiderount par monaye ;
" Abbés, et priours, et altres gens de abbaye,
" Aydrount par priers et oraysouns par vaye.
" Plus valt un saynt home à ky Deus otraye,
" Ke ne fount c. mil mars donez en coraye."
Le dit ben plest al popel, et ly ray se paye.

---

[1] *Par quei*, B.
[2] *Johan*, B. *mès mercy Johan cryait*, C.
[3] *le rei tant preit*, B. C. *le rei taunt priayt*, D.
[4] *memorye*, D.
[5] *ne p.*, B.
[6] *e va*, B.
[7] *feit là*, B. *fet là*, C.
[8] *e as lais*, B. C. *A clers et à lays*, D.
[9] *à Weymouster*, B. *Wemouster*, D.
[10] *me va*, B. *ly va*, C.
[11] *plus tost purray*, B. C. D.
[12] *respunt, qi alme*, B.
[13] *Persons de seint eglise*, B. *parsones des eglyses*, D.

Upon which king Richard sought to bring him to justice
According to his deserts, but John begged forgiveness.
Eleanor, their mother, solicited him so much,
That he has pardoned him, and then said to him,
" Be thy misdeed ever in thy memory,
" Now I shall think no more of it, for nothing that " may happen."

The king is at London, and will hold a parliament;
He causes to be summoned thither his earls and his barons:
All are come there, each with willing heart.
Hear now how the king goes to take counsel.
To the clergy and laity who are at Westminster
Says king Richard, " To you I will show
" How the king of France is going to disinherit me.
" All the while I was arrested beyond sea,
" He seized my castles, squandered my property;
" Of you, my liege people, I will ask counsel,
" How best I may be able to regain my land."

Earl Roger replies, to whose soul God give aid,
" Earls and barons, knights by the sword;
" Archbishop, bishop, citizen, and burgher,
" And parsons of churches, shall assist with money;
" Abbots, and priors, and other monastic people,
" Shall aid by prayers and supplications by way.
" More is the value of one holy man to whom God " listens,
" Than a hundred thousand marks given in discontent."
The speech pleases well the people, and the king is satisfied.

Richard visits his possessions.

Ore volt le ray Richard ses terres estendre,[1]
Homages des ryches[2] et fealtez volt-il prendre.
Les barouns le fount[3] de quer pytous et tendre.
Après rethorne à Loundres argent à despendre.
De totes pars ly venent barouns pur ly defendre.
As armes sunt venuz, Richard ne volt atendre ;
Sur le ray Phelippe ses chastels volt reprendre.[4]

Richard arrives in Normandy.

Aryvez est ly rays à Depe en Normendye ;
Demy an y demort, of sa chuvalerye ;
Du pople de la terre kant ly rays s'affye,[5]
Sa guere fet ordiner, les[6] dustres establye,
Devers Aquitayne sa baner desplye.
Le chastel de Curtels[7] pris ad par mestrie ;
Chuvalers et sergauns, ke le avaynt en bayllye
Sunt mys en prisoun, où chescun mercy crye.
Mès le jour pur veir pris[t][8] par graunt vaidye
La mesoun de Burrez, of la[9] seygnurye,
Et al Dangu[10] va prendre sa herbergerye.

Flight of king Philip.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, of sa[11] compaynye
De ses xij. peres, venent en aye
Al chastel de Curtels, kar il ne[12] sevent mye
Le chastel est renduz ; le veir kant ount oye,
Vers Gesorz s'en vount fuyaunt en tapye.
Le ray Rychard suyst, et ses genz escrye,
" Pernez le ray Phelippe, ne ferez pas d'espeye ! "
Le ray Phelippe estayt assez descomfit
Kant of tut sun hoste[13] à Gesorz fuyst ;

---

[1] *ses terres ordener*, C. " alle his " lond extende," Robert of Brunne.
[2] *Homages de rechef*, B. C. D.
[3] *ke fount*, A. *les fount*, C. D.
[4] *rependre*, C.
[5] *ly reys se affye*, C. D. " And " whan he sauh he myght on his " folk affie," Robert of Brunne.
[6] *ses*, B. C. *les dutres*, D.
[7] *Curceles*, B. *Curteles*, C. D. *Cursels*, Robert of Brunne.
[8] *prist*, C. D.
[9] *od la*, B. *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D
[10] *à Dangan*, C.
[11] *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D.
[12] *q'il ne*, B.
[13] *à tot son host*, C.

Now will king Richard make a survey of his lands,
He will take anew homages and fealties;
The barons perform them with kind and tender heart.
Afterwards he returns to London to spend money,
From all sides come to him barons to defend him.
They have come to arms, Richard will not wait,
He will recover his castles from king Philip.

The king is arrived at Dieppe in Normandy;
He dwells there half a year, with his knights;
When the king feels trust in the people of the land,
He causes his war to be ordained, appoints his leaders,
Displays his banners towards Aquitaine.
He has taken the castle of Courcelles by mastery;
Knights and serjeants, who had it in keeping,
Are put in prison, where each cries mercy.
The same day in truth he took by great craftiness
The house of Burrez, with its lordship,
And at Dangu goes to take his lodging.
King Philip of France, with his company
Of his twelve peers, come in aid
To the castle of Courcelles, for they know not
That the castle is surrendered; when they have heard the truth,
They go towards Gisors flying secretly.
King Richard follows, and shouts to his men,
"Take king Philip, but strike him not with the "sword!"

King Philip was sufficiently discomfited,
When he fled with his army to Gisors;

Tente et pavylloun ke Phelippe[1] werpist
Sunt al ray Richard tut saunz countredit.
The disaster at the bridge of Gisors.
Phelippe of ses Frauncays à l'aler se prist;
Rychard of ses Englays chasçaunt les suyst
Al pount de Gesorz, ke n'est pas petit;
En l'arere garde nes un Frauncays remyst.
Molt fu le pople graunde kaunt le pount chayst;
Le rays en la ruyne[2] entre les altres gist.
"Or sus, sire[3] ray de Fraunce!" Markadé ly dist,[4]
"Tes brays sunt moyllez, tu honys tun habyt."
Sis cenz[5] chuvalers en l'ewe sunt ploungez,
Des quels l. et iij.[6] ilokes sunt naez.
The prisoners who were taken.
Le ray Richard comaunde ke Phelippe sayt salvez.
Mathy de Mount Moryz,[7] baroun renomez,
Sir Alayn de Ruscy,[8] sir Fuke de Griffez,[9]
Of lur chuvalerye, sunt pris et menez;
Markady[10] prist xx. de tuz les melz vanez.
Ore est le ray Richard de An[geon returnez];[11]
En garde à Markadé[12] les prisouns sunt lyverez.
Des fez al ray[13] Richard cel houre et altre fez,

---

[1] *qe rei Philip*, B.

[2] *la rivere*, B. D. *en li river*, C.

[3] *sire* omitted in B.

[4] Robert of Brunne has here somewhat extended the original in his translation:—

"A knyght, a bourdour, kyng
"Richard hade,
"A douhty man in stoure, his
"name was Markade.
"He sauh kyng Philip als he lay
"in the water,
"'Sir kyng, rise up and skip, for
"'thou has wette thi hater.
"'Thou fisshes not worthe a leke,
"'rise and go thi ways,
"'For thou has wette thi breke,
"'schent is thi hernays.'"

Marchadès was the commander of the Routiers in Richard's service, and had the reputation of being a great joker.

[5] *Dys cenz*, C.

[6] "Of whilk thritty and thre did "ther endyng there," Robert of Brunne.

[7] *de Mount Morte*, D.

[8] *de Rucy*, C., "of Russie," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *Giffrez*, B. *de Giffreez*, C. "de Geffre." Robert of Brunne.

[10] *Markadé*, B.

[11] *à Angeowe returnez*, B. *de Danhou rethornez*, C. *à Dangeou retournez*, D.

[12] *ad Marchadé*, C.

[13] *fetz le rei R.*, B. *Des fez ray R.*, C. *Des fez le*, D.

Tent and pavilion which king Philip abandoned
Are the property of king Richard all without dispute.
Philip with his French took to flight;
Richard with his English followed them in pursuit
To the bridge of Gisors, which is not small;
In the rear-guard not a Frenchman remained.
Very great was the crowd when the bridge fell;
The king lay among the others in the river.
" Now up, sir king of France !" said Marchadès to him,
" Thy breeches are wet, thou shamest thy coat."

Six hundred knights are plunged into the water,
Of whom fifty-three are there drowned.
King Richard commands that Philip be saved.
Mathy de Mount Morice, a baron of renown.
Sir Alan de Rucy, Sir Fulke de Griffez,
With their knights, are taken and carried off;
Marchadès took twenty of all the most men of mark.
Now is king Richard returned from Anjou;
The prisoners are delivered to the custody of Marchadès.
Of the acts of king Richard at this time and on other
occasions,

Kaunt à chuvalerye, ne say la veritez;[1]
Ky les volt saver [où] il[2] sunt recordez,
Voyse et lyse[3] sun liver ke est enromauncez,[4]
Et là purra trover tuz les propertez.[5]
Nef aunz et vj. mays tynt-il ses regnez.

Death of king Richard.

Le iiij. jour devaunt[6] Dymaynge de palmes nomez,
Tut drait en Lymosyne[7] dedure estayt alez.
Desuz un chastel k'il avayt manauntez,[8]
Un alblaster dedeynz, du ray avysez,[9]
Parfound en la jaumbe de un quarel l'ad[10] naffrez.
Le ray Richard du coup est envenymez,
Nef jours vesquyt, après à Deu est comaundez.
Il gist à Fount Ebrak[11] près de ses parentez.[12]

Accession of king John.

Kaunt Deus en avayt fet sun[13] comaundement
Du bon ray Richard, sun frere se present,
Jon,[14] à l'herytage of le honur ke apent.[15]
Le counte de Brettayne, Geffray, verrayment
Fust hayr après Rychard de terre[16] et tenement;
Mès il morust avaunt, sachez certaynement,
Par taunt est [Jon] resceu à l'encorounement.
Jon et femme ad prise,[17] Elysabeth la gent;
Al quens de Aculeyne[18] fu fyllye par descent.

---

[1] *ne sai les veritez*, B. C. D.
[2] *où il*, B. *ù sont*, C. D.
[3] *Voyse, lise*, D.
[4] *en Romancez*, C.
[5] *propretez*, D. Robert of Brunne adds,—
"This that I haf said, it is
"Pers sawe,
"Als he in Romance laid, ther-
"after gan I drawe."
[6] *avaunt*, D.
[7] *à Lymosin*, C.
[8] *manaces*, B. *manauncez*, D.
[9] *desavisez*, B. C. D.
[10] *ad*, B.
[11] *Ebrard*, B. D.
[12] This line is omitted in C.
[13] *Dieu avoit son c.*, B. *Dieus avayt fet*, C. D.
[14] *Johan*, B. C. D.
[15] *qe li apent*, B.
[16] *du terre*, C.
[17] *Johan ad feme prise*, B. C. D.
[18] *Aculeie*, B. *quens Aculeyne*, C. "The erle of Aquiley," Robert of Brunne.

As far as regards chivalry, I know not the truth;
Who desires to know them, they are recorded,
Let him go and read his book which is written in French,
And there he will be able to find all the particulars.
Nine years and six months he held his kingdoms.
The fourth day before the Sunday named of Palms,
He was gone for recreation straight into the Limousin.
Beneath a castle which he had threatened,
An arbalester within, aware of the king,
Has wounded him with an arrow deep in the leg.
King Richard is envenomed by the blow;
Nine days he lived, afterwards he is sent to God.
He lies at Fontevrard near his kinsmen.

When God had done his will
With good king Richard, his brother presents himself,
John, to the inheritance with the honour which belongs to it.
The count of Britany, Geoffrey, really
Was heir after Richard of land and lordship;
But he died before, know certainly,
In consequence of which John is received to be crowned.
John has taken to wife Elizabeth the fair;
She was by descent daughter to the count of Aquileia.

Anno Domini millesimò centesimo nonagesimo nono.

Coronation of king John.

Le ercevesk Hubert,[1] de Caunterbyre par noun,
Vynt à Westmouster[2] jour de l'Assencioun ;[3]
Par commune assent de counte et [de] baroun,[4]
Ad Jon, le frere Richard,[5] ad doné la coroun.
Enoynt est en rays of graunt devocioun ;
Aunz et jours vesquyt en tribulacioun.
Trop jolyfs estayt,[6] par quai la nacioun
Sovent encountre ly movayt contencioun.
Normendye perdist, à sa confusioun,
Kaunt en la court de Fraunce appelé fu feloun,

Death of Arthur,

Pur la mort Arthur, fiz sun frere Geffroun,
Counte de Brettayne, à ky la regyoun
Par drayt devait descendre ; si tuez fust ou noun,
Mon mestre me suspende à dire en moun sermoun;
Noun pur ço ben say sa mort fust la chesoun[7]
Par ount le uncle avait la possessioun,
Ke aver endevayt le nevu[8] par resoun.
Ço fu le cas le rays saunz condicioun.

and of his sister Margaret.

Arthur avayt un soer, Margrete par noun wus dye,
Plus bele creature ne fust cel houre en vye,
Ke tost après sun frere sun secle ad fynye.[9]
Ore ad le ray de Fraunce la mort Arthur oye,
Et al ray Jon maunde k'il veygne en sa ballye,
A prendre jugement de la[10] felounye
Ke sur ly fu mys pur le hair de Bretonye.
Le ray Jon demort, en Fraunce ne va-il mye.
Pour quai le ray de Fraunce si tost ad saysye

---

[1] *Hobert*, C.
[2] *Weymouster*, B. *Wemouster*, D.
[3] *le jour de l'assencioun*, C.
[4] *e de baroun*, B. D.
[5] *Johan frere R.*, B. *A Johan*, C. *A Johon le fiz Richard*, D.
[6] "He was of licherous life," Robert of Brunne.
[7] *fu l'encheson*, B.
[8] *le noun*, A. C.
[9] *ad son secle finye*, C.
[10] *de sa*, B.

Anno Domini 1199.

Archbishop Hubert, of Canterbury by name,
Came to Westminster on the day of the Ascension;
By common assent of earls and barons,
To John, the brother of Richard, he has given the crown.
He is anointed king with great devotion;
Years and days he lived in tribulation;
He was too licencious, through which the nation
Often moved contention against him.
Normandy he lost, to his confusion,
When he was accused in the court of France of felony,
For the death of Arthur, the son of his brother Geoffrey,
Count of Britany, to whom the kingdom
Ought by right to descend; whether he were killed or not
My master prevents my saying in my discourse;
Nevertheless I know well his death was the cause
Whereby the uncle had the possession,
Which by right the nephew ought to have.
This was the king's case without qualification.

Arthur had a sister, Margaret by name, I tell you;
There was not a fairer creature at that time alive,
Who has ended her life soon after her brother.
Now has the king of France heard of the death of Arthur,
And he calls on king John that he come into his ward,
To take his judgment for the felony
Which was laid to his charge for the heir of Britany,
King John remains, he goes not into France.
For which the king of France immediately has seized

King Philip seizes Normandy.

Tolouse et Tolousan et tote Normendye;
Le ray Jon par taunt perdist sa seygnurye.[1]
Ke fet le ray de Fraunce? attyre sa navye,[2]
Veent en Engleterre of sa chuvalerye,
Ben quydayt de la terre aver eu mestrye.
Les Waldays et les altres hors de Pevenesheye
Ount le ray de Fraunce rechacez par espeye.

The king of Scotland performs homage.

Ore est le ray de Fraunce repassez la mer;
Le ray Jon est alé sun regne justizer.[3]
William, ray d'Escoce, à Nicole fet maunder;
Hors de la cyté al chauns[4] en yver,
Le jour saynt Cecille, le ray William de quer
Là ly fist homage, et le fet[5] jorer
Ke fay ly portrayt of sun[6] leal poer.
Le erceveske Hubert[7] sa croyce fist lever.
Le ray William ne poet lyver[8] ilokes aver,[9]
Il jorra sur la croyce, ke fay ly dayt[10] porter.

Dispute about the election of an archbishop of Canterbury.

Hubert[11] le erceveske si tost cum mort estayt,
Le priour de Caunterbyre al ray Jon envayt
Quere congé de elyre, et ly rays le grauntayt.[12]
Pur ly de[13] Norwyce ke[14] l'evesché averayt[15]
Le ray Jon par lettre devotement priayt
Le priour, of ses[16] moynes, ke[17] eleccioun fesayt.
Suppriour est eluz par[18] partye ke volayt
Ke il fust erceveske; partye nay disayt;

---

[1] *la seignorie*, B. C. D.
[2] *son navye*, D.
[3] *visiter*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates:—
"And Jon northward him sped,
"his lond for to visite."
[4] *as champs*, B.
[5] *et li fist*, B. C.
[6] *en son*, B.
[7] *Hobert*, C.
[8] *livre*, B. *livere*, D.
[9] This line is omitted in C.
[10] *fei li dust*, B.
[11] *Hobert*, C.
[12] *et ly reys grantait*, C. D.
[13] *li qi de*, B. *Pur ly qe de*, C. D.
[14] *ke* omitted in D.
[15] *avait*, D.
[16] *ouf les m.*, C.
[17] *ke* omitted in B. and D. C. reads *le*.
[18] *par* omitted in C.

Toulouse and the Toulousain and all Normandy;
King John thereby lost his lordship.
What does the king of France? he fits out his navy,
Comes into England with his knights,
He quite reckoned on having the mastry of the land.
The Welsh and the others off Pevensey
Have driven back the king of France with the sword.

Now has the king of France recrossed the sea;
King John has gone to visit his kingdom.
He causes William king of Scotland to be summoned to Lincoln;
Outside the city in the fields in winter,
On the day of St. Cecily, king William with good will
There performed homage to him, and he made him swear
That he would bear faith to him with his loyal power.
Archbishop Hubert caused his crosier to be raised.
King William could not have a book there,
So he swore on the crosier, that it was his duty to bear faith to him.

As soon as Hubert the archbishop was dead,
The prior of Canterbury sends to king John
To seek a congé d'elire, and the king granted it.
For him who should have the bishopric of Norwich
King John by letter prayed devoutly
The prior, with his monks, who made the election.
The sub-prior is elected by the party which willed
That he should be archbishop; a party said nay;

Lee veske de Norwyce graunt partye nomayt ;
Par quay[1] l'un et l'altre à Rome appelayt.

Appeal to the pope.

Quatorze moynes eluz sunt à la court alez,
Trays cenz mars à despendre le ray les ad donez ;
Les moynes al ray Jon ount lealment jorez
Le eveske de Norwyce ert erceveske sacrez.
Kaunt venent à la court, lur message est moustrez.
La pape par resoun[2] les eliz ad cassez,
Et ad xiiij.[3] moynes de grace ad comaundez
De rechef elyre un homme de bountez.
Le evesk de Norwyce eluz ount altre fez.
La pape les quasse ;[4] les moynes sunt blamez,
Suspendi lour poer ; els mercy ount cryez,
Lour serement fet al rays en court ount countez.
L'apostoylle les assolt, si les ad counsayllez
Mestre Esteven elire de Langetoun nomez ;
Esteven est ercevesk, la pape l'ad confermez.

Election of Stephen Langton.

Ke fet le ray Jon kaunt seet la verytez,
Coment devaunt la pape le elyt est quassez,[5]
Coment mestre Esteven est erceveske sacrez ?
Les clers de la provynce ad taunt malmenez,
Les moynes de Caunterbyre enchacez hors du sez,
Al Brabauns[6] en garde l'encloystre ount donez.[7]
Quant Innocent la pape seet la veritez
Le ray et ses fautours ad escomengez,

The Interdict.

Sa terre entredite, messe n'y ad[8] chauntez,
Ne cors de homme mort en cymytere entrez.[9]
Ke fet ly cytayn,[10] ke fet ly barnez,[11]
Ky femme ou ky fyllye le rays ad violez ?[12]

---

[1] *Par quay*, D.
[2] *par ses resons*, B.
[3] *E les quatorze*, B. *Et al* xiiii., C.
[4] *le cassa*, B. C. *ly cassa*, D.
[5] *cassé*, B. D.
[6] *A Brabauns*, D.
[7] *ad doné*, B. *le cloistre ad doné*. C.
[8] *messe n'ad c.*, C. D.
[9] *enterré*, B. D.
[10] *ke fet citayn*, C.
[11] *le baroné*, B.
[12] *l'ad violé*, B.

A great part named the bishop of Norwich;
Wherefore one and the other appealed to Rome.

Fourteen monks elected are gone to the court;
The king has given them three hundred marks to spend;
The monks have sworn loyally to king John
That the bishop of Norwich shall be consecrated archbishop.
When they come to the court, their message is declared.
The pope for his reasons has annulled the elections,
And has of his favour commanded the fourteen monks
To elect again a man of goodness.
They have elected the bishop of Norwich a second time.
The pope annuls it; the monks are blamed,
Their power suspended; they have cried mercy,
And have told to the court their oath made to the king.
The pope absolves them, and has advised them
To elect master Stephen named of Langton;
Stephen is archbishop; the pope has confirmed him.

What does king John when he knows the truth,
How before the pope the election is annulled,
How master Stephen is consecrated archbishop?
He has so ill-treated the clergy of the province,
Driven the monks of Canterbury out of the see,
Given the monastery in keeping to the Brabanters,
That when Innocent the pope knows the truth,
He has excommunicated the king and his abettors,
And interdicted the land; there is no mass chaunted there,
Nor body of dead man interred in cemetery.
What does the citizen, what do the barons,
Whose wife or whose daughter the king has violated?

The civil war.

Courent et destruent chastel et cytez,
De leu en leu cum lever[1] ount le rays chascez.
Les uns de barouns de ses parentez[2]
Combatent pur le rays, par ount il est salvez.[3]

Marriage of the daughter of the king of Scotland.

Taunt cum la guere durait en cel enterdit,
William ray d'Escoce sa fylle esposer fist
Al counte de Boloyne, ke par amur[4] la prist.
Kaunt des esposayles le ray Jon oyst,[5]
S'en alait[6] à Berwyk et la vile prist;
Un chastel i levait,[7] uncore demort le syst.[8]
Amendes demaundait du ray pur le despit
Ke[9] saunz congé de ly sa fylle maryst.[10]
Edenburge[11] et Rokesburge sur ço[12] demaunda quit,
Sun fiz Alysaundre ke en hostage ly rendist.[13]
Le[14] ray William d'Escoce trestut ly countredit;
Par covenaunz entre els la pes pus se prist.[15]

Le ray Jon repayre par viles et cytez,
Et sur ses enemys par tut fet mal assez.
Ses enemys sur ly parmy tuz ses fez
Les uns et les altres ount malement grevez.

Persecution of holy church.

Tute sainte eglise, et les ordynez,
Ercevesk, eveske, clers de dignitez,
Hors de lur provandres par poer[16] sunt botez.
Sovent à la pape la plainte fu moustrez;[17]
[Sovent les meffesours sount escomengez.][18]

---

[1] *leverer le roy ount*, C.
[2] *de sa parenté*, B. C. D.
[3] Robert of Brunne translates these two lines:—
"Many men of his kynde sauh
"him so abaved,
"For him thei fauht with mynde,
"and oft so was he saved."
[4] *par amurs*, C. D.
[5] *Quant le rei Johan des espusailles oist*, B.
[6] *S'en ala*, B.
[7] *leva*, B.
[8] *demurt le site*, B. C. D.
[9] *Quaunt*, B.
[10] *sa fidle preist marit*, B.
[11] *Edeuesburge*, B.
[12] *pur ceo*, C.
[13] *q'en ostage rendit*, B.
[14] *Le* omitted in D.
[15] *la pees après se fist*, B. This line is omitted in C. *La pees après se prist*, D.
[16] *provande e poer sount*, C. *provandes*, D.
[17] *Souvent fu au pape la pleinte mustrez*, B. *juste moustrez*, C.
[18] This line is omitted in A., but it has been restored from B. C. and D.

They invade and destroy castles and cities;
They have hunted the king from place to place like a hare.
Some of the barons of his kindred
Combat for the king, through which he is saved.

While the war lasted in that interdict,
William king of Scotland caused his daughter to espouse
The count of Boulogne, who took her through love.
When king John heard of the marriage,
He proceeded to Berwick, and took the town;
He raised a castle there, the site still remains.
He demanded of the king amends for the offence,
That he married his daughter without his leave.
On that he demanded quit Edinburgh and Rokesburgh,
And that he should deliver his son Alexander as hostage.
King William of Scotland refused him everything;
Subsequently peace was established between them by treaty.

King John returns through towns and cities,
And everywhere commits great mischief on his enemies.
His enemies upon him through all his fees
Have all committed grievous outrages.
All holy church, and the clergy,
Archbishop, bishop, titled ecclesiastics,
Are by force turned out of their prebends.
Often the complaint was laid before the pope;
Often the misdoers are excommunicated.

Arrival of the two legates.

La pape de lur errour avait graunt pytez,
Pandolf et Duraunt ses legaz ad maundez,[1]
[Qe sunt en Engleterre à Dovere arivez.
Le rey e les barons à Loundres sunt alez;
Pandolf par[2] prechement la guere ad terminez.][3]
Assolz sunt les[4] barouns; le ray Jon ad jorez
De l'erceveske Esteven serrait-il vengez,
De[s][5] xiiij. moynes, quele part k'il sayent trouvez.[6]

Their success.

Le legat Pandolf et sun compaynoun
Fount venir l'erceveske, les moynes par noun;
En molz des jornez par graunt despotisoun[7]
Ount prové ke le rays ad tort, et noun resoun.[8]
Le legat ad taunt fet par sen et par resoun,[9]
Ke la pees est fete de la contencioun,
Et clerk chascun par say de sa possessioun.[10]
Pandolf repaire à Rome, ne pas saunz[11] ryche doun.
Le ray Jon demort, demaundez ad pardoun;
L'erceveske l'assolt en graunt[12] devocioun.

Family of king John.

Deus fiz et deus fylles[13] le ray Jon avayt;
Henri fu le aynez,[14] ke après ly regnayt;
Rychard le punez, ke eluz estayt
Ray de Alemayne, et la coroune rescayt.
Isabel sa fillye, ke nul enfaunt portayt,
L'emperour Frederyk pur veir l'esposayt;[15]
Al counte de Laycestre l'autre maryait.

---

[1] *ad menez*, B.

[2] *Pandolf e prechement*, C.

[3] These three lines are omitted in A., but they are found in B. C. and D., and are translated by Robert of Brunne. They are printed here from B.

[4] *ount les b.*, C.

[5] *E des*, B. *Del*, C.

[6] *où qe soient t.*, B. *quel part saynt trovez*, C. *quele part qe saient*, D.

[7] *desputeisoun*, B. D.

[8] *nul resoun*, B. C.

[9] *sermoun*, B. C. D.

[10] *E chescon clerc seisi de sa p.*, B. D. *saisie*, C. Robert of Brunne, in his English version, translates this line as follows:—

"And ilk a clerke sesed ageyn
"to haf his rent."

[11] *ne passe sanz*, B.

[12] *ouf grant*, C.

[13] *Deus fitz*, iiij. *feylles*, C.

[14] *Henri son fitz aynez*, B.

[15] *pur veir esposait*, D.

The pope had great compassion on their error,
He has sent as his legates Pandulf and Durand,
Who are arrived in England at Dover.
The king and his barons are gone to London;
Pandulf by his preaching has put an end to the war.
The barons are absolved; king John has sworn
That he will be revenged of archbishop Stephen,
And of the fourteen monks, wherever they be found.

The legate Pandulf and his companion
Cause the archbishop to come, and the monks by name;
In many days, by great discussion
They have proved that the king is in the wrong and not in the right.
The legate has effected so much by sense and by reason,
That peace is made of the contention,
And every clergyman is seised of his possession.
Pandulf returns to Rome, not without rich gifts.
King John remains, has asked for pardon;
The archbishop absolves him with great devotion.

King John had two sons and two daughters;
Henry was the eldest, who reigned after him;
Richard the youngest, who was elected
King of Almaine, and received the crown.
Isabel, his daughter, who bore no child,
The emperor Frederic in truth espoused her;
The other married the earl of Leicester.

John's death.

Le ray Jon sa terre xviij. aunz guyait;
En le abbaye de Swinesheved[1] home l'enpusonait;
Il gist à Wyncestre,[2] il mesmes le volait.

Anno Domini millesimo CC°. XVJ°.[3]

Or est le ray Jon mort et sevely.

Coronation of Henry III.

L'erceveske Esteven ad corouné Henry;
Prodhome fu tuz jours, des povers avait mercy.
Plus ama[4] saint eglise ke nul ray devaunt ly;
Clers ke ben chaunterent[5] tost sunt enrychy;
Eglises et provandres ne sunt pas esparny,[6]
Ke clerk de la chapele n'ayt porcioun parmy.

His marriage.

Covent ke nostre rays par tens sait maryé;
Le counte de Provence sa fylle l'ad doné,
Helyanore ad noun, de gentil parenté,
Plus bele creature de là ne fu trové.
Ore est en Engleterre rayne corouné.
Deus fiz et deus fylles l'ad Deu presté;[7]
Sir Eduuard, sir[8] Edmoun, hair est le avaunt[9] no[mé].
Sir Edmoun de Leycestre est counte[10] enheryté;
Le Mounfort le perdist kaunt fu desheryté.
Ke nul des deus feylles en taunt sayt oblyé,
Al fiz le ray d'Escoce est Margrete maryé,
[Et] Beatrice[11] de Brettayne al counte est esposé.

His work at Westminster.

Molt est ore le overayne bele à Westmouster[12]
Ke le ray Henry fist [fere] de[13] sun aver.

---

[1] *Swynheved*, D.

[2] *Wircestre*, D., which is correct. Robert of Brunne makes it Westminster:

"At Westmynstere even is Jon
"laid solempnely;"

and he says that he died at Haughe in Lincolnshire.

"At Hauhe his lif he leved, so
"say men of that toun."

[3] The rubric is given from B.

[4] *amait*, C.

[5] *qe chauntirent ben*, C. *ke chaunterent bien sunt tost enrichy*, D.

[6] *provandes ne sunt esparny*, D.

[7] "Tuo sonnes, tuo douhteres
"fre Jhesus has them lent," Robert of Brunne.

[8] *e sire*, B.

[9] *est avant*, B.

[10] *en counte*, B.

[11] *E Beatrice*, B. C. D.

[12] *Wemouster*, D.

[13] *fist fere de*, B. C. D.

King John ruled his land eighteen years;
They poisoned him in the abbey of Swineshead.
He lies at Winchester, he himself willed it.

Anno Domini 1216.

Now is king John dead and buried.
Archbishop Stephen has crowned Henry;
A good man he was always; he was kind to the poor.
He loved holy church more than any king before him;
Clergy who chanted well are soon enriched;
Churches and prebends are not overlooked,
That a clerk of the chapel has not his portion among them.

It is right that our king in time be married;
The count of Provence has given him his daughter,
Eleanor was her name, of gentle kindred;
A fairer creature was not found beyond sea.
Now is she crowned queen in England.
God has lent her two sons and two daughters;
Sir Edward, sir Edmund, the first-named is heir.
Sir Edmund is made heir of the earldom of Leicester;
The Montfort lost it when he was disinherited.
That neither of the two daughters be at all forgotten,
Margaret is married to the king of Scotland,
And Beatrice is espoused to the count of Britany.

Very fair is now the work at Westminster
Which king Henry caused to be made with his own money.

Deu ly presta grace sa terre governer
Quaraunte et vj.[1] aunz, saunz pople triboler.[2]
Après devenent[3] pussaunt cessaunt en poer.
The king's advisers. Soun fiz sir Eduuard ly va counsaylle r,[4]
Ma dame la rayne, et ly quens Richer,
Le counte de Warayne, sir Huge le beer,[5]
Sire William de Valence, Roger le Mortymer,[6]
Jon Maunsel le clerk, chuvalers[7] de outre mer,
Le ray de cels s'affye, les fet avauncer
Des terres et de rentes[8] de molt gentil quer.
Sir Eduuard le volt, et fet sun dever.
Les barouns Englays les volent[9] destourber,
Tenent parlement, ensemble vount treter
Coment pount la terre des alyens voider.
Al rays et sun counsayl ount maundé messager
Ke l'estat del regne ly covent amender.[10]
Ly rays les respount, jour les fet doner
Parliament at Oxford. Tut drait à Oxenforde, et là[11] parlementer.

Anno Domini millesimo CC°. L°. VIJ°.[12]

[A] cel[13] parlement sopist la destaunce,[14]
Al ray et ses hayrs[15] en desheritaunce
Des gardes et relefs, des terres de[16] tenaunce,
Al countes[17] et barouns, chuvalers et sergaunce,
Ke tenent del ray,[18] partye par chevaunce,

---

[1] *Cinquant e sis*, B. "Sex and "fifty yere," Robert of Brunne.
[2] *troubler*, B.
[3] *devint*, B. *devent pesaunt astaunt*, C. *devent pesaunt, cestaunt*, D. "But sone afterward failed him "powere," Robert of Brunne.
[4] *li bon c.*, B.
[5] *de Warenne, sire Huge l'Espenser*, D.
[6] *Roger Mortimer*, B. *sire Roger de Mortimer*, C.
[7] *chivaler*, D.
[8] *des rentes*, D.
[9] *le volent*, C. D.
[10] This line is omitted in B.
[11] *Oxenforde à la p.*, C.
[12] This rubric is given from D.
[13] *A cel p.*, B. C. D.
[14] Robert of Brunne translates, "At this parlement rested that "distaunce."
[15] *e à ces heyres*, C. D.
[16] *e de*, B. *de terres de t.*, C.
[17] *A countes*, D.
[18] *de rey*, C.

God lent him grace to govern the land
Forty-six years, without oppressing his people.
Afterwards he becomes oppressive, as his power failed.
His son sir Edward acts as his counsellor,
My lady the queen, and the earl Richard,
The earl of Warren, sir Hugh the noble,
Sir William de Valence, Roger de Mortimer,
John Maunsel the clerk, knights from beyond sea,
In these the king puts his trust, and causes them to be advanced
With lands and rents with very generous heart.
Sir Edward wills it, and does his duty.
The English barons seek to restrain them;
They hold conference, go to consult together
How they can clear the land of aliens.
To the king and his council have they sent a messenger
That he is required to amend the state of the kingdom.
The king gives his consent, causes a day to be fixed
Straight at Oxford, and there to hold parliament.

Anno Domini 1258.

At this parliament the dispute is appeased,
To the disinheriting of the king and his heirs
Of wards and reliefs, of lands of tenancy,
To the earls and barons, knights and sergeants,
Who hold of the king, part by chevance,

Partye en chef des altres of l'aportenaunce.
The terms imposed upon the king. [A] chascun seygnur[1] demort garde et chaunce,[2]
Et le ray privé de tut l'appendaunce.
Le rays ne entendist poynt cele descayvaunce ;
Kant l'escryt est fet de la purveaunce,
Le rays le graunte,[3] et mette sun sel en testmoynaunce.
Countes et barouns l'afferment[4] par fyaunce,
Et[5] ke nul estraunge en court ayt pussaunce,
Ne ke le ray saunz els de terre nul avaunce
Ne mette en bayllye,[6] saunz lur ordinaunce.
Al ray et as ses[7] hayrs estrayt est la parlaunce.
His friends advise him to resist. Les amy le rays, ke sentent la grevaunce,
Ly dient,[8] "Sir, pur Deu, tu n'es pas enfaunce ;
" Ad tay et ad tun saunk tu faz deshonuraunce
" Kaun[t] tu es guyé par autry voyllaunce.
" Assez as-tu amys en Engleterre et [en] Fraunce ;[9]
" Reprenez tun dit,[10] et fa ta governaunce ;
" Reteygne[11] ta seygnurye, ne dotez la manaunce,
" Tu seras ben assolz de la variaunce."
Le rays volt ben par là defere la concordaunce ;[12]
Pur quay les barouns sunt en graunt dotaunce.[13]
Escotez ore coment se fount quere chevaunce.[14]
Simon de Montfort called in by the barons. Simoun de Mounfort fu cel houre[15] hors de terre,
Par commune assent les barouns ly fount quere.
Ly quens vynt,[16] cum cyl ke leger fust à trere[17]
Encountre sun seygnur mayntenir sun affere ;[18]
Tenir l'estatut en tens de pes et guere,

---

[1] *A chescon seignur*, C. D.
[2] *e cheaunce*, B.
[3] *la graunte*, D.
[4] *la serment*, B. C.
[5] *Et* omitted in B. C.
[6] *en baylle*, D.
[7] *à ses*, B. D. *à ces*, C.
[8] *Li dit*, B.
[9] *e en Fraunce*, C.
[10] *Repernez condit*, B.
[11] *Rengnez*, B. *Retenez*, D.
[12] *l'acordaunce*, B. C. D.
[13] *distaunce*, C.
[14] *quere chevissaunce*, B.
[15] *cel houre fu*, B.
[16] *vient*, B.
[17] *cum qe legger fust attrere*, C.
[18] *meintenir l'afere*, B. C. D.

Part in chief of the others with the appurtenance.
To each lord remains ward and cheance,
And the king deprived of all the appendance.
The king did not understand that deception;
When the charter of the provisions is made,
The king grants it, and puts his seal in witness.
Earls and barons confirm it with their faith,
And that no foreigner have power in court,
Nor that the king advance any one in lands without them,
Nor put in place of trust, without their ordinance.
This arrangement is hard to the king and his heirs.
The king's friends, who feel the grievance,
Say to him, "Sire, for God's sake, thou art not a "child;
"Thou dost dishonour to thee and to thy blood
"When thou art guided by the will of another.
"Thou hast friends enough in England and in France;
"Resume thy word, and do thy governance;
"Retain thy authority, fear not threats.
"Thou shalt be entirely absolved of the breach of "faith."
The king is quite willing thus to break the agreement;
Wherefore the barons are in great fear.
Hear now how they do to seek success.

Simon de Montfort was at that time out of the land;
By common assent the barons send for him.
The earl came, as one who was easy to draw
To maintain his interest against his lord;
To hold the statute in time of peace and war,

Saunz counsayl le rays,[1] le serement va fere ;[2]
[Dunt pus après vint contek e contrere.][3]

Proceedings of the barons.

Tost s'en va le counte, ses fiz, et ses barouns ;
Les chastels le rays prenent en baundouns ;
Courent[4] sur les terres, ardent les mesouns,
Ke tenir ne volent les provisiouns.[5]
Le rays en cel contemple et ly quens Symouns
Se mettent en agarde de contenciouns ;
Se lyent par serment de dissensiouns
Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce,[6] ky par ses resouns[7]
Durra jugement saunz refusiouns.
Henry le rays i va par cels achesouns.

The Londoners insult the queen.

Le ray veent à Parys recayvere[8] jugement ;
La rayne après vers cele part ce atent.[9]
A sun issir de Loundres le[s] Loundrays verrayment[10]
Le fesaynt plus despyt ke nul home attent.[11]
Kant le ray de Fraunce a dit[12] certaynement
Coment la purveaunce est apertement
Desherytaunt le rays, ses hayrs ensement,
Desfet l'estatut,[13] le casse[14] nettement.
Ly quens Symon l'oyt[15] dire, fet maunder sa gent,[16]
La guere recomence, escotez ore[17] coment,
[La grande folie qe li quens emprent.][18]

The earl's trick of the chariot.

Li quens fet fere à Loundres un char par vaidye,
Cum fust à sun oes,[19] pur sa maladye ;

---

[1] *conseyller le reis*, D.

[2] This line and the preceding are transposed in B. and D.

[3] This line is omitted in A., but is given here from B.

[4] *Curunt*, B.

[5] *promissiouns*, D.

[6] *Philipe rei de France*, B., omitting *Al.*

[7] *qi par sa respouns*, D.

[8] *resceivere*, B. *receyver*, C.

[9] *se tent*, B. C. *tost après vers cele part se tent*, D.

[10] *A son issir de Londres les Loundreis verraiment*, B. C. D.

[11] *entent*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[12] *ad veu*, B. C. D.

[13] *Differe li estut*, B.

[14] *le cassa*, C.

[15] *Symon oit dire*, B.

[16] *sagement*, C.

[17] *comence, ore escotez*, C.

[18] This line is found only in B. among the manuscripts, but it is translated by Robert of Brunne.

[19] *à son corps*, B. *à son eus*, C.

Without counsel of the king, he goes and makes the oath,
Whereby afterwards came strife and dissension.

Soon proceeds the earl, his sons, and his barons;
They take the king's castles into their power;
Invade the lands, burn the houses,
Of those who will not hold the Provisions.
The king in this circumstance and the earl Simon
Put themselves to arbitration on their disputes;
Bind themselves by oath on their dissensions
To king Philip of France, who by his wisdom
Shall give judgment not subject to refusal.
Henry the king goes there for these causes.

The king comes to Paris to receive judgment;
The queen afterwards proceeds in that direction.
At her departure from London the Londoners truly
Offered her greater insult than any man expects.
When the king of France has seen certainly
How the Provision is openly
A disheriting of the king, of his heirs likewise,
He sets aside the statute, and annuls it entirely.
Earl Simon hears of it, assembles his men,
The war begins again, listen now how,
The great folly which the earl undertakes.

The earl craftily causes a chariot to be made in London,
As though it were for his use, on account of his illness;

Lx. mil Loundrays sunt en la[1] compaynye;
Battle of Lewes. Devers Lewes s'en va of sa chuvalerye.
Le rays et sa mesné sunt en la priorye.
Ly quens Symoun al chauns sa baner desplye;
[Le dragon est levé, le rei le quens defie.][2]
Sir Eduuard, fiz[3] le rays, les Loundrays escrye,[4]
Descomfit les ad, et la chare[5] saisye,
Quide trouver le counte, le counte n'y est mye.
Ke fet sir Eduuard? repaire à sa partye,
Le char ly fist pur veir perdre la[6] mestrye.

Anno Domini millesimo CC. L. XIIIJ. *fuit prælium apud Leaus inter regem et barones,* IJ°. *Idus Maii.*[7]

Taunt cum[8] sire Eduuard entur le char estait,
Discomfiture of the king's party. Symon de Mounfort descomfit avayt
La partye le rays, le dragoun avalait;
Le ray de Alemaynne prisoun[9] demorayt;
Jon Comyn d'Escoce en autel esplayt;
Le counte de Warayne[10] de ilokes eschapayt,
Sir Huge le Bygot la mer of ly passayt.
Maynte bone dame sun baroun là lessayt;
Tauntz furent là tuez, ke nul home poayt[11]
Noumbrer les morz, fors cely ke tut vayt.
Sire Eduuard, fiz le rays, de gré se moustrayt
Hostage pur sun pere, [le count ly rescait;
Ausint pur sun pere] sun nefu fesayt,[12]

---

[1] *sa*, B. C. D.

[2] This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. and D., and is translated by Robert of Brunne.

[3] *le fitz*, C.

[4] "Edward was hardie, the Lon-" dres gan he ascrie," Robert of Brunne.

[5] *e le char*, B.

[6] *sa mestrye*, D.

[7] This rubric is taken from B.

[8] *Kant com*, C.

[9] *en prison*, C.

[10] *de Warenne*, C.

[11] *qe nul ne poeit*, B.

[12] *son pere, le counte le resceit*, B. C. D. Instead of these two lines, C. and D. give,—

Hostage pur son pere, le count ly rescait,
Ausint pur son pere son neveu fesait,
Henry de Almayne, hostage se donait.

Sixty thousand Londoners are in his company;
Towards Lewes he goes with his knights.
The king and his household are in the Priory.
Earl Simon unfolds his banner in the fields;
The dragon is raised, the king defies the earl.
Sir Edward, the king's son, gets sight of the Londoners,
Has discomfited them, and seized the chariot,
Expects to find the earl, the earl is not there.
What does sir Edward? he returns to his party,
The chariot caused him in truth to lose the mastery.

Anno Domini 1264 *was the battle at Lewes between the king and the barons, on the* ii *Ides of May.*

While sir Edward was occupied with the chariot,
Simon de Montfort had discomfited
The king's party, had thrown down the dragon;
The king of Almaine remained prisoner;
John Comyn of Scotland was in the same plight;
The earl of Warenne escaped thence,
Sir Hugh Bigot passed the sea with him.
Many a good lady lost her lord there;
So many were slain there, that no man could
Count the dead, except him who is all-seeing.
Sir Edward, the king's son, willingly gave himself
Hostage for his father, the earl accepted him;
So his nephew did for his father,

Henry de Alemayne, hostage se donayt.
Escape of prince Edward. Sir Eduuard un an en prisoun sojornayt.
Le counte parmy la terre le ray Henry menayt;
Ses chastels et ses viles à wardayns assignait.
Sire Eduuard de prisoun sagement alayt,
En soccour et ayde les marchyz assemblayt.
Les fiz le quens Symon trop hautayn estaynt,
Et pur lur partye graunt folye fesaynt,
Gilbert de Clare deserts the barons. Kaunt Gilbert de Clare si tost corousçaynt;
Sir Eduuard et ly se entrefyauncaynt,[1]
Ke le counte[2] Symon et ses fis prendrayn[t],
Et saunz raunçoun prendre à mort les liveraynt.[3]
Taunt cum les reals[4] poer assemblaynt,
Fu Norhaunton pris, les barouns là lessaynt
Symon fiz le counte, et gens ke ly suaynt;
Cum soz et chaitifs à Kenelworth alaynt,
Et en lur rybaldye ilokes demoraynt
Taunt cum sire[5] Eduuard Evesham enscaynt.[6]

Anno proximo sequenti, nonas Augusti, fuit bellum apud Evesham inter regem et barones.[7]

The battle of Evesham. Symon de Monfort, of la baronye,
Le ray maugré son fu en sa compaynye,[8]
Le counte est mounté, sa baner desplye;
Sir Eduuard ly vent encountre of sa chuvalrye,
Et Gilbert de Clare de loynz par vaydye.
Kaunt Symon ly vayt, les barouns escrye,
" Deus ayt les almes! perduz est la vye!"

---

[1] *s'entreaffiaunceient*, B. *entrefiancaint*, C. D.

[2] *Et le quens*, B. *Ke le quens*, D.

[3] *les mettraint*, C. D.

[4] *les reis*, B.

[5] *sire* omitted in B.

[6] Robert of Brunne translates this,—

" Suilk ribaudie thei led, thei gaf
" no tale of wham,
" To whils sir Edward had seisid
" alle Evesham."

[7] This rubric is given from B.; it is omitted in the other MSS.

[8] *maugré le soen fut en la c.*, B. *en la compaignye*, C.

Henry of Almaine he gave himself hostage.
Sir Edward remained in prison a year.
The earl carried king Henry through the land;
Assigned his castles and his towns to wardens.
Sir Edward skilfully escaped from prison.
He assembled the Marchers for succour and aid

The sons of sir Simon were too overbearing,
And did great folly for their party,
When they so soon affronted Gilbert de Clare;
Sir Edward and he pledged their faith mutually,
That they would take earl Simon and his sons,
And, without accepting ransom, put them to death.
While the royalists were assembling their forces,
Northampton was taken, the barons left there
Simon the earl's son, and men who followed him;
Like fools and wretches they went to Kenilworth,
And dwelt there in their ribaldry
While sir Edward was surrounding Evesham.

In the year next following, on the nones of August, was the battle at Evesham between the king and the barons.

Simon de Montfort, with the barons,
The king, spite of his will, was in his company,
The count is mounted, displays his banner;
Sir Edward comes against him with his chivalry,
And Gilbert de Clare at a distance, craftily.
When Simon sees him, he cries to the barons
"God have our souls! our life is lost!"

Sire Eduuard, cum bon fiz, delivera par espeye
Sun pere de prisoun, k'il ne demora mye.
Dure fu la bataille, et graunt fu la folye;
Ke primes le comença, Jhesu ly maldye!

Persons of note slain in the battle.

La bataylle est ferue, escotez ore coment
Le Mounfort est tuez, sun fiz ensement,
Ses membres sunt tranchez, envayez pur present;
Sir Huge le Despenser i prist[1] martyrement;
Sire Rauf Basset i fist sun fynement;
Sire Pers de Mounfort tuez de cele gent;
Et sire Guy de Ballyol, vigrous en jovent,
Il soul fu plus playnt ke les altres cent.
Ore ad le ray Henry terre et tenement,
Et rays est de sa terre, et de kaunt ke apent;[2]

Parliament of North-ampton.

Of la victore s'en va à tenir parlement
Tot drait à Norhauntoun, sir Eduuar[d] assent.[3]
En cel parlement estait exillez
La countasse de Laicestre, ses fiz sunt forjorez;[4]
Countes et barouns sunt desherytez,
Les uns sunt al boys, les uns enprisonez,
Ke encountre le rays armes ount portez.
Almeryk[5] de Mounfort ilokes fu privez
De la tresorye, dount fust estallez
En l'eglyse Saint Pere de Everwyk nomez,
Al fiz le Mortymer le ray l'ad donez.

Arrival of the legate.

Un legat Octobone cel houre est arvyez,
Pur fere la pes estable la pape l'ad maundez.
Cel houre of la reyne sunt tuz repairez
Ke par la Purveaunce furent enchacez,
Forspris Jon Maunsel, ke[6] à Deus est comaundez.

---

[1] *il prist*, C.
[2] *e quanque à li apent*, B.
[3] *s'assent*, C.
[4] *ses fitz forsjurez*, B.
[5] *Emerike*, D.
[6] *ke* omitted in B.

Sir Edward, like a good son, delivered by the sword
His father from prison, that he remained no longer.
Hard was the battle, and great was the folly;
Who first began it, may Jesus curse him.

The battle is fought, listen now how
The Montford is slain, his son likewise,
His members are cut off, and sent for a present;
Sir Hugh le Despenser there takes martyrdom;
Sir Ralph Basset there makes his end;
Sir Pierre de Montfort is slain of that people;
And sir Guy de Balliol, vigorous in youth,
He alone was more lamented than a hundred of the others.
Now has king Henry land and lordship,
And is king of his land, and of all that belongs to it;
He goes off with victory to hold a parliament
Straight to Northampton, sir Edward assents.

In that parliament was exiled
The countess of Leicester, her sons have abjured;
Earls and barons are disinherited,
Some are to the wood, some imprisoned,
Who have borne arms against the king.
Almeric de Montfort was there deprived
Of the treasury, with which he was invested
In the church called of St. Peter of York,
The king has given it to the son of the Mortimer.
At that time a legate, Ottoboni, is arrived,
The pope has sent him to make a stable peace.
At that time with the queen are all returned
Who were driven away by the Provisions,
Except John Maunsel, who is sent to God.

Anno Domini millesimo CC°.LXVJ°., *post captionem de Kenilworthe, convenerunt omnes exhæredati adversus regem Henricum.*[1]

Movements of the disinherited.

Les desheritez sunt en graunt dolour,
Se atyrent ensemble,[2] purchacent soccour.
Robert le Ferers, le avaunt nomé[3] de lour,
Tua les gens par nout, sur ço fu robbour
Sur quaunz[4] ke vers le rays avaynt nul amour.
A Cestrefeld s'assemblent,[5] à lour deshonur;
Le[s] reals les espyent, genz de graunt valur,[6]
La vile ount conquise, de barouns[7] par errour
Sunt les uns tuez,[8] les uns par vigour
Sunt de ilokes alez, kaun[t] ount fet[9] lur honur.

Defeat at Chesterfield.

Ço fust ly Deyville ke passa de l'estour.[10]
Al matyn à la chace alaynt ly plusur,
Robert de Ferers, Baldewyn le Vavasour,
Ke de Cestrefeld cel houre fu seygnur,
Cels et lour manage[11] demorent en langour.
Robert de Wollertoun, vaillaunt chivauchour,
Fu pris et pendu sur Chene[12] saunz retour;
Allas! k'il tynt encountre sun seygnour![13]
Jon Deyville passa de ilokes saun sojour.

Escape of Sir John Deyville.

Le Deivylle eschapa, hardys et vaillaunt,
En l'ylle de Haxolme,[14] où il fust avaunt;
Cum en tapysouns ilokes demort, robbaunt
Kaunz ke par là passent, burgés et[15] marchaunt;
Kant doute survenue, si prent escheu et haunt,[16]

---

[1] This rubric is taken from B.

[2] *assemblé*, B. *se tirent ensemble*, C.

[3] *Robert de Ferrers avaunt n.*, B.

[4] *Sur que quant*, C. D.

[5] *ensemblent*, B. *assemblent*, C.

[6] *espient, grant de valour*, B.

[7] *des barouns*, D.

[8] *Les uns sont tuez*, C.

[9] *quant fet unt lour honour*, B. D.

[10] *cel estour*, B.

[11] *menage*, C.

[12] *sur Kene*, D., and Robert of Brunne translates it, "on Kene hanged he was."

[13] This line is omitted in B. C. D.

[14] *Axynghom*, B. *Axyngholme*, C. *Axinholm*, D

[15] *burgeis ou*, B.

[16] *il prent escu en haunt*, B. *il prent escu et haunt*, D.

Anno Domini 1266, *after the capture of Kenilworth, all the disinherited assembled against king Henry.*

The disinherited are in great grief,
They draw together, and seek succour.
Robert de Fereres, the first named of theirs,
Slew people by night, thereupon he was a robber
Upon all who had any love to the king.
They met at Chesterfield to their dishonour;
The royalists watch them, people of great valour,
They have conquered the town, of the barons in the action
Some are slain, some by strength
Are gone from thence, when they have done their best.
It was the Deyville who passed from the battle.
In the morning many of them went to the chase,
Robert de Fereres, Baldwin the Vavasor,
Who was at that time lord of Chesterfield,
These and their party remained in weakness.
Robert de Wollerton, a valiant rider,
Was taken and hanged on Chene without help;
Alas! that he held against his lord.
John Deyville passed thence without remaining.

The Deyville escaped, bold and valiant,
Into the isle of Axholm, where he was before;
As he remains there in hiding, robbing
All who pass that way, burghers and merchants;
When fear arrives, then he takes shield and spear,

S'en va devers le Suy[1] compaynye queraunt.
Le xij. jour[2] de Aprile lur compaynye est[3] taunt,
Capture of Lincoln. Ke pris ount Nicole, les Jeus[4] maintenaunt
Tenent[5] et destruent, les huches[6] debrysaunt;
Chartres et escryz et kaunt ke est nusaunt
A Crestyen[7] ount pris, les vount defolaunt
Parmy les rueles, et femme et enfaunt
Ount mys à l'espeye cent et cessaunt.
Retaken by prince Edward. Kaunt sire Eduuard oyt dire[8] ke Nicole fu prise,
As chivas covers[9] ad maundé ses amys.
A Nicole se haste, kaunt vent en pays
La cyté ad saisy, hors sunt les enemys;
Vers l'ylle de Hely tornés ount le vis;[10]
Sire Huge Pechez i trovent, ilokes sunt remys.
Sir Eduuard vers le suth sun chemyn ad repris
Si ad le chastel de Kenelworth assys.
Siege of Kenil-worth. De la feste saint Jon en la my estez
Jekes la feste saint Thomas en iver countez,
Ount les desheritez le chastel gardez
Encountre sire Eduuard, le ray, et ses barnez.[11]
Le legat Octobone i vynt cum fu priez,
Sir Henry de Hastyngs le chastel rend de grez
Salve vie et membre, ses bens[12] dedenz trouvez.
Le legat par[13] le rays ad pronunciez
Une sentence dure pur les desherytez;
Les hairs que survivent[14] uncore en sunt chargez.
Le legat s'en va parmy les countrez,
A counter of les clercs et of les ordynez,[15]

---

[1] *le sieu*, B. *le seu*, D.
[2] *Le duxim jour*, C. D.
[3] *lour poer est*, B. C. D.
[4] *Juwes*, B. *Jues*, C.
[5] *Tuent*, B. C. D.
[6] *les hutthes*, B.
[7] *Al Cristiens*, C. *Al Cristien*, D.
[8] *l'oit dire*, B.
[9] *A chevals coverez*, C. *A chivals covertz*, D. "With hilled hors of ' pris," Robert of Brunne.
[10] *les vis*, C.
[11] *e son barnez*, B. D.
[12] *e bens*, C.
[13] *pur*, B.
[14] *qe survenent*, C.
[15] *A coyter od les lais, e od clers, e od les ordeinez*, B. *A counter oue les clers, oue les ordinez*, D.

Proceeds towards the south seeking company.
The twelfth day of April, their company is so great
That they have taken Lincoln, the Jews now
They take and destroy, breaking open the coffers;
Charters and deeds and whatever is injurious
To the Christians they have taken, treading them under foot
Among the lanes, and woman and child
They have put to the sword a hundred and sixty.

When sir Edward heard tell that Lincoln was taken,
He has sent for his friends on covered horses.
He hastens to Lincoln, when he comes into the country
He has seized the city, the enemies are out of it;
They have turned their face towards the isle of Ely;
They find there sir Hugh Pecché, they have resumed their place there.
Sir Edward towards the south has retraced his way,
And he has laid siege to the castle of Kenilworth.

From the feast of St. John at midsummer
Reckoned to the feast of St. Thomas in winter
The disinherited have held the castle
Against sir Edward, the king, and his barons;
The legate Ottoboni comes there as he was asked,
Sir Henry de Hastings surrenders the castle voluntarily,
With safety of life and members, and his goods found inside.
The legate on the part of the king has pronounced
A hard sentence for the disinherited;
The heirs who survive are still burthened with it.
The legate proceeds through the country,
To converse with the clerks and with the clergy,

Edward's expedition against the isle of Ely.

Sir Eduuard vers Ely of bone gent assez.
L'ylle de tute part ad molt ben[1] espyez;
Les barouns dedenz defendent les entrez.
Demy an après les barouns ount maundez
A sir Eduuard, et[2] si li ount moustrez
Ke le ylle ly[3] volent rendre, salve lour herytez,
Chastels, vye, et membre, et ly ount priez
Ke aider les voylle, et il les ad grauntez,
Et par taunt al ray est-il repairez.
Tut drait en cel contemple est contek levez

Gilbert de Clare quarrels with the king.

Entre Gilbert de Clare et le ray senez,
Tesmoyne sire Eduuard, la cause fu privez.
Les barons hors de l'ylle à Loundres sunt alez,
Of Gilbert de Clare sunt-els demorez.
Encountre le rays e sun fiz aynez
Ount par iij. mays tenuz les cytez;[4]
En forme après taillez sunt-els acordez,
Chascun en sun pays en pes est[5] repairez.
Sire Eduuard, fiz le rays, ne lest pur parentez,
S'en va devers le North, molt est redotez,

Edward's proceedings in the North.

Alnewyk ad pris, du chastel ad donez
La garde à un de soens, le seygnur ad menez
A Loundres à sun pere, Henry ray clamez.
Sir Eduuard al rays ad mercy cryez;
Le rays al Vescy ad tut pardonez,
Le duk de[6] Kenelsworth forpris et salvez,
Il avait par raunçoun ses terres et ses fez.
Si tost cum pur tut la pees fu cryé,
Al legat Octobon la pape ad maundé
Ke parmy Engleterre par ly sait preché,

---

[1] *ad bien*, B. C. D.
[2] *et* omitted in B. C. D.
[3] *ly* omitted in B. C. D.
[4] *le citez*. B.
[5] *en pees sont*, C.
[6] *Li sire de*, B. *Le dit de*, C. D.

Robert of Brunne translates, — "The lord of Kilyngworth als "that tyme sped wele;" which is a mistaken version of the reading of B. The reading of C. and D. is no doubt the correct one.

Sir Edward towards Ely with good men enough.
The island on all sides he has very well examined;
The barons within defend the entrances.
Half a year afterwards the barons have sent
To sir Edward, and have shown to him
That they are willing to surrender to him the island,
saved their inheritances,
Castles, life, and members, and they have prayed him
That he will assist them, and he has granted it them,
And thereupon he is returned to the king.
Just at this conjuncture strife is arisen
Between Gilbert de Clare and the wise king,
Sir Edward is witness, the cause was private.
The barons are gone out of the isle to London,
They are remained with Gilbert de Clare.
Against the king and his eldest son
They have held the city during three months;
In form afterwards drawn up they are accorded;
Each is returned to his country in peace.
Sir Edward, the king's son, leaves not for kindred,
He proceeds towards the north, is much feared;
He has taken Alnwick, of the castle has given
The custody to one of his, has carried its lord
To London to his father, Henry king proclaimed.
Sir Edward has prayed the king for mercy;
The king has pardoned everything to the Vesci,
The dictum of Kenilworth excepted and saved,
He had, through ransom, his lands and fees.

As soon as peace was proclaimed everywhere,
The pope has sent to the legate Ottoboni
That through England by him be preached

Progress of the Saracens.

Coment ly Sarazyns en despit de Dé
Ount la Terre Sainte destrute et mys suz pé.
Al legat de Fraunce ausint est[1] comaundé;
Le ray Lawys i est des primers[2] croysé.
Le ray Henry de ça de bone volunté
Prist la croyz cum cyl ke fu de graunt pyté.
Sir Eduuard la prist, chuvaler plus prisé[3]
Ke nul Krystyen acounter[4] en bounté;
Il pur sun pere et ly emprist cel alé.[5]

Anno gratiæ M°. CC°. *septuagesimo.*

Crusade of St. Louis.

An[6] quarreme après, le ray Lawys alait
Devers la Terre Saynte of molt graunt esplait;
Countes, duks, barouns, chuvalers i menait,
Cum en tel mester à tel prince appendait.[7]
Kaunt vynt à la mer, eure bon[8] avait;
Sur le ray de Tunes[9] en sa terre aryvait,[10]
A conquere et destrure trop ben començait;
Moit fu graunt damage ke vivre[11] ne poait;
Mort ly prist, allas! sa vye terminait.

Edward proceeds to the east.

Sir Eduuard, fiz le rays de Engleterre, purvait[12]
Ke à l'Aust[13] après suaunt sun chemyn prent laundrait,
A Rome of le apostoylle en alaunt parlait,
Et pus en Cecille cel yver sojornait.
Si tost cum de l'esté[14] bel tens approchait,
En mer se myst vers Tunes, la terre kaunt il[15] entrait

Death of St. Louis.

Le riche ray de Fraunce Lawys mort trovait.
De Tunes jekes en Akre sir Eduuard passait;

---

[1] *auxi est*, B.
[2] *de primer*, B. C.
[3] *preisé*, B.
[4] *acountez*, C. D.
[5] This line is omitted in D.
[6] *En*, C. D.
[7] This line is omitted in D.
[8] *orre*, C. D.
[9] *de Temes*, C.
[10] *sur le rey de Tunes, de conquere comencayt*, D.
[11] *qe vener*, C.
[12] *prenait*, A. B. C. D.
[13] *Qe al Augst*, B. *Qe al Aust suant après*, C. *Ke al Aust après*, D.
[14] *d'estée*, D.
[15] *il*, omitted in B. D.

How the Saracens in contempt of God
Have ravaged and placed under subjection the Holy Land.
The legate of France has similar commands;
King Louis has there taken the cross among the first.
King Henry on this side the sea with good will
Took the cross as he who was of great piety.
Sir Edward took it, a knight more prized
Than any Christian accounted in goodness;
He undertook this expedition for his father and himself.

Anno Domini 1270.

In the fourth year after, king Louis went
Towards the Holy Land with very great equipment;
Counts, dukes, barons, and knights he took thither,
As became such a prince in such a business.
When he came to the sea he had good weather;
He arrived against the king of Tunis in his land,
Began very well to conquer and ravage;
Great was the misfortune that he could not live;
Death took him, alas! his life he ended.
Sir Edward, son of the king of England, provides
That in the August following after his way he takes thither,
At Rome, on his way, he spoke with the pope,
And then remained that winter in Sicily.
As soon as the fair weather of summer approached,
He put to sea towards Tunis, the land when he entered
He found the rich king of France, Louis, dead.
Sir Edward passed from Tunis to Acre;

Edward arrives at Acre.

Molz lez[1] de sa venue ly Kristiens estait;
Le pople de Fresouns[2] à ly se lyayt.[3]
Le nombre[4] de gens as armes fust, cum homme disait,
Deus c. mil p[ar] ayme[5] de ly ke les noumbrayt.
La terre fu lur waygne par poer saunz descait,
Ne fust la meschaunce ke els encombrayt.[6]
Molt fu affraé la[7] paenerye
Ke Kristyens avaynt si graunt chuvalerye;
Sir Eduuard plus dotait ke nul homme de vye.[8]
Pur quai de nout et jour[9] le soldan estudye
Coment sir Eduuard put tuer par espeye.[10]

The soldan plans his murder.

Tuz [jours] ad[11] Sarazyns des enfauns norye
En cel Haute Assyse en joye, en[12] melodye;
Ben quident ke la joye n'ert[13] jammès fynye.
Un de cel escole le soldan prent, et prie
K'il aylle à sir Eduuard, et par ly le dye,
" Sir, le soldan te salue cum amye,[14]

---

[1] *lez*, omitted in D.

[2] *Li poeple de Frison*, B. *Le pople de France*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it,—

" Grete folk of Frisland, that to
" Acres were comen,
" Tille him thei were willand, for
" lord thei alle him nomen."

[3] *se alyait*, D.

[4] *Ce noumbre*, C. *Le noumbres des gentz*, D.

[5] *par ayme*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates,—

" Of men of armes bold the
" numbre thei ame,
" A thousand and tuo hundreth
" told of Cristen men bi name."

[6] *qe lour encombreit*, B. *qe les encombrait*, C. D.

[7] *fust affraé tut la*, B.

[8] *dotaint qe nul homme en vie*, C.

[9] *de jour e nuyt*, B. *Par quay de nocte*.

[10] " On what manere he myght
" Edward slo thorgh spie," Robert of Brunne.

[11] *Touz jours ad*, B. C. D. The language is here somewhat involved and difficult in the original, but is translated by Robert of Brunne as follows:

" Ther es a stede of wynne, thei
" calle it Haut Assise,
" Men norise childre therinne
" on merveilous wise,
" Ever in joy and blisse, in alle
" that thei may do,
" Thei wene it salle never misse,
" ne other dede come to,
" Thei faire right als dos foles,
" thei do as men tham say,
" The childir of tho scoles thei
" think to lyve ay."

[12] *e en*, B. *e melodye*, C. D.

[13] *joye ert*, D.

[14] *te salut, com son amye*, D.

Very glad was the Christian of his arrival.
The people of the Frisons attached themselves to him.
The number of people in arms was, as man said,
Two hundred thousand, by reckoning of him who numbered them.
The land would have been their gain by power without fail,
But for the misfortune which embarrassed them.

Much was the pagan people frightened
That the Christians had so numerous a chivalry:
They feared sir Edward more than any man alive.
Wherefore the soldan studies night and day
How he may kill sir Edward by treason.
Always has the Saracen children bred up
In the High Assize in joy and in melody;
They believe entirely that that joy will never be ended.
The soldan takes one of that school, and prays him
That he go to sir Edward, and on his part say to him,
" Sir, the soldan salutes thee as a friend,

" Soul à soul en chaumbre saunz altre compaynye
" Te moustray privetez;" sir Eduard l'ottrie
Si tost cum il vent, tresun ne quidait mye.

The assassin wounds the prince, who slays him.

Or est li Sarazyn à sir Eduuard venuz,
En molz ryche dras d'or est-il vestuz;
Cotels envenimez aportait desuz,
Cum apris estait dit ad ses saluz.
Privément en chaumbre sir Eduuard l'ad rescuz.
Le Sarazyn quidait repairer saunz ennuz[1]
En cel Halte Assise saunz fyn à les deduz;
Sir Eduuard ad[2] naffré, ses coups sunt conuz,
Chascun est mortel; sir Eduuard, fort et pruz,
Le traitur ad tuez, en mayn l'ad[3] vencuz.

Ici le rei Edward occist le Sarazin de un tresel qe vint à li en message par treson del soudan.[4]

Prince Edward escapes.

Des playes sir Eduuard maynt homme est dolent;[5]
Sun cyrogen[6] les garde, ly dist surement,
Si salver ly voylle, reposer ly covent.[7]
Molt fu graunt meschaunce,[8] graunt encombrement,
En la Terre Sainte, à Kristyene gent.

Deaths of remarkable people.

L'apostoylle sur ço[9] morust verrayment,
Et le patriark, le legat ensement.
Le ray de Navverne, ke promist surement
Aider[10] à sir Eduuard, ad fet sun fynement,
Cum vynt en Cecille; je cray certaynement[11]
Ke Deu prist vengaunce en cel destourbement.

---

[1] *esmuz*, B.
[2] *ad il n.*, B.
[3] *l'ad tué en meins l'ad*, B. *mayn ly vencuz*, C. *Le traytour ad tué, en meyn ly ad vencuz*, D.
[4] This rubric is given from B. It reads like the title to an illumination in a MS.
[5] *fu dolent*, B.
[6] *surrigien*, B. *sirogen*, C.
[7] *Si sauver sei se voille, reposer covent*, B. *Si salver se voille*, C. D.
[8] *Mult fu cele meschaunce*, B. C. D.
[9] *Le pape sur cel la*, B.
[10] *Aide à sire E*, B. C.
[11] *jeo croy verrayment*, C.

" Alone in a room without other company
" I will show thee secrets;" sir Edward grants it
As soon as he comes, he did not expect treason.

Now is the Saracen come to sir Edward,
In very rich cloths of gold is he clad;
Beneath he bore poisoned knives,
As he was instructed, he has said his salutation.
Secretly in a room sir Edward has received him.
The Saracen expected to return without injury
Into that High Assize without end to its pleasures;
He has wounded sir Edward; his blows are known;
Each is mortal; sir Edward, strong and prudent,
Has slain the traitor, has vanquished him by the hand.

Here king Edward slays with a trestle the Saracen who came to him on a message in treason from the soldan.

Of Sir Edward's wounds many a man is in grief;
His surgeon examines them, tells him certainly,
If he wishes him to save him, rest is necessary for him.
It was a very great misfortune, great injury,
To Christian people in the Holy Land.
The pope truly at that moment died,
And the patriarch, the legate likewise.
The king of Navarre, who promised certainly
To aid sir Edward, has made his end,
When he came into Sicily; I believe certainly
That God took vengeance in this trouble.

Sir Eduuard par ses playes est en graunt torment.
Le ray Henri, sun pere, ad fet sun testament
Après le saint Martyn, kaunt maladye ly prent;
L. et vj. aunz fu rays enterement.
Il gist à Westmouster[1] entumbez richement;
Sachez ke Deu pur ly overe[2] apertement.
Sun fiz sir Eduuard prist par sun assent
La fillye le ray d'Espayne en femme[3] en sa jovent,
Elyanore par noun, dame bele et gent;
En Akre de une fillye avait enfauntement,
Ke dame Jone ad à noun, plus bele de altre cent.

---

[1] *à Weymouster*, B. *Wemoustere*, D.

[2] *overe pur ly*, C.

[3] *au rei d'Espaigne à femme*, B. *La feille al rey de Yspanye à femme*, C. D.

Sir Edward, through his wounds, is in great suffering.
King Henry, his father, has made his will
After Martinmass, when sickness falls on him.
Fifty-six years entire was he king.
He lies at Westminster in rich tomb :
Know that God works openly for him.
His son Sir Edward took by his assent
The daughter of the king of Spain to wife in his youth,
By name Eleanor, a lady fair and elegant.
At Acre she was delivered of a daughter,
Who was named the lady Joan, the fairest of a hundred others.

The Preface to the history of the reign of Edward I.

Ky volt oyr des rais,[1] coment chescun vesquit
En le ylle ke[2] Brutus Brettayne appeler fist,
Et pus cel houre en sca[3] ky gayna, ky perdist;[4]
Coment[5] li ray Belyns Ytaille tut venquist;
Coment Romayn pur Rome tribute li rendist;[6]
Coment li Romayn Brettayne après surprist;
Coment li Danays sur Brettoun trewe mist,
Et coment[7] al darayn la terre lessa quite;
Coment le rays Uther le duk Gorloys[8] occist;
Coment Arthur sun fiz regiouns[9] conquyst;
Coment le Brettoun de Brettayne s'en partist;
Coment li Saxonays i vint, e remist:[10]
Coment li rays Gormound Brettayne tost surquist,[11]
E en vij. realmes les countrés assist;[12]
Coment li veuz Edward le regal en unist;[13]
Coment li rays Harald le regne à tort prist;[14]
Coment li conquerur William sur li le prist;[15]
Coment li ray Richard Normondye joyst;
Coment son frere Jon la duché werpist;[16]
Coment li rays Henry Deus amait[17] e servyst;

---

[1] All this introduction to the history of the reign of Edward I., down to the next rubric, is omitted in B. C. and E. Robert of Brunne has not translated it.

[2] *En le livre de Brutus*, E.

[3] *E puis de cele livre en ça*, E.

[4] After this line E. adds, *N'ad mestier tut detruire, car mon tens ne suffist.*

[5] *Come*, E., and so all the way down.

[6] This and the two following lines are omitted in E.

[7] *Ne come*, E. The lines which follow begin with the same words.

[8] *Galeis*, E.

[9] *son fiz Arthur les regiouns*, E.

[10] This line is omitted in E.

[11] *Gurmond Bretaigne pus surprist*, E.

[12] E. has in place of this, *Ne come li rois Rabes les contrées assist*, D.

[13] *enhonist*, E.

[14] *enprist*, E.

[15] *William le conquerour sur li pus reprist*, E.

[16] *Ne come Johan son frere de bouche la guerprist*, E.

[17] *come son filz Henri Deu ama*, E.

Who desires to hear of the kings, how each lived
In the isle which Brutus caused to be named Britain,
And from that time to this who gained, who lost;
How king Belinus entirely conquered Italy;
How the Roman paid him tribute for Rome;
How the Roman afterwards took possession of Britain;
How the Dane laid a tribute upon Britons,
And how at last he left the land quit;
How king Uther slew duke Gorlois;
How Arthur, his son, conquered kingdoms;
How the Briton departed from Britain;
How the Saxon came there, and remained;
How king Gormond soon seized upon Britain,
And arranged the countries in seven realms;
How the old Edward united the regality;
How king Harold took the kingdom by wrong;
How the conqueror William took it from him;
How king Richard possessed Normandy;
How his brother John lost the duchy;
How God loved and preserved king Henry;

Coment sun fiz Edward, par aide de Jhesu Cryst,[1]
Le pople ad vencu ke vaindre l'entendist;
Ki vout saver[2] la geste de grand e de petit,
L'apregne de dan Peres,[3] ki l'ad mis en escrit.
De noster rays Eduuard Scaffeld li requist[4]
Recorder la geste, escotez cum il dist.

Anno Domini M°. CC°. *septuagesimo secundo.*

Death of Henry III. and accession of Edward I.

Le jur saint[5] Emoun le roy, ky ne sait oblie,[6]
Morust li rais Henry, home de sainte vye;[7]
A Westmouster où gist, Deus[8] li certifie.
Son fiz Eduuard est rays, en la chauncelrye[9]
Son bref est comaundé parmy sa seygnurye.[10]
En le an secunde suaunt, par un Dymayn, ws dye,[11]
Après le Assumpcioun gloriuse[12] Marye,
Le erceveske Robert de Kylwardebye

---

[1] Instead of this line and the following, E. has these four lines:—
Certes qui s'avisast mult tendroit hom petit,
Quant à la conqueste de tuz ceus desus dit
Contre le roi Edward, benoit seit Jhesu Crist,
Car ses enemis ad destruit, e par tut desconfit.

[2] *Qui vielt oir*, E.

[3] *Si l'apreigne de Perot*, E.

[4] Instead of these two concluding lines, E. has:—
Car en cest livre parfurnir uns amis li requist,
Pur recorder le procès de tut son tens parfist,
Coment il l'ad contenuz, escultez cum il dist.

[5] *de saint*, B. C. D.

[6] *qui gist en Pontenie*, E.

[7] *de bone vie*, E.

[8] *Qui gist à Westmoster, que Deu*, E.

[9] *si tient chancelerie*, E.

[10] For these last five lines, B. C. and D. have,
Le jour de seint Edmon,[1] *martir e rei jadie,*
Le rei Henri à Loundres termina sa vie,
Son fitz Edward[2] *fu lors en Sulie,*
Quant vint en Engleterre resceut[3] *la seignurie.*
Anno Domini m°.cc°. septuagesimo quarto.
En l'an secunde suant, etc.

[11] *En l'an siwant après dreiz est que l'em vous die*, E.

[12] *Tut dreit à l'Assumpcion la gloriouse*, E.

---

[1] *Emoun*, D.

[2] *sire Edward*, C. D.

[3] *rescayt*, D.

How his son Edward, by the help of Jesus Christ,
Has vanquished the people who thought to vanquish him ;
Who desires to know the history of great and little,
Let him learn it from dan Pierre, who has put it in writing.
Of our king Edward, Scaffeld required him
To record the history ; listen how he tells it.

Anno Domini 1272.

The day of St. Edmund the king, who let not be forgotten,
Died king Henry, a man of holy life ;
God certifies it at Westminster where he lies.
His son Edward is king ; in the chancery
His brief is directed through his lordship.
In the second year following, on a Sunday, I tell you,
After the Assumption of the glorious Mary,
The archbishop Robert of Kilwardby,

Coronation of Edward I.

Corouna le rays sire Edwarde en[1] le abbye
De Westmouster,[2] temoyne barnez e clergye;
Ausynt[3] la rayne Elyanor, sa amye,
Fu corouné le jour; unkes à Saint Dynye[4]
Ne fu si grant feste,[5] ne si grant noblye,
Rays ne prince n'ad nul de Grece en Orkenye,[6]
Ke taunt ad suffert de controversye[7]
Cum ad[8] sir Eduuard pour sa manauntye.[9]
En Escoce e Gales avait la mestrye,
Cum après orrez ses fez en l'estorye.
Pur nostre rays Eduuard chescun de nus prye
Ke Deu pur sa pyté ly sayt en aye,
Son heritage conquere, Gascoyne e Normundye,
Ke ly ray de Fraunce ad fausement saysye.

---

[1] *Corona sire Edward à Westmoster en l'abbeie*, E.

[2] *Weymouster*, B. *Wemoustere*, D. *En presence del poeple, barnage e clergie*, E.

[3] *E tut ensi*, E.

[4] *Dyonie*, B.

[5] *si bele feste*, B. C. D. *Meime le jor fu coroné à si tresgrant nobleie*, E.

[6] *à Orkeneye*, B. C. In D., this and the twenty lines following are omitted. E. substitutes for this line the two following:—

N'avoit greignure feste de ci en Orkanie,
N'onques n'i out rois en la Cristienie.

[7] *Qui tant ad suffert de mals e de c.*, E.

[8] *ad* omitted in C. *Come fist*, E. Robert of Brunne translates,—

"Was never prince, I wene, that
"I writen of fond,
"More had treie and tene than
"he had for his lond."

[9] After this line, E finishes the paragraph as follows:—

"Mais en fin seit loez le fiz seinte
"Marie,
"Que parmi e par tut ad conquis
"seignorie,
"Cum jà vus endirroms en ceste
"traité oie,
"E cum son heritage, Gascoigne
"e Normendie,
"Par faus abet li ert tolue e
"disseisie.
"Ore aidez, seint Thomas e Johan
"de Beverleie,
"E seint Cuthbert de Durem,
"portez les compaignie,
"E Thomas de Hereforde, qui
"Deus out tant cherie,
"E seint Eadmon li rois, n'est
dreiz que l'en oblie,
"E vous, seint Edward, en qui
"mult s'affie.
"Desore comenceroms de la geste
"florie,
"Si parleroms de sire Edward e
"de sa chevalerie;
"Puis de Leulin de Gales, e de
"sa surquiderie,

Crowned king Edward in the abbey
Of Westminster, in the presence of barons and clergy;
Likewise queen Eleanor, his love,
Was crowned that day; never at St. Denis
Was there so great a feast, nor so great nobility.
There is no prince from Greece into Orkney
Who has suffered so much dispute
As Sir Edward has for his lordship.
In Scotland and Wales he had the mastery,
As afterwards you will hear his deeds in the history.
For our king Edward let each of us pray
That God for his pity be in aid to him,
To conquer his inheritance, Gascony and Normandy,
Which the king of France has seized falsely.

Review of Edward's reign.

Ore aydez Thomas e Jon de Beverlye ;
Duz sire Saint Cuthbert, partez[1] les compaynye ;
Sir Edward de vus trais durement s'afye.[2]
Taunt cum en Gaskoyne la pees est defublye,[3]
Du rays volums parler, e de sa curtaisye ;
De Leulyn de Gales, e de sa surquiderye,[4]
De David soun frere, e[5] de sa felounye ;
[Dresamiraduk,[6] e de sa folie ;][7]
Du contek de Escoce, coment fu sopye,
Et coment de rechef se leva par sotye ;
De Madok e Morgan, e de lur reverye ;[8]
Du ray Jon Bayllol,[9] e de sa musardye,
E des xij. peres ke gyent Albanye.

" Puis de la guerre d'Escoce,
" coment fu sopie,
" E puis coment de rechef se leva
" par sotie ;
" Puis de Maddok e Morgan e
" de lur reverie ;
" Puis des xij. piers d'Escoce qui
" guient Albanie,
" Cum firent lur eleccion à Skone
" en l'abbeie,
" Pur guerreier sire Edward,
" toldre sa seignurie ;
" E cum sire Edward les prist par
" pure chevalerie ;
" Puis coment la quarte foiz co-
" mencent la hatie;
" Et cum se rendent après, pardon
" chescuns enprie,
" Si li font fealté sovent, mal eit
" qui contralie.
" Assez en ai matire, si vus
" dirrai partie,
" De xlviij. chapitles la raison ai
" quillie ;
" Pensez de l'escoter, car ne vus
" mentirai mie,
" Car à meint baron ceo croi
" jeo en ai garantie."

[1] *portez*, B. C. E.

[2] *De vus treis à banere le rei Edward s'affie*, B. C.

[3] *defublie*, B. *defoblie*, C.

[4] " And his beryng hie," Robert of Brunne.

[5] *e* omitted in C.

[6] *De ray Sameraduk*, C.

[7] This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. and C., and Robert of Brunne translates it ;—
" Resaunraduk, an othere, how he
" did folie."

[8] " Of Madok the Morgan, of
" ther nice ribaudie," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *Johan de Bailliol*, B. *Johan de Ballyolf*, C.

Now aid him Thomas and John of Beverley ;
Gentle St. Cuthbert, bear them company.
Sir Edward has great confidence in you three.
Until the peace is undone in Gascony,
We will speak of the king, and of his courtesy ;
Of Llewellyn of Wales, and of his presumption ;
Of David his brother, and of his felony ;
Of Rees ap Meredith, and of his folly ;
Of the strife of Scotland, how it was appeased,
And how again it arose through folly ;
Of Madoc and Morgan, and of their raving ;
Of king John Balliol, and of his vain designs,
And of the twelve peers who rule Albany.

Anno Domini M°. CC°. *septuagesimo quinto.*[1]

Edward's first Welsh war.

Le primer an après ke le ray[2] fu corouné,
Lewlyn, prince de Wales,[3] en France ad mandé
Ke la feylle[4] le counte[5] de Mounfort nomez
Vendrait en Snaudon,[6] en serraynt[7] esposez
Li e la damoysele ; ses[8] amys sunt paez.
Aymery[9] son frere e cele sunt en mer entrez ;[10]
Un burgès de Bristowe,[11] ke vint of vins[12] chargez,
Pris les ad par force, à terre les ad menez ;[13]
Al rays en sauve garde sunt meyntenaunt livrez.
Quant Lewlyn l'oit dire, sa guere ad comencez.
Le rays s'en va vers ly, e l'ad taunt chacez,
Ke pur sa folye de pees en ad[14] parlez ;

---

[1] The rubric is taken from B. C.

[2] *L'an primer après le rei fu*, B. C. D.

[3] *Lewelin, prince de Gales*, B. *ad en France*, E.

[4] *De la fidle*, B.

[5] *al conte*, E.

[6] *à Snowedoun*, B. *en Snawedoun*, D.

[7] *où serrayt*, D.

[8] *ces*, C. *si sis amis*, E.

[9] *Almerik*, B. C. *Amerike*, D. *Sire Aymeris*, E.

[10] *sont eschipez*, E.

[11] *Un burgeys de Brestou*, D. *Mais un b.*, E.

[12] *des vins*, E.

[13] MS. E. gives the following reading of this and the succeeding lines to the end of the paragraph :—

" Les prent en mer à force, si's
" ad à terre menez,
" Si's ad en sauve garde à sire
" Edward liverez.
" E quant Leulin l'ot dire, ran-
" cour l'encrest assez,
" E par surquiderie sa guerre ad
" comencez,
" E as Engleis fait gaiter tantz
" des iniquitez,
" Les chasteals sire Edward tost
" ad acraventez.
" E quant sire Edward l'entent,
" mult est amerveillez,
" E sanz plus delaie vers Gales
" s'est turnez,
" Sur le prince s'apreste, si li ad
" tant chacez,
" Que Lewelin de fin pour pur
" la pees ad priez,
" E cinquante mil marz al roi ad
" presentez,
" Prent la dameisele, e tient ses
" heritez,
" E sur ceo par bon escrit s'est-il
" obligez
" Al parlement sire Edward par
" an venir ij. fiez."

I have not thought it necessary to collate MS. E. further, for reasons given in the preface to this volume.

[14] *de pees ad*, C. D.

Anno Domini 1275.

The first year after the king was crowned,
Llewellyn, prince of Wales, has sent into France,
That the daughter of the earl entitled of Montfort
Should come into Snowdon, where should be espoused
Himself and the damsel; her friends consent.
Almeric, her brother, and she have put to sea.
A burgher of Bristol, who came laden with wines,
Has taken them by force, has carried them to land;
They are now delivered to the king in safe keeping.
When Llewellyn hears news of it, he has begun his war.
The king went against him, and has chased him so far,
That for his folly he has treated for peace.

Peace with Llewellyn.

Cynkaunte myle mars al rays ad donez
Et prent la damoisele, e teent ses heritez.
Sur ceo par bon escryt est Lewlyn obligez
Al parlement le rays [1] venir par an deus fez.

Statutes of Westminster.

L'an secunde suaunt [2] l'encorounement,
Le rays à Westmouster tynt soun parlement,
Estatuz fist fere par commune assent,
Ke de Westmouster sunt dit proprement.
A la Paske après le ray certainement [3]
Fist maunder [4] le prince par sun bref sovent,
K'il veygne à sa parlaunce pur sun tenement.[5]

Second war with the Welsh.

Leulyn cum musard despise le mandement,[6]
Et guere de rechef sur le rays enprent.
Le ray parmy sa terre fist [7] maunder sa gent,
Ke servise ly dayvent venent prestement,
Et courent [8] sur le prince si vigorusement,
Ke venuz est al rays, e à sa pes [9] se rent.
David of le rays fu lors enterement ;
Le rai [10] li dona pardurabelment
Foderham [11] en fee, of le purtaynement,
A Lewlyn pardona tut sun maltalent.
Par covenaunt tayllé assez covenabelment,
Lewlyn est dure lyé, si autre fez mesprent.[12]

Abuses in the coinage.

Le rays sun chemyn devers Lundres reprent,
Fet sa monoye chaunger,[13] ke fu trop [14] vilement
Roygné de tuz pars, la plainte li veent ent.[15]
[De] roygnurs [16] sunt traynez les uns, li altre pent.
Esterling, maylle, ferthing,[17] fet forger roundement,

---

[1] *Au parlement le rei*, B. C. D.
[2] *La secunde an après*, B. C. D.
[3] *curteisement*, B. C. D.
[4] *Fet maunder*, C.
[5] *tenent*, B.
[6] *son maundement*, C.
[7] *fet*, C. D.
[8] *E corurent*, B.
[9] *à la pees*, B. C. D.
[10] *E le rei*, B.
[11] *Frodesham*, B. D., and Robert of Brunne. *Fredesham*, C.
[12] This line is omitted in C.
[13] *Fet chaunger sa monée*, B. C. D.
[14] *trop* omitted in C. D.
[15] *la pleinte vus vient ent*, B.
[16] *De roignours*, B. *Des roygnurs*, C. D.
[17] *ferling*, B.

Fifty thousand marks he has given to the king,
And takes the damsel, and retains his inheritance.
On this Llewellyn is obliged by good charter
To come to the king's parliament twice a year.

The second year following the coronation
The king held his parliament at Westminster;
Caused statutes to be made by common assent,
Which are specially called of Westminster.
At Easter afterwards the king courteously
Caused the prince to be summoned by his writ often,
That he come to his parliament for his lordship.
Llewellyn, like a fool, despises the mandate,
And again undertakes war against the king.
The king caused his people to be summoned through his land;
They who owe him service come quickly,
And attack the prince so vigorously,
That he is come to the king and surrenders to his peace.
David was then entirely with the king;
The king gave him for ever
Frodesham in fee, with the appurtenance,
And pardoned Llewellyn all his ill-will.
By covenant expressed very sufficiently
Llewellyn is hard bound, if he offends another time.
The king retraces his way towards London;
Causes his coinage to be changed, which was too disgracefully
Clipped on all sides; the complaint of it comes to him.
Of the clippers some are drawn, another hangs.
He causes sterling (penny), halfpenny, farthing, to be coined round,

Reform of the coinage.

Et gros tornays Englays, ke valent[1] verrayment
Quatre esterlyns en achate et vent.
De reen se lo ly prestre ke le offrand attent,[2]
Ne ly chaitifs povres ke ren n'ad[3] dount despent.
En tote la monoye la croyce parmy s'estent,[4]
Par quai l'esterling est rounde[5] communement
Offert e doné[6] pur Deu omnipotent;
L'esterling e la maylle i[7] venent rerement;
Sur Deu e sur les soens cheet l'enpirement.[8]

The statute of Mort-main.

Mil cc. et octaunt aunz[9] de l'Incarnacioun
Sunt passez par acounte, quant del re[li]gioun[10]
Est fet l'estatut, ke counte, ne baroun,
Ne seygnur de terre, parmy la regioun,
Face à seinte Eglise offrand ne doun
De terre ne tenement, si par cungé noun
Du rays e de son consayl;[11] tel est la resoun
Ke freres of la croyce[12] et moyne et chanoun
Ount taunt des fez le rays tretes à lur[13] aumon;
Sustret ount[14] son seruise par tel convencioun,
Par quai li est fet[15] desheretisoun.
Noun pur ço le rays ad grant devocioun,

---

[1] *qe vaut*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates this:—

"Edward did smyte rounde peny,
"halfpeny, ferthyng;
"The croice passed the bounde of
"alle thorghout the ryng.
"The kynges side salle be the
"hede, and his name writen;
"The croyce side what cité it
"was in coyned and smyten."

[2] This and the following line are omitted in D. Robert of Brunne translates them,—

"The povere man ne the preste
"the peny prayses no thing;
"Men gyf God the lest, the feffe
"him with a farthing."

[3] *qe rien ad*, B. C.

[4] *se tent*, C. D.

[5] *le ferling round est*, B. C. This and the three lines following are omitted in D.

[6] *Offert ou donné*, B. C.

[7] *i* omitted in B. *L'esterling est la maille*, C.

[8] *l'empayrement*, C.

[9] *Mil cc. quatre vinz anz*, B. *Mille cc. octaunte aunz*, C.

[10] *quant de religioun*, B. C. D.

[11] *e son c.*, B. D.

[12] *od la croice*, B. *ouf la croyce*, C. *oue la croyce*, D.

[13] *tret à lour*, B. *taunt del fee le reis tret à lour*, C. D.

[14] *est*, B. C. D.

[15] *fet li est*, B. D. *fet ly est tiel d.*, C.

And great English tournais, which are worth truly
Four sterlings in buying and selling.
The priest is nothing satisfied who expects his offering,
Nor the wretched pauper who has nothing to spend.
On all the coinage the cross extends itself in the middle,
For which reason the sterling is round, commonly
Offered and given for God Almighty ;
The sterling and the halfpenny come there rarely.
Upon God and upon his falls the debasement.

One thousand two hundred and eighty years from the Incarnation
Are passed by reckoning, when of religion
Is made the statute, that count nor baron,
Nor lord of land throughout the kingdom,
Make to Holy Church offering or gift
Of land or lordship, unless by licence
Of the king and of his council ; such is the reason
That friars with the cross and monks and canons
Have so many fees of the king drawn to their alms.
They have withdrawn his service by such convention,
By which to the king is made disherising.
Nevertheless the king has great devotion,

Ke sainte Eglise se prove saunz collisioun [1]
De terres e des rentes [2] en possessioun,
Salve ses servises, saunz recoupisoun.

Anno Domini M°. *ducentesimo octogesimo secundo.*[3]

L'an est temoyné en la rubriche avaunt [4]
Quant David de Gales ala gopyllaunt; [5]
A Leulyn sun frere accordez est [6] en taunt
Desheriter le rays e sun punez enfaunt;
Enfraynt unt cil sa pees,[7] et rumpu covenaunt;
Courent sur les genz, ardent [8] en passaunt,
Abbatent ses chasteus ke trouvent en [9] esteaunt.
Le rai fet sun barné [10] maunder maytenaunt.
Les barouns li venent [11] de Northumberland,
[Les Surreis i sunt, nul est recuillant,] [12]
Atyrent lur aler sur li deus tyraunt.
Descendent en la Marche li baroun [13] vaillaunt;
Leulyn et Davyd, et li remenaunt,
Se dounent à la rage e vount [14] la mort queraunt.
Grevouse est la guere, e dure [15] l'endurer;
Quant [aillours] est [16] l'esté en Gales est yver.[17]
Snaudon, ke taunt est fort, Leulyn fet garder,
Ke li rays Eduuard ne seet où entrer.[18]

---

[1] *collusioun*, B. *se pruwe*, C. *se prowe*, D.

[2] *de rentes*, B. *Des terres et des rentes*, D.

[3] This rubric is given from B. and C.

[4] *devaunt*, B.

[5] *gopoillaunt*, B.

[6] *est acordé*, B.

[7] *unt sa pees*, B. C. D.

[8] *àrdaient*, B. *ces gentz ardent*, C. *sus ses gentz*, D.

[9] *en* omitted in B. The whole line is omitted in D.

[10] *ses barons maunder*, B. *maunder* omitted in C.

[11] *vienent*, B.

[12] This line omitted in A., is found in B. C. D. It is here given from B.

[13] *ly barons*, C. D.

[14] *i vount*, C.

[15] *dure est*, B. C. D.

[16] *aillours est*, B. C. D.

[17] *le yver*, C. D.

[18] *Qe sire Edward ne siet quel part entrer*, B. D. *Qe sire Edward ne seet quel party entrer*, C.

That holy church prove without dispute
In possession of lands and rents,
Except his services without recovery.

Anno Domini 1282.

The year is given in the rubric above,
When David of Wales went about playing the fox;
He is accorded with Llewellyn his brother in order
To disinherit the king and his youngest child;
These have transgressed his peace, and broken covenant;
They invade his people, burn in passing,
Cast down his castles which they find standing.
The king now causes his barons to be summoned.
The barons come to him from Northumberland,
The Southerns are there, nobody holds back.
They prepare their expedition against the two tyrants.
The valiant barons descend into the Marches;
Llewellyn and David, and the rest,
Act like madmen and go seeking death.

Grievous is the war, and hard the suffering;
When elsewhere it is summer, it is winter in Wales.
Snowdon, which is so strong, Llewellyn causes to be guarded,
So that king Edward knows not where to make entrance.

The English defeated.

Ke fount les barouns? à un braz de mer[1]
Barges et batels ensemble fount[2] nower
En travers cel ewe, et parmy claer,
Tut al foer de pount pur les gens passer,
Chuvals as armes,[3] ke vount assayer.
Les [Waleis] survenent,[4] les chacent arer;
La presse est si grand à lur returner,
La charge fet le[s] bas e les barges[5] enfoundrer;
Chuvalers sunt naez, je les oy nomer.

Names of those slain.

Naez [i] sunt,[6] pur veirs, de la chuvalerye,
Roger de Clifford, primer en la partye,
Et le fiz Phelipe William de Lindesye,[7]
Jon le fiz Robert, e Lucas de Tannye,[8]
Cels sunt les chevetayns, of lur esquyerye,
Ke sunt naez cel houre en Gales par folye.

Reflexions.

Ki guyour est de guere, e ne seet de vaidye,[9]
Fet sovent damage à sa[10] compaynye.
Kar si nos Englays eusent eu espye
Entre les Galais, e les eust[11] garnye,
Cels ke sunt naez feusent unkore[12] en vye.

---

[1] Robert of Brunne, who appears to have understood the language of Pierre de Langtoft but imperfectly here, adding a little to the information it conveys, translates—

"A water in Snowdoun rennes,
"Auber is the name,
"An arme of the se men kennes,
"the defines may non ame.
"The kyng controved therover a
"brigge for to make,
"And of Leulyn to covere Snow-
"doun for to take."

Auber is of course Aber.

[2] *vount*, B.

[3] *as chevals, as armes*, C. *a chivals*, D.

[4] *Les Waleis survenent*, B. C. D. "The Walsch com tham ageyn, did "our men alle arere." Robert of Brunne. The word Waleis has been accidentally omitted in A.

[5] *les batels e barges*, B. *les baz e barges*, C. *les batz e barges*, D.

[6] *i sunt*, B.

[7] *Li autres sunt nomez Wiliam de Lyndeseie*, B. C. D.

[8] "Sir Lucas of Tame," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *e ne siet voidie*, B. C. D.

[10] *à la*, C.

[11] *ke les eus*, D.

[12] *uncore fussent*, B. C. *unkor fussent*, D.

What do the barons? at an arm of the sea
They cause barges and boats to be tied together
Across that water, and place hurdles over them,
Just in the manner of a bridge for the people to pass,
Mounted and armed, who go to try it,
The Welsh attack, and drive them back;
The crowd is so great at their return,
That the load causes boats and barges to sink.
Knights are drowned; I heard them named.

Drowned are there, for truth, of the knights,
Roger de Clifford, the foremost in the party,
And William de Lindsay, son of Philip,
John fitz Robert, and Lucas de Tannye;
These are the chieftains, with their esquires,
Who are drowned that time in Wales through folly.
Who is leader in war, and is unacquainted with craft,
Often does harm to his company.
For if our English had had a spy
Among the Welsh, and he had warned them,
Those who were drowned would have been still alive.

Anno Domini M°. *ducentesimo octogesimo tertio.*[1]

Foreign auxiliaries.

Kant li rays l'oyt[2] dire ke mort sunt les barons,
Vynt[3] Jon de Vescy del ray des Arraguns[4]
Of pitayle[5] saunz noumbre de Baskles e Gascons;[6]
Demorent of le rays, rescayvent ses douns,
En mores e mountaynes[7] raumpent cum lyouns;
S'en voun[t] of les Engleys, ardent les mesuns,
Abatent les chastels, tuent les felouns;
Passez sunt la Marche, entrez[8] en Snaudouns.
David, frere le prynce, ke playn est de tresuns,
S'en ala de sun frere cum lers[9] en tapisuns.

Death of Llewellyn.

Leulyn est trové covert en boyssuns;[10]
Perduz ad la teste, n'ad mister de chaperouns.[11]
Leulyn est tuez, decolez vilement;
Ses heirs desheritez sunt par jugement.
David va gopillaunt, e quide seurement
Après la mort sun frere tenir le tenement.
Les Waleys ad trete à son parlement
A Nowel en Dinebethe,[12] e funt ordaynement
La Walesserye[13] defendre par assent.
Le ray la fet[14] chacer, David se defent;
La vile[15] saynt Marice, par poer de gent,

Execution of David.

David est desmembré mout trop vilement;[16]
La teste est maundé à Loundres pur present,
Et ses iiij. membres coupez plainement,

---

[1] *octogesimo ij°.*, C.

[2] *le rei oit*, B. D. *ly roys oit*, C.

[3] *Viant*, B. *Vent*, C. *Veent*, D.

[4] *Aragouns*, D.

[5] *pedaile*, B.

[6] *de bachelers e garsçons*, B.

[7] *e en mountaygnes*, D. Pierre de Langtoft seems to have taken his notions of the movements of the lion from the heraldic *lion rampant*.

[8] *entrent*, B.

[9] *cum lever*, C.

[10] *en busons*, B. *en busçons*, C.

[11] *mester des chaprouns*, D.

[12] *en Denebeghe*, B. C. D.

[13] *Walescherie*, B. C. D.

[14] *le fet*, B. D. *ly fet*, C.

[15] *veile*, B. *veylle*, C. D.

[16] *Sire David i est demembrez ordeinement*, B. C. *Sire David i est desmembré ordenement*, D.

Anno Domini 1283.

When the king hears say that the barons are dead,
Comes John de Vescy from the king of the Aragonese
With footmen without number of Basques and Gascons ;
They remain with the king, receive his gifts,
In moors and mountains they clamber like lions.
They go with the English, burn the houses,
Throw down the castles, slay the wretches ;
They have passed the Marches, and entered into Snowdon.
David, the prince's brother, who is full of treason,
Went away from his brother, skulking like a thief.
Llewellyn is found concealed in bushes ;
He has lost his head, he has no need of a hat.

Llewellyn is slain, beheaded with shame ;
His heirs are disinherited by judgment.
David goes skulking about, and expects in certainty
To hold the lordship after the death of his brother.
He has drawn the Welsh to his parliament
At Christmas, in Denbigh, and they make an ordinance
By assent to defend the Welshery.
The king causes him to be hunted ; David defends himself ;
On the eve of St. Maurice, by power of people,
David is dismembered very disgracefully ;
His head is sent to London for a present,
And his four members cut off completely.

En quatre cytez put homme ver coment
A chesun par say un des membres pent.

Reduction of Wales.

Leulyn e David unt perdu grant honur;
Snaudone est saysi, e chastel e thour;
Al rays est l'escheet cum al chef seygnur.[1]
Ke fount es Walays ke sunt de valour[2]?
Fount chevaunce al ray, cum à chef seygnur.[3]
Ly rays parmy la terre, pur norryr amour,
Feet cryer sa pees al foer[4] de conquerour,
Establye ses lays,[5] fet l'estat melliour;
Il mette[6] en sun noun gardayn e guyour.
[Quant la chose est fet, à Loundres fet retour,][7]
Fet maunder ses countes, baroun, e vavasour,
Venir al parlement, assignez les ad jour;
Les moustre tut[8] coment li covent par clamour
Aler en Gascoyne amender cel errour.

Anno Domini millesimo CC°. *octogesimo vj°.*[9]

King Edward proceeds into Gascony.

Nostre rays Eduuard en Gascoyne alayt;
Ma dame la rayne là[10] of li menait.
Li rays a sun aler[11] la terre comaundait
Al counte de Cornewaile, ke gardayn estayt.
En pees e en bon[12] amour le rays Eduuard passait,
Et of le rays de Fraunce à Parys[13] parlayt.
Quant vint en Gascoyne,[14] fet[15] cryer le drayt,
Adresça les torz; ky meffet avait

[1] *com à son seignour*, B. *à chef*, D.
[2] *de grant valour*, C.
[3] *com à governour*, B. C. D.
[4] *à foer de compaignon*, B.
[5] *les lays*, C.
[6] *i mette*, C.
[7] This line is omitted in A., but is found in B. C. and D.
[8] *tut* omitted in C.
[9] The rubric is given from B., *cc°. octogesimo secundo*, C.
[10] *là* omitted in B. *ouf ly là menayt*, C. D.
[11] *al son aler*, C.
[12] *En pees e bon amour*, C. D.
[13] *al Parys*, C.
[14] *en Engletere*, D.
[15] *vint . . . . fist*, B. C. D. *fet trier*, D.

In four cities a man might see how
At each by itself one of the members hangs.

Llewellyn and David have lost great honour;
Snowdon is occupied, both castle and tower.
To the king is the escheat as to the chief lord.
What do the Welsh who are of valour?
They make chevance to the king, as to their chief lord.
The king through the land, to nourish love,
Causes his peace to be cried in the manner of a conqueror;
Establishes his laws, makes the state better;
He appoints in his name wardens and rulers.
When the thing is done, to London he makes his return,
Summons his earls, barons, and vavasors,
To come to his parliament, has assigned them a day;
Shows them how he is obliged by tidings
To go into Gascony to put right that trouble.

Anno Domini 1286.

Our king Edward went into Gascony;
He took my lady the queen with him there.
The king at his departure entrusted the land
To the earl of Cornwall, who was keeper.
In peace and good love king Edward crossed the sea,
And conferred with the king of France at Paris.
When he came into Gascony, he caused justice to be proclaimed,
And put right the wrongs; whoever had trespassed

Insurrection in Wales of Rees ap Meredith.

Jugement resceut tel cum la lay[1] volait.
Taunt cum en Gascoyne ses gens justizayt,
Rees Amyraduk,[2] ne sai ke li devait,[3]
Tuer des genz le rays en Gales comencayt.[4]
Noun pour ço la noyse primes se levayt
Ke ly Tybetoft[5] à tort li grevait.
Ly rays rescait la plainte, e as Rees[6] maundait,
K'il se tenayt en pes, e, quant repairerait,[7]
Le rays en bone fay ses resuns[8] orrayt,
Et des tutes choses equyté[9] li frait.
Rees Amyraduk[10] cum fol despisayt
Le maundement le rays, le mal ke il poait
Fist parmy la terre, à nul esparnyait,[11]
Tuer fist-il tuz ke vaindre poait,[12]
Ki par sir Eduuard en Gales se avowait.

Anno gratiæ[13] M°. CC°. LXXX°. *nono.*

Corruption in the English courts.

Quaunt li rais Eduuard[14] avait demoré
Trays aunz delà la mer, Deu l'ad remené.
A sun repair trova, par plainte presenté,
Ses justises e ses clercs attaint de fauseté.[15]
Les uns avaynt par douns les lays[16] besturné,

---

[1] *com lei*, B. C. D.

[2] *Resamiraduk.* B. *Rees Amereduke*, D.

[3] *davait*, D.

[4] *Guere sur le rei en Gales comenceit*, B. C. D,

[5] *le Tiptost*, B. *ly Typpetoft*, C. *luy Tipetoft*, D. In Robert of Brunne the line is translated,

"Men said the wrath and cri
"com thorgh the lord Tiptofte."

[6] *al Rese*, B. C. *al Reis*, D.

[7] *Q'en pes se tenist, e quant repaireit*, B. *Qe en pees se tenist*, C. D.

[8] *les resouns*, C.

[9] *quite*, D.

[10] *Resamiraduk*, B. *Rees Ameraduke*, D.

[11] *n'esparnieit*, B.

[12] This line is omitted in B. C. D.

[13] *Domini*, B. C. D.

[14] *Kaunt sire Edward*, D.

[15] *atteyntz de maveisté*, B. D. *ses clers e ses justices attainz de malvayté*, C.

[16] *La lei*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates these lines,—

"For giftes som justice lete the
"lowe go doun,
"And som on other wise did
"wrong to the coroun."

Received judgment such as the law ordered.
While he was administering justice to his people in Gascony,
Rees ap Meredith, I don't know what ailed him,
Began to slay the king's people in Wales.
Nevertheless the report rose at first
That the Tibetoft aggrieved him with wrong.
The king received the complaint, and sent notice to Rees,
That he remain in peace, and, when he returns,
The king in good faith would listen to his complaints,
And would do him justice in everything.
Rees ap Meredith, like a fool, set at nought
The king's injunction; what evil he could
He did through the land, he spared nobody;
He caused to be slain every one he could overcome,
Who avowed himself for sir Edward.

Anno Domini 1289.

When king Edward had dwelt
Three years beyond the sea, God has brought him back.
On his return he found, by complaint presented to him,
His justices and his clerks convicted of falseness.
Some had for gifts subverted the laws,

Punishments of the judges.

Les altres la coroune avaynt violé.
Thomas de Wilaund,[1] en baunk primer nomé,[2]
Par agarde de la court[3] le regne ad forjoré,
Et en la terre de France sanz repairer[4] alé.
Ses compaynons, ses clercs, sunt pris e mené
A la thour de Loundres, delivrés par moné;
Et sur ço de office chescun[5] est pryvé.
Helis de Beckyngham[6] n'est pas entechelé,[7]
Ne Jon de Metingham, ke chef est demoré.
Sir Rauf de Hengham tant ad[8] desputé
Ke del bank le rais perdu ad le sée.
Sir Adam de Stretton[9] est dure demené,
Jo cray ke sanz deserte n'est-il poynt blamé;
Or [et] argent[10] sanz nombre al rais ad doné,[11]
Aver chaunta pur ly *placebo Domine*,
Dilexit quoniam fraude e fauseté.

Anno gratiæ M°. CC°. *nonagesimo.*

Expulsion of the Jews.

Des justis e clerz[12] la plainte est chevye;
Ore fet le ray enquere[13] coment la Jurye[14]
Ad desceu sun popel par grand trescherye.
Son privé parlement par taunt [ad] establye;[15]
Les barouns en parlent, ausint[16] la clergye,

---

[1] *Weland*, B. *Wayland*, C. *Weylande*, D.

[2] *primes fu nomé*, B. "The first "justise in benk," Robert of Brunne.

[3] *de courtz*, B. C. D.

[4] *repeire*, B. C. *repair*, D.

[5] *sur ceo chescon d'office*, B. C. D.

[6] *Elys de Bekyngham*, C. D., and Robert of Brunne.

[7] *enterthele*, B. *entylé*, C. *enteclé*, D.

[8] *ad taunt*, B. D.

[9] *Strattoun*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates these two lines,—

"Sir Adam of Stretton fulle hard
"was he led,
"Nouht without encheson, I lay
"my glove to wed."

[10] *Or e argent*, B. D.

[11] *od-il doné*, C. D.

[12] *e des clers*, B.

[13] *quere*, C.

[14] *Juerye*, D.

[15] *ad establie*, B.

[16] *en parleient, auxi*, B.

Others had offered violence to the authority of the crown.
Thomas de Weyland, named chief justice on the bench,
By judgment of the court has forsworn the kingdom,
And gone into the land of France never to return.
His companions and his clerks are taken and carried
To the Tower of London, set at liberty for money:
But thereupon each is deprived of office.
Elis de Beckingham is not tainted,
Nor John of Metingham, who is remained chief justice.
Sir Ralph de Hengham has so much disputed
That he has lost his seat at the King's Bench.
Sir Adam de Stretton is treated with severity;
I believe that he is not blamed without desert;
He has given gold and silver without count to the king
For having chaunted for him *Placebo Domine,*
Dilexit quoniam fraud and falseness.

Anno Domini 1290.

The complaint of the justices and clerks is settled;
Now the king makes inquiry how the Jews
Have deceived his people by great deceit.
He has established his privy parliament thereupon;
The barons propose, likewise the clergy,

Voyder la terre de Jues;[1] e le rays l'ottrye,
Pur le quinzime dener al rays en aye
Des clers e de lays;[2] n'ad nul ke countre crye,[3]
Pur ouster les Jues de la[4] mescréauncye.
Ore sunt alez en France e en Pykardye;
Tutes lur dettes e lur manauntye[5]
Sunt salves al ray, dunt fere sa curtaysye.

Capture and execution of Rees ap Meredith.

Rees Amyraduk,[6] alaunt en tapye,
Memes cel an en Gales fu pris[7] par espye.
Quant le rays l'oit dire, comande ke hom le lye,[8]
Et meyne à Everwik, à la justiserye,
Où primes fu traynez pur sa felonye,
Et pus pendu cum lers; desore n'ad nul[9] en vye
Ke porte heritage de sa sucesserye.

Anno gratiæ M°. CC°. *nonagesimo primo.*

Capture of Acre by the Saracens.

Le an suaunt après fu Acres saisye;[10]
Le soudan par poer avait la mestrye.
Prys est[11] la cyté, mys sunt à l'espeye
Tuz les Cristiens, la fay cheet en oblye.
Ke fet l'apostoyle quant Acres est saysye?
Mès doune à sir Eduuard parmy sa ballye
Le disme dener de clers,[12] nul li countre crye,
De Engleterre, de Escoce, de Gales, de Irland, ws dye,
A la verrai value; molt est ore honye[13]
Tute saint Eglise, quant nul esparnye.

---

[1] *des Jues*, B. C. *des Jwes*, D.

[2] *Des clers ne des lais*, C. *et des lays*, D.

[3] *countredie*, B. C. D.

[4] *et la*. B. C. *oster . . . . mesreaunty*, D.

[5] *manancie*, B. "The dettes that "men tham auht, ther stedes, and "ther wonyng," Robert of Brunne.

[6] *Resamiraduk*, B. *Rees Ameraduk*, D.

[7] *pris fu*, B. C. D.

[8] *l'em li lie*, B.

[9] *est nul*, B. C. D.

[10] *assaillie*, B. D., and so Robert of Brunne, "Acres was assaled."

[11] *Pris unt*, C.

[12] *La disme des bens à clers*, B. *La dime des biens as clers*, C. D.

[13] *value, nul esparnye*, D., omitting the next line.

To clear the land of Jews; and the king grants it,
For the fifteenth penny to the king in aid
Of clergy and laity; there is nobody who opposes it,
To expel the Jews of the misbelief.
Now are they gone into France and into Picardy;
All their debts and their tenements
Are reserved to the king, wherewith to do his courtesy.
Rees ap Meredith, going skulking about,
In Wales this same year was taken through a spy.
When the king heard tell of it, he orders that they bind him,
And carry him to York to the justices,
Where first he was drawn for his felony,
And then hanged as a thief; henceforward there is none alive
Who carries the inheritance of his succession.

Anno Domini 1291.

The year following after was Acre taken;
The soldan by force had the mastery.
The city is taken, put to the sword are
All the Christians; the faith falls into oblivion.
What does the pope when Acre is taken?
But grants to sir Edward through his dominions
The tenth penny of the clergy, not one opposes it,
Of England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, I tell you,
At the true value; greatly is now shamed
All holy church, when he spares no one.

Ma dame la rayne cel an en Lindesye
Morust, à Westmouster son cors est sevelye.
Vacancy in the crown of Scotland.
Avaunt morust Margarete, hair de Albanye.[1]
Pur quay le ray maunda sa chuvalerye;
A Norham[2] s'en va, chastel[3] ben garnye,
Et là fet[4] venir de abbeye e priorye
Tutes les cronicles de[5] auncesserye.
La gest examyne, trop ben certifie
Ke sire Eduuard ad drait à la seygnurye.
Ço fist le evesk Auntoyne, par sen e grant vaydye;[6]
Benette pusse-il estre de Deu le fiz Marye!

Anno Domini M°. CC°. *nonagesimo secundo.*

The different claimants to it.
Desor est en Escoce[7] grand contencioun
Par cels ke mettent claym en la regioun.
Le ayr del regne est mort, le drayt dait par resun
Revertir à Davyd quens[8] de Hontyndon,
Frere le ray William, ky saunk n'ad fusoun.
Passez est, par quay [la] reversioun
Est as ayrs Davyd, saunz deposicioun,[9]
Encountre tuz les altres ke clayment[10] accioun.
David avayt iij. fyllyes, chescun avayt baroun,
Et ayrs gentils e riches de grant mansioun.[11]
Baylliol,[12] Brus, Hastinges, cels sunt les iij. par noun
Ke drayt ount à la terre par successioun;
Et à sir Eduuard, sanz dissensioun,
Rendu est[13] la terre de Escoce en proteccioun.

---

[1] *heir en Albanie*, B.
[2] *A Northam*, C.
[3] *le chastel*, B.
[4] *fet là*, B. C. D.
[5] *del*, B.
[6] *Antoyne, qe Dieu ly benye*, D., omitting the next line.
[7] *en Escoce est*, B.
[8] *counte*, B. C. D., which is of course grammatically more correct.
[9] *desputeison*, B. C. D.
[10] *aveient*, B.
[11] Robert of Brunne translates this, "thorgh descent of blode."
[12] *Baliol*, B. D. *Baliolf*, C.
[13] *est* omitted in C. *Renduz la tere d'Escoce est en*, D.

My lady the queen this year in Lindsey
Died, at Westminster her body is buried.
Before her died Margaret, the heiress of Albany.
Wherefore the king sent for his knights ;
He goes to Norham, a castle well furnished,
And there causes to be brought from abbey and priory
All the chronicles of our forefathers.
Examines the history, very clearly ascertains
That sir Edward has right to the sovereignty.
That did bishop Anthony by sense and great subtlety ;
Blessed may he be by God the son of Mary !

Anno Domini 1292.

Henceforth there is in Scotland great contention
Through those who lay claim to the kingdom.
The heir to the kingdom is dead ; the title ought by right
To revert to David earl of Huntingdon,
Brother of king William, who had no male issue of his blood.
He is dead, whereby the reversion
Is to the heirs of David without dispute,
Against all the others who lay claim to it.
David had three daughters, each had a husband,
And heirs noble and rich, of great house.
Balliol, Bruce, Hastings, those are the three by name
Who have title to the land by succession ;
And to sir Edward, without disagreement,
The land of Scotland is surrendered in ward.

King Edward is judge of the question.

Sir Edward est saisy du terre[1] e tenement
Du realme de Escoce, cum à seygnur[2] apent.
Les iij. ke[3] claym i mettent par resun de parent
Sunt venuz en courte demaunder[4] jugement.
Le rays ne volt fors drayt à son ascient ;[5]
Des Englays, des Escoce,[6] fet venir la gent,
Et saver volt de cyl ke melz la lay entent,[7]
Ki ad drait, ki noun, à cel[8] governement,
Par quel accioun e par quel descent.
Li tryours[9] ount fet examinement,

Decision in favour of John de Balliol.

Et moustrez[10] au ray par lur entendement,
Ke Jon Bayllof,[11] saunz desturbement,
Dait aver de drait le regne playnement,
A tenir e aver pardurabelment
Du ray de Engleterre, par homage e serement.
Ly rays de Engleterre,[12] sanz contrariement,[13]
Hors de [sa] saysine[14] le realme li rent ;
Le jour saynt[15] Estefne sun homage prent
A Nofchastel[16] sur Tyne ; escotez or coment.

Forma homagii Johannis Baliolensis.[17]

Form of homage of John Balliol.

Mon seygnur sir Eduuard, rais de Engleterre, e soverayn seygnur del realme de Escoce, je, Jon de Ballyolle, ray de Escoce, deveygne vostre homme lige

---

[1] *Sire Edward saisie de tere*, C. *Edward* is omitted in D.

[2] *al seygnur*, C.

[3] *Les terres qe*, B.

[4] *demaundent*, D.

[5] *escient*, B. C. D.

[6] *de Escoce*, C.

[7] *Par saver volt de cyle qe melz lay entent*, B. *Kar saver voet . . . . la lay entent*, D.

[8] *à tiel*, B. C.

[9] *Les triours*, C. D.

[10] *Unt moustrez*, B. C. D. has one line instead of this and the next :—
Et dient qe Jon de Balyol saunz destourbement.

[11] *Bailliol*, B. *Johan de Baliolf*, C.

[12] *Le rei sire Edward*, B. C.

[13] *contriement*, C. D. gives this in two lines :—
Du reis d'Engletere par homage et serment,
Luy rey sire Edward saunz contraryement.

[14] *de sa seisine*, B. C. D.

[15] *de seint*, B.

[16] *Newekastel*, C. *Novechastel*, D.

[17] *Homagium Johannis Baliol*, D.

Sir Edward is seised of the land and lordship
Of the realm of Scotland, as belongs to the superior lord.
The three who lay claim thereto by reason of kindred
Are come into court to demand judgment.
The king only desires right to the extent of his knowledge.
He sends for people of the English and of the Scots,
And desires to know of him who best understands the law,
Who has title, who not, to that government,
By what claim and by what descent.
The judges have made examination,
And shown to the king, by their understanding,
That John Baliol, without impediment,
Ought to have by right the kingdom fully;
To hold and have permanently
Of the king of England, by homage and oath.
The king of England, without hesitation,
Restored to him the realm out of seisine;
On the day of St. Stephen he takes his homage
At Newcastle-on-Tyne; hear now how.

The form of homage of John Baliol.

My lord sir Edward, king of England, and sovereign lord of the realm of Scotland, I, John de Baliol, king of Scotland, become your liege man of all the

de tut le realme d'Escoce of les apurtenaunces,[1] e quant ke apent,[2] lequel jo teng e dai tenir de drait e clayme[3] heritabelment de ws, e de vos heirs, ray[s] de Engleterre, de vye e membre,[4] e de terrien honur, encountre tote[5] genz ke pount[6] vivre e morir. Et le rays ly resceut en la fourme, salve sun drait e autry. Cest homage fu fet à Nofchastel[7] sur Tyne en Engleterre,[8] le jour sayn Estefne, l'an de grace myl cc. nonauntyme secounde,[9] et du regne le rays Eduuard xxi.[10]

Anno gratiæ[11] M°. CC°. *nonagesimo tertio.*

King Edward returns to London.

Quant le rais Eduuard Escoce ad justizé,[12]
Saint Cuthbert de Dureme,[13] saint Jon de Beuerlé,
A soun[14] revenir ad molt honuré.
S'en va devers le suth[15] à Loundres sa cyté.
Pus[16] ke sa femme à Deu est comaundé,
De trestuz ses fiz est nul demoré,
Fors soul sir Eduuard, ke Deus l'ad[17] reservé.
Jovenes est e tendre; molt serrait grant pité
Si si grant seignur ne ust ayr engendré,
Ke peust[18] après ses jours estre corouné.
Et si li rais Eduuard vers Acres [f]ust[19] alé,
Molt serrait en peryl le[20] regne e regalté.

---

[1] *of l'aportenance*, B.

[2] *l'apent*, B. *et ouf quanqe apent*, C. *e oue quant qe apent*, D.

[3] *et doi de dreit tenir de vus e cleim tenir heritablement de vous*, B. C. *joe tenk de dreit e clayme à tenir*, D.

[4] *et de membre*, B. D.

[5] *entre totes*, B. *contre touz gentz*, C. *encountre qe pount viver ou morir*, D.

[6] *qe purrount*, B.

[7] *à Nove Chaustel*, C. *Nove Chastel*, D.

[8] *en Angleterre* omitted in D.

[9] *nonaunt et dous*, B.

[10] *vint e vii.*, B. The numbers given in the text are correct.

[11] *Domini*, B. D.

[12] *visité*, B. C. D.

[13] *Durhem*, B.

[14] *Al son*, C.

[15] *va vers le sieu*, B. *vers la southe*, C.

[16] *Pense*, B. C. D.

[17] *Dieu ad*, B. D.

[18] *Qe puit*, B.

[19] *fust*, B. C. D.

[20] *le* omitted in B. C. D.

realm of Scotland with the appurtenances, and all that belongs to it, which I hold and ought to hold of title and claim heritably of you, and of your heirs, kings of England, with life and member, and with earthly honour, against all people who may live and die. And the king receives him in the form, saving his right and that of others. This homage was made at Newcastle-on-Tyne, in England, the day of St. Stephen, the year of grace One thousand two hundred and ninety-two, and of the reign of king Edward twenty-one.

Anno Domini 1293.

When king Edward has given judgment on Scotland
St. Cuthbert of Durham and St. John of Beverley
He has greatly honoured on his way back.
He proceeds southward to London his city.
He thinks that his wife is despatched to God,
Of all his sons none is left,
Except only sir Edward, whom God has reserved to him.
He is young and tender; very great pity would it be
If so great a lord had no heir engendered,
Who might be crowned after his days.
And if king Edward had gone towards Acres,
Greatly would the kingdom and royalty have been in peril.

War at sea between the English and Normans.

Englays e Normaunz en mer ount comencé
Chescun guere sur altre, e batayle ount doné;
Molt i ad de pople de ambepars twé,
Les Normaunz en mer ount perdu pousté;
Les cync porz ount lur bens; lur navye ont mené
A Gernemue,[1] à Dovre, e à Winchelsé,[2]
A Romenye, à Schorham, e à Pevenesé,[3]
A Sandwice, à Gipwice,[4] à Suthamtoun plenté.
Irays e Bayonays ount[5] grant partye wayné;
Les cync pors ount le mer par poer desrené.[6]
Parmy la terre de Fraunce la perte est publié;[7]
Devaunt le ray Phelippe la plainte est[8] presenté,
La cause est dit pur quay et la verité.

Edward proposes marriage to Blanche of France.

Li rays sir Eduuard ad grant volunté
Esposer gentil femme de haut parenté,
Dunt aver engendrure pur sun herité,
Pur reformer la pes, e norir amisté,
Et salver les ij. realmes,[9] ke n'y ad[10] medlé.
De Blaunche sa cosyne sir[11] Eduuard ad parlé,
Sore al ray de France, si[12] saint eglise l'ad gré[13]
Par congé la pape quant plain sera le sée.[14]
Sir Eduuard en France ad messagers[15] maundé,
Pur ver la[16] damoysele, enquere[17] de sa bounté,
Si ele sait avenaunte en face, en cors[18] tayllé.
Le messagers[19] i vount, e la ont[20] refiguré,

---

[1] *Germenie*, B. C. *Gernemeue*, D.
[2] *à Schorham, e Pevenesché*, C. which omits the next line.
[3] This line is omitted in D.
[4] *A Sandwiche, à Gipwiche*, B. *A Sandeswiche, à Gypeswiche*, C. *A Sandwiche, à Gipewike*, D.
[5] *Li reis e barons sunt*, B.
[6] *derayné*, D.
[7] *est ublyé*, C.
[8] *est* omitted in B. C. D.
[9] *dous reis*, B.
[10] *n'i ait*, B. C.
[11] *sir* omitted in B. C. D. *sa soer*, C.
[12] *et*, B.
[13] *l'ad grés*, B.
[14] *est la sée*, C.
[15] *messagers ad*, B.
[16] *Devers la*, B. *De vere*, C.
[17] *e quere*, B.
[18] *e corps* B. *avenant en cors ben taillé*, C. The line is omitted in D.
[19] *Les messagers*, C. omitting *i vount*. *Les messangers*, D.
[20] *et l'ount*, B. *le fount*, C.

English and Normans have commenced at sea,
Each war upon other, and have given battle.
Much people was killed there on both sides;
The Normans at sea have lost their power;
The cinque ports have their goods; they have carried their ships
To Yarmouth, to Dover, and to Winchelsea;
To Romney, to Shoreham, and to Pevensey;
To Sandwich, to Ipswich, and to Southampton, plenty.
Irish and people of Bayonne have gained great share.
The cinque ports have by power conquered the sea.
Through the land of France the loss is published;
The complaint is presented before king Philip.
The cause is stated wherefore and the truth,
The king sir Edward had great desire
To espouse a noble lady of high descent,
Of whom he might have issue for his heirs,
To restore the peace and nourish friendship,
And save the two kingdoms, that there should be no fighting.
Sir Edward has spoken of Blanche his cousin,
Sister of the king of France, if holy church allow it
By leave of the pope, when the see shall be filled.
Sir Edward has sent messengers into France
To view the damsel, inquire of her goodness,
If she be agreeable in face, well made in body.
The messengers go there and have brought back a picture of her,

En cors, en façoun, en jambe, en mayn, en pé.[1]
Al rays sount revenuz, e li ount nouncié,
Plus bele creature est nule part trové.
The match agreed to.
Sir Eduuard, allas! devynt enamouré,
Et à la damoysele par lettre ad moustré,
Et al ray Phelippe,[2] sun quer e sa pensé.

Anno gratiæ M°. CC°. *nonagesimo quarto.*

De cele mariage unt parlé[3] si sovent,
Ke la damoysele e Phelippe ensement
Volent l'alyaunce, e ws dirray coment.
Terms of the marriage.
Li rays Eduuard durra à Phelippe playnement
Sa terre de Gascoyne, saunz retenement.
Après xl. jours de cele feffement,
Phelippe redurra meme le tenement
A Eduuard e à Blaunche, e à lur descent
Issuz de lur ij. cors,[4] engendré ligement.
Et si dame Blaunche ne ait enfauntement,[5]
Et [ele] survive[6] Eduuard, la terre enterement
Li demora sa vye, e[7] après son finement
Revertira dont vint, saunz desturbement.
King Philip obtains possession of Bordeaux and Gascony.
L'escryt est jà fet, le seal Eduuard i pent;[8]
Antoyne ne fu pas à cel ordaynement.
Phelippe[9] ad saisi Burdeaus, of quant ke apent;
[Par lettre[10] sire Edward Gascoyne á li se rent,][11]
Pur veir en Deu ws dye, encontre lour talent.

---

[1] *En corps, e en fauçons, en mein, en jambe, e pé,* B. *en fauschoun, en main, jaumb, e pée,* C. *en mayn, en jaumbe, et pé,* D.

[2] *Phelippe* omitted in C.

[3] *pensé,* B.

[4] *de lour corps,* B. C.

[5] *E si engendrure par eaus ne se present,* B. C. D.

[6] *E ele survive,* B. E. *cel survif,* C. *Et ele survif,* D.

[7] *e* omitted in C. D.

[8] *L'escrit Edward ad fet, e son seal i pent,* B.

[9] *A Philipe,* B.

[10] *Par lettres,* D.

[11] This line omitted in A., is found in B. C. and D.

In body, in face, in leg, in hand, in foot.
They are returned to the king, and have announced to him that
A fairer creature is found nowhere.
Sir Edward, alas! fell in love with her,
And has shown by letter to the damsel,
And to king Philip, his heart and thought.

Anno Domini 1294.

They have talked of this match so often,
That the damsel and Philip likewise
Agree to the alliance, and I will tell you on what terms.
King Edward shall give to Philip fully
His land of Gascony, without reservation.
After forty days of this feoffment,
Philip shall give back the same lordship
To Edward and to Blanche, and to their heirs
Issued from their two bodies, begotten loyally.
And if the lady Blanche have no children,
And she survive Edward, the land entirely
Shall remain to her for her life, and after her end
It shall revert to whence it came, without gainsaying.
The writing is already made; Edward's seal hangs to it;
Anthony was not present at this treaty.
Philip has taken possession of Bordeaux, with all that belongs to it;
Through sir Edward's letter Gascony submits to him,
For truth I tell you in God, against their will.

Ke fet le ray Phelippe après cel dalyement?[1]
A Parys, sa cyté,[2] va tenir parlement,
Of son frere Charles, li quens d'Artoys se assent
A une grant fausine par compassement.
Des Pykars[3] e Normauns fount venir la gent,
Ke ont perdu lur nefs, lur merce, e lur argent,[4]
Par contek of les porz en mer, ou par torment;
Retains them by a false judgment of his court.
Appelent sir Eduuard del comaundement
De la robberye e de la recettement.[5]
Le appelent en court assez sollempnement
Devaunt les xij. peres; vent nul[6] ke ly defent.
Par controve fausine[7] unt doné jugement,
Et pryvé sir Eduuard pardurabelment
Des terres de Gascoyne, ke li et se parent[8]
Tenaynt del ray de Fraunce heritabelment.
Ore aidez, Auntoyne, e overez sagement;[9]
En ço cas[10] sanz tay ne gist amendement.
Home solait jadis counter en Romaunce,[11]
Ki perde par defaute, c'est sanz[12] apparaunce,
Terre ou tenement en la court de Fraunce,
Nul bref de drayt i court de la recoveraunce,
Fors un afforce[13] par espey et launce.
Proceedings of king Edward.
Ke fet li rays Eduuard quant seet la descayvance?
Fet maunder Auntoyne venir à sa parlaunce,
Ses countes, ses barons de sa ben voyllaunce,

---

[1] *delaiement*, B. *ceo daliement*, C. D.

[2] *Al Parys la cyté*, C.

[3] *De Pikartes*, C.

[4] *lour niefs e lour argent*, B. *lur neefs, lour mers, e lour argent*, C. *lour mers et argent*, D.

[5] *e du rettement*, B. *e de retenement*, C. *et du recettement*, D.

[6] *ne vint nul*, B. *pers, vint nul*, C.

[7] "Of that fals controveyng," Robert of Brunne.

[8] *en Gascoyne qe ly e son parent*, C. *en Gascoyne qe ly e si parent*, D.

[9] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[10] *En ceo cause*, C.

[11] Robert of Brunne has certainly given his own interpretation of this line,

"Men sais in the courte of France,
"among the doze peres."

[12] *e saunz*, B. *ceo est saunz*, C. *en la court de Fraunce*, D., omitting the next line.

[13] *à force*, C.

What does king Philip after that dealing?
At Paris, his city, he goes and holds parliament,
With his brother Charles, the count of Artois agrees
To a great act of treachery by design.
They send for the people of the Picards and Normans
Who have lost their ships, their wares, and their money,
By strife at sea with the ports, or by storm;
They accuse sir Edward of commanding
The robbery, and of the receiving.
They summon him into court very formally
Before the twelve peers; none comes who defends him.
By premeditated deceit they have given judgment,
And have deprived sir Edward for ever
Of the lands of Gascony, which he and his family
Held of the king of France by inheritance.
Now assist, Anthony, and work wisely;
In this case without thee there lies no remedy.

They used already to relate in French,
Who loses by default, which is by non-appearance,
Land or tenement in the court of France,
No writ of right runs there for the recovery,
Except by recourse to force with sword and spear.
What does king Edward when he becomes aware of the fraud?
He sends for Anthony to come to talk with him,
His earls and barons who have good will to him,

He consults his council.

Les prie de counsayl en la grant meschance.
Le eveske de Dureme, Auntoyne, avaunt se launce
E dist, " My sir rays, tu n'es pas enfaunce,[1]
" Tu ne dais pas fere chose sanz commun ordinance
" Ke pusse[2] à tun realme turner à grevaunce;[3]
" Fa tost[4] par counsayl, si ne averez repentaunce.
" Tu crays à cels ke plus doutent ta manaunce
" Ke perte de toun regne kant est en balaunce."[5]
" Sir Auntoyn," dist li rays, " jo face aquitaunce
" Pur tuz mes privez e à ma noun savaunce;[6]
" Aretter devez[7] ceste[8] contrariaunce."

Advice of the bishop of Durham.

" Pus ke tu l'as fet," dist le eveske Auntoyne,
" Nul fayllir ne dait à tai en ta bosoyne.[9]
" Si tu veus recoverer la terre de Gascoyne,
" Et garder ben de Phelippe[10] ke plus sur tay ne foyne,[11]
" Levez, si te movez, ne dormez pas cum moyne;[12]
" Endossez les haubers,[13] defolés la karoyne,
" Mountez le destreus,[14] et pernez launce en poyne.
" Fa quere tay[15] amys par aver de coyne,
" Le ray de Alemayne, le eveske de Coloyne,[16]
" Le ray des Arragouns de tay ke ne s'eloyne,[17]
" Le counte de Sauvay,[18] le counte de Burgoyne,
" E puys dailez à Phelippe, sanz autre assoyne."[19]

---

[1] *enfaunz*, C. " Sir kyng, thou " was a man, be not now hold a " childe," Robert of Brunne.

[2] *Qe peus*, C.

[3] *en grevaunce*, D.

[4] *Fai tut*, B. *Fas tost*, C.

[5] *en bayllaunce*, C.

[6] *e ma non sachaunce*, B.

[7] *i devez*, B.

[8] *ceo*, C.

[9] *Nul ne deit failler à tei en tiel bosoigne*, B. C. D.

[10] *E reboter Philip*, B. C. *Et rebuter P.*, D.

[11] *feyne*, B.

[12] *movez, pernez launce en poygne*, D.

[13] *hauberkes*, C.

[14] *destrers*, C.

[15] *Fai fere tei*, B. *Face quer tay*, C. *Fa quere tes amys*, D.

[16] *des Alemans, li sire de C.*, B. C. D.

[17] *de Arragon de tei q'il ne s'aloigne*, B. *de Aragouns, de tay qu'il ne s'eloyne*, C. D.

[18] *Salvay*, C.

[19] *daillez partut od Philip sanz a.*, B. D. *daillez par tout ouf Philippe saunz essoygne*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this line as follows, " Than is tyme to bikere with " the kyng of France."

Asks them for advice in the great mischance.
The bishop of Durham, Anthony, steps forward
And says, " My lord king, thou art not a child,
" Thou oughtest, without resolution in common, to do
" nothing
" Which may turn to injury to thy realm ;
" Act immediately by counsel, and you will not have
" repentance.
" Thou believest in those who fear more thy threat
" Than loss of thy kingdom when it is in danger"
" Sir Anthony," says the king, " I make acquittance
" For all my private advisers and to my want of know-
" ledge ;
" It is for you to find a remedy to this misfortune."

" Since thou hast done it," said bishop Anthony,
" No one ought to fail thee in thy need.
" If thou wilt recover thy land of Gascony,
" And take good care that Philip dissimulate with thee
" no longer,
" Arise, and bestir yourself, sleep not like a monk ;
" Put on the hauberks, trample down the carrion,
" Mount the steeds, and take spear in fist.
" Seek for thyself friends with power of money,
" The king of Allemaigne, the bishop of Cologne,
" The king of the Aragonese, that he keep not aloof
" from thee,
" The count of Savoy, the count of Burgundy,
" And then deal with Philip, without further difficulty."

Advice of the English barons.

Quant le eveske Auntoyne sun consail ad moustré,
Dient les barouns, " Sir rays, escotez;
"Tuz les granz seygnurs ke cy sunt[1] nomez
" Par le ray de Fraunce sunt desheritez,
" Les uns de bones[2] viles e de grant cytez,
" Les altres de grant terres ke countrevalent countez.
" Al ray des Alemauns messagers maundez,
" Et al ray[3] des Arraguns par lettres escryvez,
" Et à tuz ly altres ke sunt avaunt nomez;[4]
" A vivre e [à] morir[5] ensemble ws lyez.
" Si tu veus ben fere, argent ne esparnyez.
" Taunt ad le ray de Fraunce poer e poustez,
" Ke tu n'as autre vaye dont recoverir te[s] fez."[6]

King Edward sends an embassy to Germany:

Le ray e sun counsayl à ço sunt acordez;
Par commune consail Auntoyne est alez,
Et li erceveske de Dyvelyn sacrez,
Huge le Despenser, baroun renomez,
Et Jon de Craucombe,[7] clerk ben avysez.
Auntoyne en Alemayne tant ad[8] procurez,
Ke les Alemanz as Englays sunt jorez;
Le ray en prime chef l'ad ben asseurez,
Erceveske, eveske, e tuz li barnez.
Les Englays ausint se sunt obligez
Ayder as Alemaunz en adversitez.
Escriz de ambeparz de çoe sunt enselez.
Antoyne est hors de terre, le rays ad enveyez[9]

and messengers to France.

Messagers en France tels cum ws orrez:
William de Gaynesburge,[10] un frere Cordiller,
Et un Jacobyn, ke been seet[11] sun mester,

---

[1] *ke cy ne sunt*, D.
[2] *des bones*, D.
[3] *Al rey*, C. D., omitting *Et*.
[4] *avant parlez*, B. C. D.
[5] *A morir e à vivere*, B. D. *Al morir*, C.
[6] *tes feez*, B. C. D.
[7] *Crawecombe*, B. *Crawecumbe*, C. *Cracoumbe*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this, " Of Krawe-" combe sir Jon, a clerke gode and " wys."
[8] *ad taunt*, B. C. D.
[9] *l'ad envaiez*, C.
[10] *de Gayneburge*, C.
[11] *fet*, C.

When bishop Anthony had declared his advice,
Say the barons, " Sir king, listen;
" All the great lords who are here named
" Are robbed of their inheritance by the king of France,
" Some of good towns and of great cities,
" Others of extensive territories which are equivalent
" to counties.
" Send messengers to the king of the Alemains,
" And write by letter to the king of the Arragonese,
" And to all the others who are before named;
" Bind yourselves to live and to die together.
" If thou wilt succeed, spare no money.
" So great force and power has the king of France,
" That thou hast no other way of recovering thy
" fees."
The king and his council are agreed to this;
By the general advice Anthony is gone,
And the archbishop consecrated of Dublin,
Hugh le Despenser, a baron of renown,
And John de Craucombe, a very skilful clerk.
Anthony has so far prevailed in Germany,
That the Germans have sworn fidelity to the English;
The king in the first place has well assured it,
Archbishop, bishop, and all the barons.
The English similarly bind themselves
To aid the Germans in adversity.
Writings to this effect on both sides are sealed.
Anthony is out of the land; the king has sent
Messengers into France, such as you will hear:
William of Gainesborough, a Franciscan friar,
And a Jacobin, who knew well his business,

The latter are imprisoned at Calais.

Huge de Mauncestre,[1] sunt passez la mer.
Ly quens d'Artoys les prist, e[2] les fist demorer
A Kalays en prisun la[3] semayn enter;
Puys venent à Parys Phelippe[4] saluer,
Lettre de creaunce ly fount presenter,
Pus dyent lur message, ly prient escoter.

Their message to king Philip.

Li Jacobyn parla, et dist al ray coment
A prince et à prelat[5] obeir covent,[6]
Et pur seygnur lige fere comaundement,
A petiz e [à] granz[7] fay porter lealment.
" Pur quay nus sumes cy venuz par maundement[8]
" Nostre rays sir[9] Eduuard, ke Deu de mal defend!
" Il te signyfye par nus apertement,
" Ke il ad fet homage[10] à tay certainement
" Pur tute Aquitayne, à tenir fraunchement,
" Soloum la pees tayllé à l'acordement
" Entre vos[11] deus auncestres par commune assent,
" Quant lur grand contek fu sopye fynalment.
" Tu ne l'as pas tenuz, mès rumpu malement.
" Et à sun drayn aler en Gascoyne à sa gent,
" Feust un covenaunt fet assez sollempnement
" A tenir entre vus pardurabelment;
" Tu ne l'as pas tenuz un an enterement.
" Sur ço te certefye du drayn dalyement
" [Entre[12] vus e li fu fet privément,][13]
" Pur quay[14] de Aquytayne te fist un feffement,
" Pur li refeffer de mesme le tenement.

---

[1] *Mamecestre*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates here, " Frere " Hugh of Malmcestre was a " Jacobyn."

[2] *e* omitted in B. C. D.

[3] *une*, B. *un*, C.

[4] *vount Philippe*, C. D.

[5] *Al prince e al prelat*, C.

[6] *i covent*, B.

[7] *à granz*, B. *Al petitz e al grantz*, C. *et à grantz*, D.

[8] *comandement*, B.

[9] *sir* omitted in B. C. D.

[10] *Qe homage ad fet*, B. D. *Qe hommage à tei ad fet*, C.

[11] *en vos*, C.

[12] *Qe entre*, C. D.

[13] This line is omitted in A., but found in B. C. D.

[14] *Par quay*, C.

And Hugh of Manchester, have passed the sea.
The count of Artois took them, and caused them to remain
At Calais in prison the whole week;
Then they come to Paris to salute Philip,
Cause to be presented to him their letter of credit,
Then say their message, and pray him to listen to them.

The Jacobin spoke, and said to the king how
It is proper to obey prince and prelate,
And for a liege to execute commands for his lord,
To hold faith loyally to little and to great.
"Wherefore we are come here by command
"Of our king sir Edward, whom God defend from evil!
"He signifies to thee by us openly,
"That he has strictly performed homage to thee
"For all Aquitaine, to hold freely,
"According to the peace arranged at the agreement
"Between your two ancestors by common assent,
"When their great strife was finally appeased.
"Thou hast not held it, but broken it maliciously.
"And at his last repair to his people in Gascony,
"A covenant was made very solemnly
"To be held between you for ever.
"Thou hast not held it quite a year.
"Upon that I remind thee of the last dealing,
"Between you and him it was made privately,
"Whereby he made thee a feoffment of Aquitain,
"To refeoff him of the same tenement.

" Quant ta[1] saysine estayt conu playnement,
" Par les xij. peres te maunda gentement[2]
They reproach Philip with his faithlessness.
" Restorer li sa terre sanz retenement,
" Cum covenant le volt, dount testmoyne ne ment.[3]
" Tu resceuz sa terre[4] par tel abbatement;
" A tenir li covenant tu n'as pas talent;
" E, sire, tu solays assez curtaysement
" Escrivre en tun bref à ly cum à tun parent,[5]
" A tun leal et feal et duk[6] nomément
" De la duché[7] de Aquitayne of le honur[8] ke apent.
" Pus cel houre en ça ren est[9] touché ent.
" Par quai avys ly est ke tu certaynement[10]
" Le teens[11] pas tun homme, ne il estre l'entent,[12]
" Ne des ore à tay serra obedient;[13]
" Mès quant avera sa terre[14] recovré proprement,
" Tenir la clamera de Deu omnipotent.
Message of prince Edmund, Edward's brother.
" Pur nostre rays sir Eduuard, ke Deu li benye![15]
" Avoms nent plus à dire ke n'as paroye;[16]
" Mès sire Edmoun sun frere par nus te signifye,
" Sun frere est sun seygnur, par quai nul hom en vye
" Taunt ayme, ne tant doute, ne en ky tant s'affye.
" Sire, trop ben seet Edmoun[17] par quele controversye

---

[1] *Qe ta*, B. *Quant ta fausin*, C. "Thi seisyn is wele knowen," Robert of Brunne.

[2] *gentyllement*, D.

[3] "As lawe wild and right, and "covenant was in scrite," Robert of Brunne.

[4] *Tu retiens la tere*, B. C. D.

[5] *en tes brefs à li cum à parent*, B. C. D.

[6] *A ton feal e leal e duc*, B. C. D.

[7] *Du duché*, C. D.

[8] *ouf honur*, C.

[9] *n'est rien*, B. *reen tochez ent*, C. *en cya est rien*, D.

[10] *surement*, B.

[11] *Ne teens*, C.

[12] *ne il estre le tent*, C.

[13] *Ne des ore ne serra à toi obedient*, B. *des or ne serra à tay*, C. *Ne des ore serra à tey*, D.

[14] *sa tere avera*, B. C. D.

[15] *Par nostre rei Edward, qe Dampnedeu beneie*, B. C. D.

[16] *ke en as paroye*, D.

[17] *Sire Edmon trop bien set*, B. C.

" When thy seizure was known fully,
" Through the twelve peers he summoned thee in
" courteous manner
" To restore him his land without reservation,
" As the covenant willed it, of which there is truthful
" witness,
" Thou retainest his land by such abatement;
" To hold the covenant thou hast no will;
" And, sir, thou art accustomed very courteously
" To write in thy letter to him as to thy kinsman,
" To thy loyal and faithful and duke by name
" Of the duchy of Aquitaine with the honour which
" appertains.
" Since that time to this it is discontinued.
" For which it is his opinion that thou certainly
" Holdest him not thy man, nor does he mean to be so,
" Nor will he henceforward be to thee obedient;
" But when he shall have recovered his land to him-
" self
" He will claim to hold it of God Almighty.

" For our king sir Edward, may God bless him!
" We have no more to say which thou hast not
" heard;
" But sir Edmund his brother by us signifies to thee,
" His brother is his lord, wherefore there is no man
" alive
" He loves so much, or fears so much, nor in whom
" he puts so much trust.
" Sire, Edmund knows full well through what disagree-
" ment

" Son frere e sun seygnur par tay est dissaysye ;[1]
" Te rende[2] sun homage, wayne ta seygnurye,
" E bye sun heritage recoverir par aye.
" Pur quay[3] sir Edmoun de tut à ly se lye,
" Des ore ne put ne volt[4] tenir ta compaynye ;
" Mès totes les granz terres ke tynt[5] en ta ballye
" Te rend sus of le homage dont il se desplye,
" Salve al verray ayr [e] à[6] la remenauncye
" Le drait ke cyl en ount par auncesserye.
" Nus sumes povre freres, ren avoums[7] fors de autrie,
" Et messanger ne dait[8] rescayvre vilainye ;
" Condut parmy ta terre et avouerye
" Grauntez nus, pur Deu e pur ta curtaysye."[9]

Reply of king Philip.

Phelippe ray de Fraunce respouns les fet doner
Par un de sun counsayl, averty chuvaler ;
Lur dist ke les covenaunz fez de zà en arer[10]
Sunt tenuz en tuz poynz, sanz ren violer,
Par le ray de Fraunce, et par ly xij. per ;
Et par li rays Englays et ly[11] mariner
Rumpu sunt covenaunz par terre et par mer.
Paroles ke sunt dites de terres[12] resigner,
Des[13] homages rendre, de seygnur refuser,
Le ray Phelippe rescait en mesme la maner
Cum els sunt nunciez[14] par ly messager ;
Et parmy sa terre condut les fet aver.

Return of the messengers.

Les messagers s'en vount à Dovre aryver,
E sunt revenuz al ray[15] à Westmouster.

---

[1] *defailye*, C
[2] *T'ad rendu*, B. C. D.
[3] *Par quei*, B. C.
[4] *ne veut ne peut*, C.
[5] *q'il teent*, C. *q'il tynt*, D.
[6] *heirs e à la*, B. *al verrais heyres à la*, C. *as verreys heyrs e la*, D.
[7] *povers freres, riens n'avoms*, B. *riens avoms*, C.
[8] *E mesangers ne deivent*, C.
[9] This line and the preceding are transposed in B., by which, however, the sense is not affected.
[10] *de ça ne arer*, C.
[11] *e par li*, B. C.
[12] *de tere*, C.
[13] *Ses*, B.
[14] *nomez*, C.
[15] *à reis*, C.

" His brother and his lord is by thee dispossessed ;
" He returns thee his homage, relinquishes thy seignory,
" And intends to recover his heritage with aid.
" Wherefore sir Edmund entirely binds himself to him,
" Henceforth he neither can nor will hold thy com-
" pany ;
" But all the great lands which he held in thy lord-
" ship
" He renders up to thee with the homage which he
" refuses,
" Saved to the true heirs and their descendants
" The right which they have in it by ancestry.
" We are poor brothers, we possess nothing but that
" of others,
" And messengers ought not to receive ill-treatment ;
" Conduct through thy land and recognition
" Grant us for God and for thy courtesy."

Philip king of France causes a reply to be given to them
By one of his council, a wise knight ;
He tells them that the covenants made from that time back
Are kept in all points, without breaking anything,
By the king of France, and by the twelve peers ;
And by the English king and the mariners
Are broken the covenants by land and by sea.
Words which are spoken of resigning lands,
Of giving back homages, of refusing lord,
King Philip receives them in the same manner
As they are announced by the messengers ;
And he causes them to have conduct through his land.
The messengers depart to arrive at Dover,
And have returned to the king at Westminster.

Edward calls his parliament.

Respouns le ray[1] de Fraunce kant sir Edward savayt,
Ses clercs et ses barons à Londres assemblayt,
E lors[2] de rechef il mesme les moustrait
Coment Aquitayne fu perdu par descayt,
Ke saunz aide des genz[3] recoverir ne poayt.
De tuz les bens as clers la maité[4] demandait,
E de la demaunde departir ne volayt;
De cytesayn et burgés,[5] le syme dener aurait;[6]

The taxes granted to him.

Li barné pur le pople le disyme le grauntait,[7]
Issi ke de cel an tut paez serrayt;[8]
Molt est ore Engleterre plus povre ke n'estayt.[9]
Non pur ço chescun à Deu prier dait
Ke nostre rays Eduuard face bon esplayt,
E pusse par nos aydes recoverir sun drayt.[10]

Consequences apprehended from a French conquest.

Si il fust utraé, cum ne voyl Deus k'il sayt,[11]
Le eglise de Engleterre si mal mené serrayt,
Ke clerk[12] ne lays homme dount vivre troverayt.
Ly novel conquerour ke sur nus vendrait[13]
Ly counte et ly baroun de honur priverait;
Erceveske, eveske, estat chaungerait;
Ly abbé, ly priour terre perderait;
Parsone et vicare sa rente voiderait,
Et li fraunkelayn vilayn demorrait.[14]
Cytayn ne burgé[15] nul part irrayt
Fere sa marchaundise, cum avaunt solayt.

---

[1] *du roy*, C.

[2] *hors*, D.

[3] *de gentz*, C.

[4] *la moité*, B. *à clers la mayté*, C. *Des touz les biens as clers mayté*, D.

[5] *De citain e de burgeis*, B. C.

[6] *avereit*, B. D.

[7] *li otrieit*, B. *le dime le octrait*, C.

[8] *Issint qe deinz cel an home la paiereit*, B. *Issi qe dedeinz cel an homme la paereit*, C. D.

[9] *Mult est Engletere qe n'esteit*, B. *Mult est Engletere*, C.

[10] This line is omitted in D.

[11] *cum Dieu ne veut qe seit*, B. C. *cum Dieu ne voet q'il sait*, B.

[12] *Ne clerk*, D.

[13] This and the seven following lines are omitted in D.

[14] *devendreit*, B.

[15] *e burgeis*, B. C.

When sir Edward learnt the reply of the king of France,
He assembled his clergy and barons at London,
And then again he himself explained to them
How Aquitaine was lost by treachery,
Which without aid of the people he could not recover.
Of all the goods of the clergy he demanded the moiety,
And would not depart from the demand;
Of citizen and burger he would have the sixth penny;
The barons granted him the tenth for the people,
So that it should be all paid in that year;
England is now much poorer than it was.
Nevertheless ought every one to pray to God
That our king Edward be quite successful,
And that he may by our aids recover his right.
If he were overcome, as may God not will him to be,
The church of England would be reduced to such an ill condition,
That neither clerk nor layman would find wherewith to live.
The new conqueror who would come upon us
Would deprive of honour the earls and barons;
Archbishop and bishop would change his condition,
Abbot and prior would lose his lands;
Parson and vicar would be deprived of his rent,
And the freeman would remain a villain.
Citizen nor burger would go anywhere
To make his market, as he did before.

Li Frauncays orgullous à [si] bas[1] nus menerait,
Et nent plus ke mastyns[2] honurer nus frayt.
Argent put hom quere, argent vent[3] et vayt;
Donk vaut melz doner le tant cum home l'ayt,
Ke vivre cum chaitif en payne si estrayt.
Quant par clers et lays les aydes sunt grauntez,
Le eveske de Dureme al rays est repayrez,
Et[4] en Alemayne ad fet ses voluntez;
[L'esvesqe de Divelyn à Dieu est comaundez;][5]
Huge le Despenser est sayn et haitez.
Ambassadors sent to Rome.
Le erceden[6] de Richemund est la mer passez,
Mestre Jon de Craucombe[7] li est associez;
Il sunt alez à Rome, par le rays chargez
Dire à l'apostoyle les playnes veritez.
Li ray à Portesmue[8] avaunt fust alez,
Sur le ray de Fraunce sa guere ad comencez.[9]
Knights sent into Gascony.
De sa chuvalrye en Gascoyn ad maundez:
Sir Jon[10] de Brettayne est ly primer nomez;
Sire Jon de Seyn Jon, ke conust les countrez;
Robert de Typetoft,[11] et sun fiz aynez;
Sire Laurence de Sauvay,[12] et autres genz assez;
En le ylle de Ollyroun[13] sunt tuz aryvez.
Le counte de Nycole fu laundrait aprestez;
Par maundement le rays le counte est returnez;
La resun pur quai ws diray, escotés.[14]

---

[1] *si bas*, B. C. D.
[2] *qe mastyn*, D.
[3] *vint*, C.
[4] *Et* omitted in B.
[5] This line is omitted, evidently by accident, in A.; but it is found in B. C. D.
[6] *L'ercedeken*, B.
[7] *Crawecomb*, B.
[8] *vers Portesmue*, B. *vers Portesmewe*, C. *vers Portesmowe*, D.
[9] *ad ordeinez*, B. *ordenez*, C. *ordinez*, D.
[10] *Sire Johan*, B. C. *Sire Jon*, D.
[11] *Tiptoft*, D.
[12] *Sauveie*, B. D. *Salvevay*, C.
[13] *A Burgh sur la mare*, B. *A Burge super mare*, C. D. In place of the following lines, Robert of Brunne translates:—
"Thei aryved alle o weye at
"Burgh sur la Mare,
"Thiderward as als he went, sir
"Henry the Lacie,
"The kyng oft for him sent, I
"salle telle you whi."
[14] *l'escotez*, B.

The proud Frenchman would bring us so low,
And cause us to be honoured no more than dogs.
One may seek money, money comes and goes;
Then it is better worth to give it as long as one has it,
Than to live like a caitiff in suffering so extreme.

When the aids are granted by clergy and laity,
The bishop of Durham is returned to the king,
And has effected in Germany the object of his mission.
The bishop of Dublin is despatched to God;
Hugh le Despenser is safe and sound.
The archdeacon of Richmond has passed the sea,
And master John de Craucombe is associated with him;
They are gone to Rome charged by the king
To tell the pope the full truth.
The king was before this gone to Portsmouth,
Has begun his war against the king of France.
He has sent part of his chivalry into Gascony.
Sir John of Britany is the first named;
Sir John de St. John, who knew the countries;
Robert de Tiptoft, and his eldest son;
Sir Laurence de Savoy, and other people enough;
In the isle of Oleron are they all arrived.
The earl of Lincoln was already there;
By command of the king the earl is returned;
I will tell you the reason why, listen.

Insurrection in Wales.

En la Walesserye[1] un rybald est[2] mountez,
Ke quidayt ke ly rays fust outre mer alez;[3]
Snaudon[4] ad saisy cum ses herytez,
Se fet apeler prynce par noun des parentez.[5]
Mort ad les Englays kant ke sunt trovez,
Les chastels le rays à terre cravauntez.
Le ray ne put suffrir ses iniquitez;
La guere de Gascoyne ad jà[6] delayez,
Et desuth Snaudon[7] en Gales est entrez.
En Abyrconeway,[8] chastel affermez,
Tint-il[9] ses Noelez of muz de ses barnez.

Edward's error in regard to Wales.

Jekes après la Paske de Noel avaunt
Dura la guere en Gales,[10] al ray trop grevaunt.
Escotez [ore] coment[11] pyté ly fist perdaunt.
Sun pople al primour estait assez[12] pussaunt
Aver conquis la terre, saunz arester passaunt;
Et si li rays à cel houre[13] eust fet sun avenaunt,
Et as tuz[14] doné lur wayne à remenaunt,
Terre et tenement à tenir par garaunt
De li e de ses hayrs le servise fesaunt,
Gales fust gayné tost[15] par tel covenaunt,
Et Gascoyne recovré sur cyl ke[16] est tenaunt.
Mès taunt ad targé[17] la pees en covaitaunt,[18]
Ke la[19] chuvalrye, ke ala conqueraunt
Sun drayt en Aquytayne, est pris mayntenaunt.

---

[1] *Walecherie*, B. D.

[2] *est* omitted in B. The translation of this line by Robert of Brunne is as follows, "In Wales is a schre-" ward to werre rises on."

[3] *passez*, B. C. D.

[4] *Snawedoun*, D.

[5] *de parentez*, C. D.

[6] *ad là*, C.

[7] *Snawedoun*, D.

[8] *Abbrettounwaye*, C. *Abreconeway*, D.

[9] *il* omitted in B. C. D.

[10] *de Gales*, C. D.

[11] *Escotez ore coment*, B. *Escotez ore coment delay ly fist perdaunt*, C. D.

[12] *assez estoit*, B. C. D.

[13] *le rei cel houre*, B. *ly reis cel houre*, C. D.

[14] *à touz*, D.

[15] *tut*, B. *tost par cel*, D.

[16] *q'en*, B. D.

[17] *Mès ore ad tant targé*, C. D.

[18] *la pes coveitant*, B.

[19] *Qe à la c.*, C.

In the Welshery a ribald is arisen,
Who believed that the king was gone beyond sea ;
He has seized Snowdon as his heritage,
Caused himself to be entitled prince by name of kindred.
He has put to death the English, as many as are found,
Has broken down to the ground the king's castles.
The king cannot suffer his iniquities ;
He has already delayed the war in Gascony,
And has entered under Snowdon into Wales.
In Aberconway, a castle well strengthened,
He held his Christmas with many of his barons.

From Christmas forward till after Easter
Lasted the war in Wales, very troublesome to the king.
Listen now how pity made it losing :
His people at first was sufficiently powerful
To have conquered the land, without halting in the way ;
And if the king at that time had made his terms,
And had given to all their gain for ever,
Land and tenement to be held by warrant
Of him and of his heirs by doing service,
Wales would have been won soon by such covenant,
And Gascony recovered from him who is holding it.
But he has delayed so long in his desire for peace,
That his knights, who were going to conquer
His right in Aquitaine, are now captured.

Capture of Edward's knights in Aquitaine.

Sir Charles à Ryouns les prist en combataunt,[1]
En fyrges les menayt à Parys tot[2] chauntaunt.
Saint Severe est renduz, ou est en rendaunt;[3]
Burdeus est bayllé as Frauncays[4] et Normaunt:
Pur veirs ly Pykard nus[5] va desore mokaunt,
Gascoyne[6] retenir quide ben[7] par taunt.
Nos Englays quidaynt aide de Arragoun,
Et du rays Eduuard par sun frere Edmoun,
Du counte de Nicole of sa[8] garnisoun;
Mès tuz lur fayllirent[9] de promissioun.
Kar taunt cum sunt de là en tribulacioun,
Comence la guere en Gales saunz resun;

Defeat of the Welsh.

Et tost après la Paske li rays et li baroun
Enchacent les Walays, et saysent Snaudon.
Pus vount à Angleseye,[10] estendent pavylloun.
Le ray kant là vent[11] fet cryer enviroun
Sa pees à tuz ke volent[12] venir à pardoun.[13]
Le counte de Gloucestre, ne say la chesoun,[14]
A perdu en Suth Wales more et[15] mansioun;

Morgan and Madoc.

Morgan li surquert, li fet[16] destruccioun.
Mès al rays Eduuard volt[17] Morgan si ben noun;
Par ly et sun consail, Madok[18] en tapisoun,
Ke prince se noma à sa confusioun,
Est pris et menez à Loundres en prisoun.
Sachez par sa folye et sa mesprisioun
Ad le ray perdu la possessioun

---

[1] *le prist combant*, B. *les trova cumbataunt*, C. *les prist combataunt*, D.
[2] *tot* omitted in B. C. D.
[3] *reddant*, B.
[4] *Burdels est baillé à Franceys*, C.
[5] *nus* omitted in B.
[6] *Car Gascoine*, B. C.
[7] *ben quide*, C. This line is omitted in D.
[8] *od la*, B.
[9] *lour faillent*, C.
[10] *en Angleseie*, B. D. *en Engleterre*, C.
[11] *vint*, B. C. D.
[12] *voleient*, B.
[13] *al pardoun*, C. D.
[14] *l'enchesoun*, B. *le achesoun*, C.
[15] *Ad perdu Southgales, mees e*, B. *en Sutwales moose e mansioun*, C. *en Souzwales meos et*, D.
[16] *e fet*, B.
[17] *veut*, C. *voyl*, D.
[18] *Maddoc*, D.

Sir Charles took them in battle at Rioms,
And carried them to Paris in fetters, all singing.
Saint Severe is surrendered, or is in the act of surrendering;
Bordeaux is given up to the French and Normans:
In truth the Picard goes henceforth making mockery of us,
And expects to retain Gascony in consequence.

Our English expected aid from Aragon,
And from king Edward by his brother Edmond,
From the earl of Lincoln with his garrison;
But all failed them of their promise.
For while they are beyond sea in tribulation,
Begins the war in Wales without reason;
And immediately after Easter the king and the barons
Drive out the Welsh, and seize Snowdon.
Then they go to Anglesea, spread pavilions.
The king, when he comes there, causes to be proclaimed everywhere
His peace to all who will come to pardon.
The earl of Gloucester, I know not the reason,
Has lost in South Wales moor and dwelling.
Morgan attacks him, and does him destruction.
But to king Edward Morgan means nothing but well;
By him and his counsel, Madoc in hiding place,
Who called himself prince to his confusion,
Is taken and carried to London into prison.
Know through his folly and his misbehaviour
The king has lost his possession

Injury caused by the Welsh insurrection.

De tote Aquytayne, fors soulement Bayoun.[1]
Kar si il eust alé[2] par aide de Gascoun
Aquitayne defendre de Phelippe et Carloum,
Kant il alayt en Gales sur Madok li felun,[3]
Tulouse et Tolousan par grant affeccioun
Fussent tuz[4] venuz à sa subjeccioun,
Sun estre eust sauvé Saint Severe et Ryoun,[5]
Burdeus li fust renduz saunz occisioun,
Et[6] tote Aquitayne eust eu en baundoun.
[Guales seit maudit de Dieu et de seint[7] Simoun !
Qar touz jours ad esté plein de tresoun.][8]

Defection of John Baliol and commencement of the war in Scotland.

Escoce sait maudite de la mere Dé,[9]
Et parfound ad deable[10] Gales enfoundré ![11]
En l'un ne[12] l'autre fu unkes verité.
Kar si tost en Gales guere est comencé,
Et de Aquitayne le[13] covenaunt tayllé
Fu par le ray de Fraunce rumpu et refusé,
Et sir[14] Eduuard et Phelippe comencent[15] medlé,
Li fol ray de Escoce, Jon Bayllolf[16] nomé,
Ke par le ray Eduuard al regne est approché,[17]
Par le counsail de sun fol[18] barné,
Encountre sun homage ne[19] encountre sa fealté,
A la court de Rome ad messagers maundé,
A Celestyn la pape ke à l'houre[20] tynt le sé,

---

[1] *Baroun*, B.

[2] *Car s'il fust alée*, B. D. *Kar soul fust alé*, C.

[3] *le feloun*, C.

[4] *tost*, B. C. D.

[5] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[6] *Et* omitted in D.

[7] *et seint*, D.

[8] These two lines are not found in A., but B., C., and D. have them.

[9] *del meere Dée*, C.

[10] *al deable*, C. This and the following line are omitted in D.

[11] *Guales soit e.*, B.

[12] *n'en*, B. *ne en ly altre*, C.

[13] *le* omitted in C.

[14] *sir*, omitted in B. and D. *Et sir*, omitted in C.

[15] *comenscait*, C.

[16] *Baliole*, D.

[17] This line is omitted in D.

[18] *Par l'enticement de son faus*, B. C. D.

[19] *ne* omitted in B. C. D.

[20] *cel houre*, B. D. omits the rest of this line and the first three words of the next.

Of all Aquitaine, except only Bayonne.
For if he had gone with aid of the Gascons
To defend Aquitaine against Philip and Charles,
When he went into Wales against Madoc the felon,
Toulouse and the Toulousain through great affection
Would all have come to his subjection.
His presence would have saved Saint Severe and Riom ;
Bordeaux would have been surrendered to him without slaughter,
And all Aquitaine would have been in his power.
May Wales be accursed of God and of St. Simon !
For it has always been full of treason.

May Scotland be cursed by the mother of God,
And may Wales be sunk deep to the devil !
In neither was there ever truth.
For as soon as war is commenced in Wales,
And the covenant which had been made for Aquitaine
Was broken and rejected by the king of France,
And sir Edward and Philip begin combat,
The mad king of Scotland, John Baliol by name,
Who had been promoted to the kingdom by king Edward,
With the advice of his mad barons,
Contrary to his homage and contrary to his fealty,
Has sent messengers to the court of Rome,
To Celestine the pope, who at that time held the see,

Par suggecioun ount[1] fausement moustre
Ke le regne d'Escoce, of la digneté,
Dayt de ly tenyr par antiquité;
Et le rays Eduuard par poer et poesté
Li fist fere homage encountre volunté;
Et prye ke il sait assous et desvolupé
De la fay le ray, à ky il fu joré.
Conduct of the pope. La pape Celestyen [fu] trop[2] desavysé,
Assout le ray d'Escoce par lettre enbullé.
Si tost cum en Escoce la chose est noncié,
Les barnez[3] ount fet, à lur hounteté,
Duze pers en Escoce,[4] et sunt counsayllé
Desheriter Eduuard de la[5] soverainté.
Pur le grant honur ke Eduuard le sené
Fist à Jon Bayllof,[6] tel est la bounté
Dount li rays[7] Eduuard
Du ray Jon musard
Est rewerdoné.
De Escoce sait cum pot;
Parfurnyr nus estot
La geste avaunt parlé.
End of the Welsh war. Quant Morgan est renduz, et Madok[8] est pris,
Le ray revynt à Loundres par consayl des amys.
Deus chardinals de Rome la pape i ad[9] transmys,
Ke of le ray de Fraunce parlaint à Parys;
De l'amur entre eus la pape est entremys.
Les chardinals al rays[10] ount dit lur avys;
Sir Eduuard[11] et Phelippe ount durement requys
Reposer une pece chescun en sun pays,
Issi ke bone gent de poer et de prys,[12]

---

[1] *suggestioun ad*, B. C.
[2] *fu trop*, B.
[3] *Les barons*, B. C. D.
[4] *d'Escoce*, B. C. D.
[5] *sire Edward à la*, C.
[6] *Baliol*, D.
[7] *rays* omitted in B.
[8] *Maddoc*, C.
[9] *la pape ad*, C.
[10] *le rcis*, C.
[11] *E Edward*, B. C. D.
[12] This line is omitted in B.

They have by prompting falsely explained
That the kingdom of Scotland, with the dignity,
Ought to hold of him by ancient right ;
And that king Edward by force and power
Made him do homage against his will;
And prays that he may be absolved and dissolved
From fidelity to the king, to whom he was sworn.
Pope Celestine w asvery ill-advised,
He absolves the king of Scotland by writ with bull attached.
As soon as the thing is made public in Scotland,
The barons have made, to their shame,
Twelve peers in Scotland, and they have taken counsel
To disinherit Edward of the sovereignty.
For the great honour which Edward the wise
Did to John Baliol, such is the goodness
With which king Edward
By king John the fool
Is rewarded.
Of Scotland be it as it may
We must continue
The history before told.

When Morgan has surrendered, and Madoc is taken,
The king returned to London by the advice of his friends.
Two cardinals from Rome the pope has sent thither,
Who conferred with the king of France at Paris ;
The pope has interfered to restore love between them.
The cardinals have said their opinion to the king ;
They have earnestly required sir Edward and Philip
To remain quiet a while each in his country,
Until good people of power and worth,

Ke à nule part se facent enemys,
Ou la pape mesmes sait par là justiz
A parfere l'acorde de kant[1] ke sayt mespris.

Attack upon Dover by the Normans and Picards.

Taunt[2] cum les chardinals de la pes parlaynt,
Les gens de Normendye suth[3] Dover aryvaynt,
En la compaynye les Kalays estaynt;[4]
En la vile de Dovre sodaynement entraynt,
Et partye du burge arder comencaynt,
Des jovenes et des velz xiij. homes i tuaynt.[5]
Quant vindrent à l'acounte, x. pur[6] un lessaynt.
Li gardayn del chastel et cel ke là[7] manaynt,
Et moynes de la celle, ke ben se guyaint,
Se pristrent à defens et les escryaint.
Normaunz et Pikard ke forfet avaynt
Furent desgagez, les chapels demorraynt
Of les chefs des uns, les autres s'en alaynt.[8]
Un moyne de la celle, à ky vynt enclinaynt,[9]
Et cyl les assolt, mot plus ne sonaynt.

Progress of the negotiations with France.

Les chardinals après à Parys repairaynt,
Ne sai quels respouns[10] du ray enportaynt,[11]
Nun pur ço plusurs entre els disaynt
Ke totes les parlaunces al darayn descendaynt[12]
Ke Eduuard et Phelippe lur genz suthrayeraynt,[13]
Issi ke gens par terre et mer[14] irraynt
Et[15] suffraunce de pees, ke amys purraynt

---

[1] *et qauntz ke sunt*, D.

[2] *Kant*, C.

[3] *sur*, B. *suz*, C. D.

[4] "And men of Caleis camen "with tham I wene," Robert of Brunne.

[5] *De jovens e de veltz xiij. homme tuaynt*, C. *i tueynt*, D.

[6] *Quant à la court vindrent xx. pur*, C.

[7] *là* omitted in B. *e cels qe là*, D.

[8] *les altres demoraint*, C.

[9] *Un moigne i fu pur veir, à qi vint enclinecent*, B. C. D. It may be remarked that Pierre de Langtoft's account of the monk seems to have been entirely misunderstood by Robert of Brunne

[10] *Ne sey le quele respouns*, D.

[11] *reporteient*, B.

[12] *descendraint*, C.

[13] *sustreraynt*, C. D.

[14] *par mer e par tere*, B. D. *par meer ou par tere*, C.

[15] *En*, B. C. D.

Who should act with enmity to neither side,
Or the pope himself should be over there judge
To complete the accord of whatever may be done wrong.

While the cardinals were conferring on the peace,
The people of Normandy made an attack upon Dover,
The people of Calais were in the company;
They entered suddenly into the town of Dover,
And began to burn part of the burgh,
Of young and old they slew there thirteen men.
When they came to the reckoning, they left ten for one.
The keepers of the castle, and those who dwelt there,
And monks of the cell, who behaved themselves well,
Took to their defence, and raised the cry upon them.
Normans and Picards who had forfeited
Were let out of pledge, their hats remained
With the heads of some of them, the others went away.
A monk of the cell, to whom twenty bowed,
And he assoils them, they uttered not a word more.
The cardinals afterwards repaired to Paris,
I know not what answer they carried from the king,
Nevertheless many among them said
That all the conferences in the end came to this,
That Edward and Philip should withdraw their men,
So that people might go by land and sea
In peaceful armistice, that friends might

Parfournyr l'acorde; les Englays le volaynt,[1]
Si les Alemaunz à ço se assentiraynt.

Treason of Thomas de Turbeville.

Taunt[2] cum les chardinals se sunt entremys
De refourmer[3] la pees et fere les rays amys,
Thomas de Tourbevyle, ke à Ryouns fu prys,
En taunt ad parlé of le provost[4] de Parys,
Ke fet l'ad sun homage, et hostage[5] mys
Ses deus fiz en garde, et seurement promys
Aler en Engleterre espyer[6] le pays;
Et dire al rays Eduuard ke il vynt futifs,
Eschapé[7] de prisoun parmy ses enemys.
Le provost l'ad graunté, et fet ent[8] ses escryz,
Cent liverez de terre par autel[9] devys;
Et Thomas l'affiaunce sur les Evangeliz,
Ke tut Engleterre et Walays et Marchiz,
Et du regne de Escoce kant ke[10] sunt de prys,
Serrount enclynaunt à Phelippe fis Lawis.

Turbeville's proceedings.

Escotez ore coment la grace Jhesu Krist
Ly gentiz ray Edward de la tresun garnyst.
Thomas en Engleterre vint al ray, et dist
Ke hors de la prisoune nuytauntre[11] issist,
[E pur l'amour Edward à tiel peril se prist.][12]
Curtaisye assez li rays ly countrefist,
Et Turbevyle après de jour en jour enquyst
L'estat de la terre, et sun aler purvyst
De leu en leu enquere de graunt et de petyt,[13]
Coment as Englays pout fere tel despyt
Ke li rays Eduuard sa terre perdesist.[14]

---

[1] *la volaint*, C.
[2] *Kaunt*, C.
[3] *parfournir*, C. *reforner*, D.
[4] *à provost*, B. C. *al provost*, D.
[5] *hostages*, C. D.
[6] *à espier*, B.
[7] *Eschapa*, A.
[8] *eust*, D.
[9] *Cent livere de tere par an tel*, C. "And granted him with scrite tuo "hundreth pounde of lond," Robert of Brunne.
[10] *qauntz qe*, D.
[11] *nuctauntre*, D.
[12] This line, omitted in A., is given from B., C., and D.
[13] *e petit*, B.
[14] *perdist*. C. *perdissist*, D.

Complete the accord, the English willed it,
If the Germans would give their assent to it.

During the time that the cardinals are interfering
To restore the peace and make the kings friends,
Thomas de Turbeville, who was taken at Riom,
Has so long conferred with the provost of Paris,[1]
That he has performed his homage to him, and placed as hostages
His two sons in ward, and faithfully promised
To go into England to spy the country;
And to say to king Edward that he came as a fugitive,
Escaped from prison among his enemies.
The provost has agreed to it, and made his writings of it,
A hundred pounds of land for this plot;
And Thomas pledges his faith to him on the Gospels,
That all England and Wales and the Marches,
And all of the kingdom of Scotland who are of worth,
Shall be subject to Philip the son of Louis.

Listen now how the grace of Jesus Christ
Warned the noble king Edward of the treason.
Thomas came into England to the king, and said
That he had escaped out of prison by night,
And had encountered this peril for the love of Edward.
The king showed him in return courtesy enough;
And Turbeville afterwards from day to day inquired
The state of the land, and provided his journey
From place to place to inquire of great and small,
How he could do such mischief to the English,
That king Edward should lose his land.

Les estat[1] de tote parz[2] tele cum entendist
Of les chardinals par un de sons transmyst[3]
Al provost de Parys, ke joye assez en fist.
Turbeville's designs discovered.
Li clerk ke la lettre à[4] Tourbevylle escryt
Al plus privé le rays l'entente descoverist.
Li lers le[5] aparceust, à fuste[6] tost se myst;
Un sergaunt as armes, ke plus près[7] suyst,
Le terce jour après le traytour[8] soupryst.
His capture and punishment.
Li traitour est pris, à Loundres remené,
Of molt grant fausine ke sur ly fu trové.
Choses ke sunt dites quels il ad graunté,
Par volunté le rays sunt mys de[9] suth pé
Jekes à ço[10] sekle sait autrement chaungé.
Turbevyle en court cum traitour est jugé;
[Parmi la vile[11] de Loundres primes fu trainé,][12]
Et pus[13] pendu cum lers pur sa malvayté.
Pur nostre rays Eduuard molt ad Deus overé,[14]
Ore et altre fez, à sa salveté.
Cardinals sent to re-establish peace.
Quant de Tourbevyle est fet[15] le vengeaunce,
Les chardinals de Rome repairent[16] en Fraunce,
Ount of le ray Phelippe sovent eu parlaunce,
Et sovent requys ly ray des Alemaunce,[17]
Et par clers et lays ount fet demoustraunce
Al gentil rays Eduuard, ke dure est [la] destaunce[18]
Dount ly et Phelippe sunt en descordaunce.
Par ount il unt fet[19] un tel ordinaunce
Ke ly et les ij. rays[20] enverrount sanz targaunce

---

[1] *L'estat*, B. C. D.
[2] *de tot part*, C. *de tote part*, D.
[3] *tramist*, C.
[4] *de*, B.
[5] *le* omitted in B. *Ly leers tost l'aparceust*, C.
[6] *à fute*, D.
[7] *prest*, C.
[8] *le Turbevile*, B. C. D.
[9] *de* omitted in B. C.
[10] *qe ceo*, B. C.
[11] *la cité*, D.
[12] This line is wanting in A, but found in B. C. D.
[13] *pus* omitted in C.
[14] This and the following line are omitted in D., the scribe of which probably thought them superfluous.
[15] *fet est*, B.
[16] *repairez*, B. C. D.
[17] *de l'Almaunz*, C.
[18] *est la d.*, B. *la distaunce*, C.
[19] *Parount ount-il fete*, C.
[20] *Qe li e li autre*, B. C. D.

The condition of all parts, as he learnt it,
He sent by one of his men with the cardinals
To the provost of Paris, who made joy enough of it.
The clerk who wrote the letter for Turbeville
Revealed the purport of it to the king's most confidential attendant.
The thief got a hint of it, and immediately took to flight;
A serjeant at arms, who followed him nearest,
Surprised the traitor the third day after.

The traitor is taken, carried back to London,
With very great treason which is found upon him.
Things which are aforesaid which he had stipulated,
By the king's will are placed under foot
Until the world be otherwise changed.
Turbevile is condemned in court as a traitor;
He is first drawn through the town of London,
And then hanged as a thief for his malpractices.
For our king Edward much has God worked,
Now and at other times, for his preservation.

When the punishment is done upon Turbevile,
The cardinals from Rome return into France,
They have often had conference with king Philip,
And often required the king of the Germans,
And by clerks and laymen have made demonstration
To the gentle king Edward, that hard is the dispute
About which he and Philip are in discord.
In consequence of which they have made such order
That he and the two kings shall send without delay

The negotiations at Cambray.

A Kaumbray clers et lays de graunt conoysaunce,
A treter de la pes,[1] et juger la grevaunce,
Et fere[2] les amendes de la contrariaunce.
Le rays Eduuard se assent en bon affiaunce;
A Kaumbray ad maundé, saunz nul delayaunce,
Eveskes et barouns de graunt apparaunce;
Les garde de tresoun Deu par sa pussaunce!

English troops sent into Gascony.

Taunt cum cels seygnurs sunt alez cel messages,
Le counte de Nicole, of tote ses menages,[3]
Sir Edmoun frere le rays, de gentil corage,[4]
Sir William de Vescy, chuvaler prus et sage,
Barouns e vavasours de gentil lynage,[5]
Chuvalers et serjauns of lur cosinage,
Gens à pé[6] sanz noumbre de more et boscage,[7]
Et Galays[8] ke sevent combatre par usage,
Sunt alez en Gascoyne, [et] entrez[9] en passage,
Of xxvj. baneresce del melliour[10] escuage!
Ke fust en Engleterre, salve le vasselage
De cels ke or ne fayllent à lur seygnurage;
Kar cels ke sunt remys garder lur heritage
Ad le ray requis, et pris en sun vayage
Sur le ray d'Escoce et sun fol barnage,[11]
Ke al rays Eduuard dedyent lur homage.

Edward in person proceeds to Newcastle.

Le primer jour de Marce, en tot le grant orrage,[12]
Vynt li rays Eduuard à trop grant coustage
A Nofchastel[13] sur Tyne, par[14] le grant outrage

---

[1] *treter la pes*, C.

[2] *A fere*, B. C.

[3] *soun menage*, B. C. D. "Of "Lyncoln the erle another, sir "Henry the Lacy," Robert of Brunne.

[4] This line and the preceding are transposed in B. C. D., and in Robert of Brunne.

[5] The last three words of this line, and the first three of the line following, are omitted in D.

[6] *al pée*, C.

[7] *e de boscage*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

[8] *Gualeis*, B. *Galays*, C. *Galeys*, D.

[9] *e entrez*, B. C. D.

[10] *Ouf xx. et vj. baners de meillur*, C. *baners de meliour*, D.

[11] *e son fals b.*, C. D.

[12] *horage*, D.

[13] *Newechaustel*, C.

[14] *pur*, B. C.

To Cambray clerks and laymen of great knowledge,
To treat of peace, and give judgment upon the cause
of dispute,
And make amends for the injury.
King Edward assents to it in good faith;
He has sent to Cambray, without any delay,
Bishops and barons of great account.
May God by his power preserve them from treason!

While these lords are gone on this message,
The earl of Lincoln, with all his household,
Sir Edmund, the king's brother, of noble spirit,
Sir William de Vesci, a prudent and wise knight,
Barons and vavasors of noble descent,
Knights and serjeants with their kindred,
People on foot without number from moor and bush,
And Welshmen who know how to fight by use,
Are gone into Gascony, and entered on the sea,
With twenty-six banerets of the best scutage
Which was in England, except the vassalage
Of those who now fail not to their duty to their lord;
For those who are left to guard their inheritance
The king has called up, and taken in his expedition
Against the king of Scotland and his mad barons,
Who have withdrawn their homage from king Edward.
The first day of March, in all the great storm,
Came king Edward with very great purveyance
To Newcastle-on-Tyne, for the great wrong

Ke les fols[1] mastyns ount bracé par folage.
Nostre rays[2] sir Eduuard ayt la male rage,
S'il ne les preygne et teygne si estrait en kage,
Ke ren lur demorge[3] après sun tayllage,[4]
For soul le[s] rivelinges et la[5] nue nage.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo VJ°.[6]

Robert de Ros[7] de Werk des Englays s'en fuyst,
Et[8] of les gens de Escoce à la guere se myst.[9]
Ly rays sir Eduuard sun chastel saysist,
Sa feste de la Paske[10] i tynt, après s'en partist[11]
Edward besieges Berwick. Devers Berwyk[12] sur Twede, et la vile assist.
Le pople maluré al primour surprist
Deus navez[13] des Englays, et tuer les fist.
Li rays Eduuard l'oyt dire, les portes assaylist,
Les fossez passaint[14] les Englais saunz respit.
Le vendredi de Paske al relevé[15] conquyst
Berwick taken. La vile de Berwyk, li Englays i occyst[16]
Quatre mil de Escoce, et aukes plus perdist.
Chuvaler un saunz plus sir Eduuard i perdist,
Richard de Cornewaile, un Flemang li ferist
Hors du sale[17] rouge du quarel ke il tendist;

---

[1] *les fels*, B. C. *les fals*, D.
[2] *rays* omitted in B. This and the three following lines are omitted in D.
[3] *demore*, B.
[4] *après son daliage*, C.
[5] *à la*, C.
[6] This rubric is inserted from B. C. and D.
[7] *de Reos*, B.
[8] *Et* omitted in B. *Et les gentz*, D.
[9] *od le rei se mist*, B.
[10] *de Pasqe*, B. D.
[11] *s'en departist*, C.
[12] *Vers Berwike*, C.
[13] *nefz*, B.
[14] *passeit*, B. *passait ly Englais*, C. D.
[15] *revele*, C.
[16] *les Engleis occist*, B. *ly Englais occist*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this passage:—
" In Pask weke it was, the Friday thei it wan,
" In the non tyme felle this cas, that slayn was ilk a man
" That were in Berwik, fourti thousand and mo,
" Was non of tham left quik, bot alle to dede 3ede tho."
[17] *de la sale*, B. C. D.

Which the mad dogs have worked in their folly.
May our king sir Edward be struck with madness,
If he does not take them and hold them so close in cage
That nothing remain to them after his taxing,
Except only their rivelings (shoes) and their bare buttocks.

Anno Domini 1296.

Robert de Ros of Wark fled from the English,
And entered into the war with the people of Scotland.
The king sir Edward seized his castle;
His feast of Easter he held there, afterwards he departed thence
Towards Berwick-on-Tweed, and besieged the town.
The ill-fated people at the beginning surprised
Two ships of the English, and caused them to be slain.
King Edward heard tell of it, attacked the gates;
The English passed the fosses without halting.
On the Friday of Easter in the afternoon he conquered
The town of Berwick; the Englishman there slew
Four thousand Scots, and some more perished.
Sir Edward lost there one knight and no more,
Richard de Cornwall, a Fleming struck him
With a bolt which he shot out of the Red Hall.

Tost fu la sale prise, le fu en fist tut quit.
Le gardayn du chastel, quant la force vist,
Le chastel saunz assaut à li ray rendist.[1]
William de Duglas dedenz estayt elyt,
Et Richard Freser,[2] pur fere al ray despit;
Le ray les ad prisouns, mercy Jhesu Cryst!

Scottish nobles who submit to the English king.

Li quens de la Marche, Patrik le[3] renomé,
A la pes le rays se rendist de gré.
Gilbert de Umfrainvile[4] avaunt fu demoré
Al rays[5] Eduuard, à ky il fu joré.
Sir Robert de Brus, of tote sa mené,
Vers le rays Eduuard tynt tuzjours sa fealté,
Encountre les Escoz amour l'ad[6] moustré.
Kant Berwik fu prise, dedenz estayt trové
Or [et] argent assez, des autres metals plenté,[7]
Et tote la noblye ke appendayt al cyté.
Ly Balliolf ad perdu le issu et le entré
De la plus noble vile ke fust en sa poesté.
Li rays Eduuard la teent conquis par espé,[8]
[Le fet environer de fosse large e lee.][9]
En reprovaunt le Escot, ke ad de ly chaunté,
Et par mokerye en Englays rymeyé:

Rhymes in scorn of the Scots.

Pykit him,
An diket hym,
On scoren sayd he;[10]
He dikes, he pikes,[11]

---

[1] *al reis Edward rendist*, C.

[2] *E Simon Fresele*, B. C. *Simound Fresele*, D. "Symon Fre-
"selle ther was," Robert of Brunne.

[3] *le* omitted in B. D.

[4] *Umfrevile*, B. *Umfrayvile*, C. *Umfravylle*, D.

[5] *Od le rei*, B. *Ouf le reis*, C. *oue le reys*, D.

[6] *amour ly ad*, C. *amours ly ad*, D.

[7] *Or e argent saunz numbre, d'autre metals plenté*, B. C. *Or, argent saunz noumbre, des altres metals plenté*, D. *assez*, A., corrected in the margin to *plenté*. "Golde
"and silver thei fonde, and other
"metalle plenté," Robert of Brunne.

[8] *par l'espée*, C. D.

[9] This line is omitted in A., but it is supplied from the other MSS.

[10] *In scorn seiden*, B. C. D. *In hoker seiden he*, E.

[11] *he pikes, he dikes*, B. C. D. *Nu pikes he it, and dikes he it, his owen for to be*, E. "He pikes and
"dikes," Robert of Brunne.

The hall was immediately taken; fire cleared it all
away.
The warder of the castle, when he saw the necessity,
Surrendered the castle to the king without assault.
William de Douglas was appointed within it,
And Richard Fraser, to set the king at defiance;
The king has them prisoners, thank Jesus Christ!

The earl of March, Patrick the renowned,
Of his own will surrenders himself to the king's peace.
Gilbert de Umfravile had before remained
With king Edward, to whom he had taken his oath.
Sir Robert de Brus, with all his followers,
Held always his faith towards king Edward,
Has shown him love in his wars against the Scots.
When Berwick was taken, within it were found
Gold and silver enough, of the other metals plenty,
And all the nobility which belonged to the city.
The Baliol has lost the issue and the entry
Of the noblest town that was in his power.
King Edward holds it conquered by the sword,
Causes it to be surrounded with a wide and broad
foss,
In reproval of the Scot, who had sung of him,
And in mockery made rhymes upon him in English:—

Let him pike,
And let him dike,
In scorn said they;
He dikes and he picks,

On lenche[1] als hym likes,
Hu best may be.
[And thou has for thi pikyng
Mykille ille likyng,
The sothe is to see,
Without any lesyng,
Alle is thi hething
Fallen opon the.][2]
Skaterd be the Scottes,[3]
Hoderd in thar hottes,
Never thay ne the.
Ryth if[4] I rede,
Thai tumbed[5] in Twede,
Thet[6] woned by the se.

Tant cum sir Eduuard of countes et barouns
Fist Berwyk enclore de fossez[7] envirouns,
Issuz sunt de Escoce iij. countes par nouns,
De Mare, de Rosse, de Menethet,[8] of xl. mil felouns.
Estaynt en la route alaunz[9] en tapisouns.[10]
The Scots invade Tindale, and burn Hexham and Lanercost.
Tindal ount destrut en cendres et carbouns,[11]
La vile de Corbrige, et ij. religiouns,
De Hexhilesham et[12] Lanercost, ennentiz par arsouns;
Del pople du pays unt fet occisiouns,

[1] *On leghe*, D.

[2] These lines are found only in Robert of Brunne.

[3] *Scatered are the Scottis*, B. *er the*, C. *er ȝe*, D. *Skiterende Scottes*, E. "For scatred er thi "Scottis, and hodred," Robert of Brunne.

[4] *ȝif*, B. *Rikt yif*, D. "Right "als I rede," Robert of Brunne.

[5] *thai toumbe*, C. *thay tumbeld*, D. *tumbled*, E. *tombled*, Robert of Brunne.

[6] *That*, C. D.

[7] *ouf fossés*, C.

[8] *De Ros, Ascetel, de Menetest*, B. *De Ros, Assetle, de Menetz*, C. *De Ros, Ascetle, de Menetez*, D. "Rosse and Meneteste, Assetelle, "thise erles thre," Robert of Brunne.

[9] *alant*, C. *alaunt*, D

[10] *en papisouns*, D.

[11] *En passaunt unt destrut en cendres, en carbons*, B. C., which latter reads *e charbouns*. *En passaunt ount destructe en cendres et carbouns*, D.

[12] *De Exilham, de*, B. *De Exilsham e Lavertoft*, C. *De Exillesham, de Lavertost*, D. "Leyner- "tofte and Hexham," Robert of Brunne, according to the edition of Thomas Hearne.

In length as it pleases him,
How best may be.
And thou hast for thy picking
Much ill liking,
The truth is to be seen,
Without any untruth,
All is thy mocking
Fallen upon thee.
Scattered are the Scots,
Huddled in their huts,
Never do they thrive.
Right if I read,
They are tumbled into Tweed,
Who dwelt by the sea.

While sir Edward with earls and barons
Was causing Berwick to be inclosed with fosses around,
Are issued from Scotland three earls whose names are
Marr, Ross, Menteith, with forty thousand felons.
They were on their way going in concealment.
They have destroyed Tindale to cinders and coals,
The town of Corbridge, and two monasteries,
Of Hexham and Lanercost, they have annihilated by burning;
They have made slaughters of the people of the country,

Emporté les bens,[1] enchacé les chanouns.
Après la ravye,[2] cum fols et bricouns,
They take the castle of Dunbar.
Sunt alez à[3] Dumbar à lur confusiouns;
Le chastel unt pris, estendent[4] pavyllouns.
Al counte de la Marche estaynt les mesouns.
[Le rei Edward l'oit dire, feit fere[5] somons][6]
Dumbar pur rescure, et prendre les larouns,
Ke de saint eglyse ount fet destruccioun.[7]
The cardinal returns to England.
Poy avaunt cel houre, parmy les regiouns
Revynt le chardynal de Kaumbray of respouns;
Et del ray de Fraunce, cum après orroums,[8]
Sir Emery de Sauvay,[9] quens de graunt renouns,
Vynt en la compaynye, et Otes[10] de Grauntsouns.
Cil vynt hors de Cypre de ses compaynouns,
Ke quant Acres fu prise, la mer as avyrouns
En passaunt eschapaynt sanz altres achesouns.[11]
Avaunt ws ay counté quels mals et quels tresuns
Sunt fet à saynt eglise à tort et saunz resouns;
Et oy avez sovent en les saynt sermouns,[12]
Ke Deus est draitureus en tuz ses werdouns;[13]
Or oyez de Dumbar, ù saunz evasiouns
Les enemys Deu sunt pris en faude cum motouns.
King Edward sends relief to Dunbar.
En le mays de May le mardy primer,
A Berwyk sur Twede oyst le rai parler,
Coment les fols felouns ke fesaynt arder

---

[1] Robert of Brunne seems to have read this *beus*, cattle, for he translates:—

"Thei chaced the chanons out,
"ther godes bare away,
"And robbed alle about, the
"bestis tok to pray."

[2] *la ravine*, B. *la ravyn*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[3] *Pus aloynt à*, D. A MS. at Cambridge reads *de Dunbar*.

[4] *estendi*, C.

[5] *fet feere les somouns*, C. D.

[6] This line is omitted in A., but is restored from B. C. D.

[7] This line is omitted in D.

[8] *France, après en orroms*, B.

[9] *Sire Amy de Sauveie*, B. C., which reads the name *Sauvaye*. *Sire Amy de Salvey*, D. "Sir "Amys of Saveye," Robert of Brunne.

[10] *Sire Otes*, B. *Othes*, C.

[11] *altre chesons*, B.

[12] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[13] This line is omitted in B.

Carried off the goods, driven away the canons.
After the plunder, like fools and rogues,
They are gone to Dunbar to their mishap ;
They have taken the castle, and spread out their pavillions.
The houses belonged to the earl of March.
King Edward heard tell of it ; caused his summons to be made
To rescue Dunbar, and take the robbers,
Who have made destructions of holy church.
A little before that time, through the kingdoms
The cardinal returns from Cambray with answer ;
And from the king of France, as you will hear afterwards,
Sir Amery de Savoy, an earl of great renown,
Came in his company, and Otho de Grauntsoun.
The latter came out of Cyprus with his companions,
Who, when Acre was taken, the neighbouring sea
Escaped in crossing without other accidents.
I have before told you what evils and what treasons
Are done to holy church wrongfully and without reason ;
And you have often heard in the holy sermons,
That God is just in all his dispensations ;
Now hear of Dunbar, where without fail
God's enemies are taken in a fold like sheep.

In the month of May, the first Tuesday,
At Berwick-upon-Tweed the king heard say
How the mad felons who burnt

Hexlesham[1] et Lanercost, n'esparnaynt mouster,
Prys avaynt Dumbar, chastel sur la mer,[2]
Où ly quens[3] Patrik tynt sa mulier.
Ly rays sir Eduuard par taunt i fist[4] maunder
Le counte de Garenne, of tut sun poer,
Le counte de Warwyk, et Huge le[5] Despenser;
Barouns et vavassours, chuvaler, esquyer,
Surays et Norays, i alaynt[6] de bon quer,
Assez de genz à pé et menent[7] al mester,
Et venent à Dumbar[8] le chastel asseger,
Se attyrent à l'assaut, ne volent esparnyer.[9]
The trickery of Sir Richard Siward.
Les fols feluns dedeynz espayrent aide aver,
Ses sotillent[10] coment les Englays engyner.
Sir Richard Syward,[11] ke solayt demorer
Of nostre rays Eduuard à robe et à dener,
Maunde[n]t[12] par descayte à nos[13] Englays treter.
Cyl les vynt[14] et dist ke molt trevolunter
Les fra le chastel rendre, si il volent[15] graunter
Trays jours de respit, k'il pussent counsayler
Le ray de Bayllof,[16] et lur [estat] maunder;[17]
Et si cel houre ne veygne le sege remuer,
Le chastel rederount[18] saunz plus par là targer.
Hostage par taunt i mette, et fet nouncier
Al hoste de Escoce[19] en mesme la maner
Cum vus orrez après le fet recorder.

---

[1] *Exilham*, B. *Exilsham e Lavertoft*, C. *Exillesham e Lavercost*, D.
[2] *sur meer*, C.
[3] *Ouf le quens*, C.
[4] *il fist*, B.
[5] *Warwik, sire Hughe le*, C.
[6] *il alaint*, C. This line is omitted in D.
[7] *gentz al pée il menent*, C. *il menent*, D.
[8] *al Dunbar*, D.
[9] *reposer*, B. C. D.
[10] *Se sotile*, B. *Se sotillent*, C. D.
[11] *Suard*, B.
[12] *Maundent*, B. C. D.
[13] *od nos*, B. *ouf nos*, C. *oue nos*, D.
[14] *Si les vint*, B. *S'il*, D.
[15] *si voillent*, B. *si volent*, C.
[16] *Baliol*, B.
[17] *e lour estat m.*, B. C. D.
[18] *rendrunt*, B. C. D.
[19] *de l'Escoce*, C. *des Escotz*, D.

Hexham and Lanercost, nor spared any monastery,
They had taken Dunbar, a castle on the sea,
Where earl Patrick kept his wife.
The king sir Edward forthwith caused to be sent thither
The earl of Warenne, with all his power,
The earl of Warwick, and Hugh le Despenser;
Barons and vavasors, knights, esquires,
Southerns and Northerns went there with good will,
They lead to the need plenty of foot-men;
And come to Dunbar to besiege the castle,
Prepare for the assault, will not spare.
The foolish wretches within hope to have aid,
They study how to deceive the English.
Sir Richard Siward, who used to live
With our king Edward at robe and pay,
They send in deceit to treat with our English.
He came to them and said that very willingly
He will cause the castle to be surrendered, if they will grant
Three days respite, that they may consult
With the king Baliol, and inform him of their condition;
And if at that time he come not to raise the siege
They will give up the castle without further delay on their side.
Thereupon he gives hostages, and sends an announcement
To the army of Scotland in the same manner
As you will hear the fact recorded afterwards.

Informa-tion given to Bailiol by sir Richard's messen-ger.

Li messager s'en va, et tost aprochayt
Al ray Jon Bayllof, là où il estayt;[1]
Lur dist cum ly Syward[2] enfourmez l'avayt,
" Sir rays, vos barouns demorent en dur esplayt,[3]
" En le chastel[4] de Dumbar, en chauns les chascait;[5]
" Kar quant li rays Eduuard lur estre là savayt,
" Partye de sun host ilokes maunder fesait.
" Ly Englais, quant [là] vint,[6] le chastel assegait;
" Sir Richard Syward, ke tuz les conussait,
" Issist du chastel, et taunt cum il porrayt[7]
" Pur trewe de iij. jours, li Englays li grauntayt.[8]
" Par quai[9] la compaynye ke ilokes par ws alayt,
" A ws, cum à seygnur,[10] aler me comaundayt,
" Et dire verraiment ke home ne seet[11] ne vayt
" Dunt ws les pourrez vaindre, si noun par descait.[12]
" Dedenz trewe le terme[13] ke le Englais nus[14] grauntait,
" A demayn cel houre[15] k'em mangeust et bait,
" Alez de cest part hastivement laundrait,[16]
" Les voz du chastel ws vendrunt[17] par agayt,
" Istrount sur les Englays ke lur venir ne crayt;[18]
" Happez les entre vus,[19] tenez les si estrayt
" Ke mès en chaump ne venent pur fere les voz sur-
" fayt.[20]

---

[1] *A rei Johan e à l'ost qe od li estoit*, B. *Al rey Johan, et à l'hoste qe ouf ly estait*, C. D.

[2] *Li dit cum sire Siward*, B.

[3] *en dur plait*, B. D.

[4] *En chastel*, D.

[5] *où chance lour chaceit*, B. *en chaunce*, C. D.

[6] *quant là vint*, B. C. D.

[7] *e tant bel parleit*, B. C. D.

[8] *Qe treu pur treis jours l'Engleis l'otrieit*, B. C. *Qe trewe pur iij. jours luy Englays ly ottrayt*, D.

[9] *Pur quay*, C.

[10] *com seignur*, C.

[11] *qe home set*, B.

[12] This line is omitted in B.

[13] *Dedenz le terme de treu*, B. C. D.

[14] *vus*, D.

[15] *Demein à tel houre*, B. *tel houre qe home m.*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, " To moru in the none " tide, whan thei ere at the mete."

[16] *hastez vus laundrait*, D.

[17] *vus verront*, B. D.

[18] *l'Engleis qe lour ne creit*, B. *ly Englays qe lour venir ne crayt*, D.

[19] " lap tham bituex zow," Robert of Brunne.

[20] *venent fere à vus surfeit*, B. *ne venent fere à les vos surfait*, D.

The messenger departs, and soon approached
The king John Baliol, and the army who were with him.
He told them as the Siward had instructed him,
" Sir king, your barons remain in hard case
" In the castle of Dunbar, where chance drove them ;
" For when king Edward knew of their being there,
" He caused part of his army to be sent thither.
" The English, when he came, laid siege to the castle ;
" Sir Richard Siward, who knew them all,
" Issued from the castle, and pleaded so well
" For a truce of three days that the English granted
" it.
" Wherefore the company who went thither on your
" account
" Commanded me to go to you as to their sovereign,
" And to say truly that one neither knows nor sees
" How you can vanquish them, except by deceit.
" Within the term of truce which the Englishman
" granted us,
" To-morrow at the hour when people eat and drink,
" Go in that direction hastily thither,
" Your people of the castle will see you by their
" watch,
" Will make a sally upon the English who expect not
" their coming ;
" Snap them between you, hold them so tight
" That they come no more in field to do you damage.

Their exultation.

" Vous ne avez altre vaye ke valer ws dayt ;[1]
" Ore armez-vus, si aloums, nul alme se[2] retrayt.
" De nos[3] enemys,
" Kant serount pris,
" Mercy nul en ait.[4]
" Ferez du braund
" Northumberlaund,
" Le vostre ert[5] de drait.
" Tut Engleterre
" Par ceste guere
" Voyliez ke perdu sayt ;
" Unkes Albanye
" Par coup d'espeye
" Fist si bon esplayt.
" On grene[6]
" That kynered kene
" Gadered als gayt ;[7]
" I wene[8]
" On summe it es[9] sene
" Whar the byt bayt."[10]

SirRichard Siward seeks to deceive the English.

Alayt li messager al route[11] de raskayle,
Arenger se comence al fore[12] de bataylle ;
Sir Richard Sywar[d], ke dona le[13] counsaylle,
Veent à nos Englays, et dist,[14] " Si Deu me vaylle,[15]
" Jo vai genz venir[16] de molt graunt apparaylle,
" Cum bataylle vousisent, saunz nombre de pytaylle,
" Jo voys, si ws loez, fere i[17] destourbaylle,

---

[1] This line is omitted in D.
[2] *ne se*, B.
[3] *Des vos*, D.
[4] *nul n'eit*, B.
[5] *est*, B.
[6] *On the grene*, B. *On grene*, D. " Ther on that grene," Robert of Brunne.
[7] *als the gait*, B. and Robert of Brunne.
[8] " Right, as I wene," Robert of Brunne.
[9] *is it*, B. " was it sene," Robert of Brunne.
[10] " Ther the bit bayte," Robert of Brunne.
[11] *Au dit la messager la route*, B. *Al dit le messagere la route*, D.
[12] *à foer*, B. *al foer*, D.
[13] *cele c.*, B. *cel c.*, D.
[14] *les dist*, D.
[15] *m'availe*, B.
[16] *Jeo vei venir gent*, B.
[17] *un*, B.

" You have no other way likely to avail you ;
" Now arm yourselves, and let us go, let no soul hold
" back.
" Of our enemies,
" When they shall be taken,
" Let no one have mercy.
" Strike with the sword
" Northumberland,
" It will be yours by right.
" All England
" By this war
" Resolve that it shall be ruined ;
" Never Albany
" By sword's blow
" Did so great exploit.
" On green
" That sharp race
" Are gathered like goats ;
" I am of opinion
" On some it is seen
" Where the bit punishes."

The messenger went to the army of low people,
It began to arrange itself in order of battle.
Sir Richard Siward, who gave the advice,
Comes to our English, and says, " If God protect me,
" I see people coming with very great appearance,
" As though they intended to give battle, with innu-
" merable foot,
" I go, if you approve it, to put an impediment among
" them,

He is arrested.

" Ke plus près ne venent ;" le[s] noz dient, "noun
" kaylle,"[1]
Et prenent ly Syward ke plus avaunt n'y aylle ;
Establyent gardayns al port et al[2] muraylle.
Umfray de Boun le joven tent la[3] garde en baylle,[4]
Ke aide du chastel lure reregard ne[5] assaylle,
Et mountent les destrers, les brochent al mountaylle ;
E[6] ke plus tost pot coure, devaunt[7] ly altre saille.
Les Escoce[8] les vait venir, la cowe les torne cum
quayle[9]

Battle of Dunbar, and entire defeat of the Scots.

En enfuaunt s'en vole[10] al vent cum fet la paylle.
Les Englays après les chacent cum owaylle,
Ke fuyst quant vait le low venir de boskaylle.[11]
Ly surquiders Escote[12] quide ke countrevaylle
Le duk sir Coryné[13] ke conquist Cornewaylle.
Des taunz de gens armez[14] mult ayt grant mervaylle
Ke nes un de tuz al fet valt une maylle,
For[s] Patrik de Graham, ke demort et daylle
De l'espeye fourbye, mès tuez est saunz faylle.
Dis mil cynquant et quatre sunt tuez al travaylle ;
Trestuz sunt d'Escoce, le noumbre est par tayle.[15]
Cels furent les cheftayns ke demaglerent[16] le aumaylle
Parmy Northumberland, al chens lessaynt[17] l'entraylle ;
Escomengez estayent de lyvre[18] et chaundaylle,

---

[1] *non kaile*, B. *noun kaylle*, D.
[2] *à port e à*, B,
[3] *n'eut la*, B.
[4] *laylle*, D.
[5] *lour rereward ne a.*, B. *lour reregarde*, D.
[6] *Et* omitted in B. D.
[7] *avant*, B. D.
[8] *L'escoez*, B.
[9] *La cowe se turne cum quaile*, B.
[10] *En suant se vole*, B. *Et en fuaunt se vole*, D.
[11] *Ço fust quant veit venir le lou de boscaile*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[12] *Li surquider Escot*, B. D.
[13] *Le duc Corinée*, B.
[14] *De tanz des genz as armes*, B. *De taunz des gentz as armes mult ay grant*, D.
[15] *ai par taile*, B. The last five words of this line and the first four of the next are omitted in D., so as to make only one line.
[16] *les cheitifs qe demagleient*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[17] *à chiens lessent*, B. *as chens lessaynt*, D.
[18] *od livere*, B. *al lumere et al*, D.

" That they come no nearer;" ours say "Care not,"
And take Siward that he may go there no further;
They place keepers upon gate and upon wall.
Humphrey de Bohun the young has the ward in charge
That aid from the castle attack them not in the rear;
And they mount their steeds, spur them to the hill;
And he who can go quickest, springs before the others.
The Scots see them come, turn tail upon them like as a quail
In fleeing away flies before the wind like straw does.
The English after chace them like sheep
Which flies when it sees the wolf come out of the bush.
The presumptious Scot believes that he is worth more than
The duke sir Corineus who conquered Cornwall.
Of so many armed men it was very great wonder
That not one of them is worth a farthing in deed,
Except Patrick de Graham, who remains and fights
With the furbished sword, but he is slain without fail.
Ten thousand and fifty-four are killed in the engagement;
They are all of Scotland, the number is by count.
These were the chieftains who slaughtered the cattle
Through Northumberland, they left the entrails to the dogs;
They were excommunicated by book and candle,

Pur ço ke à seynt eglise, à prestre ne[1] clergaille,
Nent plus esparnaynt ke four ou torraylle;[2]
Peché les ad chacé à tel aryvaylle,
Ke perduz ount en le chaump les chefs of le oraylle.[3]

Song in mockery of the Scots.

The fote folk[4]
Put the[5] Scottes in the polk,
And nackened[6] thair nages.
Bi waye[7]
Herd i[8] never saye,
Of prester pages,
To pyke
The robes of the rike,
That[9] in the felde felle.[10]
Thay token ay tulke;
The roghe raggy sculke
Rug ham in helle.[11]

---

[1] *qe seint eglise, ne prestre, ne,* B. D.

[2] *qe four en toraylle,* D.

[3] *en champ le chief ovesqe l'oraile,* B. *en chaumpe le chef oveke l'oraylle.* D. Robert of Brunne has abridged the preceding lines, and has prefaced the English verses with the following —

" The Scottis had no grace,
" To spede in ther space,
" For to men ther nisse,
" Thei filed ther face,
" That died in that place,
" The Inglis rymed this."

[4] *Wel wrth a fote folk, That put the Scottes in the polk, And paied them theire wages,* E. Robert of Brunne reads, " Oure fote folk."

[5] *that the,* B. *putte ȝe,* D. " putte tham in," Robert of Brunne.

[6] *and nakid,* B. *nakkend,* D.

[7] *Be wai,* B. Robert of Brunne has, " Bi no way."

Bi wode ne bi weie,
Herdi nevere seie
Of prestere pages,
To pulle and to pike
The robes of the rike
That in the feld felle.
How ferd the wreches thenne,
The devel I them bikenne
That ragged sit in helle.—E.

[8] *Her I,* B.

[9] *And,* B. D.

[10] *the dik sonne,* B. *the dike syonne,* D. Robert of Brunne gives these lines as follows:—

" Purses to pike,
" Robis to rike,
" And in dike tham schonne;
" Thou wiffin
" Scot of Abrethin,
" Kotte is thi honne."

[11] Instead of this, B. has—

Thou wiffin,
Scot of Abrenityn,
Cloutid is thi honne.

and D.,

Wiffyn,
Scot of Abernithin,
Clut es ty honne.

Because to holy church, to priest nor clergy,
Did they show mercy more than to oven or barn;
Sin has driven them to such a result,
That they have lost in the field their heads with the ears.

The foot folk
Put the Scots in the poke,
And bared their buttocks.
By way
Never heard I say
Of readier boys,
To rob
The robes of the rich
That fell in the field.
They took of each man;
May the rough ragged fiend
Tear them in hell!

Greatness of the slaughter at Dunbar.

Du bataylle ne poygniz[1] fust unkes recordez
Ke taunz de genz si tost estayent outrayez,
Ne issynt[2] saunz defense les renes retornez ;
Corfs unt[3] les cors, les almes à malfez[4]
De trestuz ke issint gueres[5] ount guyez !
Car de cele part fust unkes une fez,[6]
Denz vile ne debors, un bon fet esprovez,
Mès for gopillier et robber les vilez,
Arder seint eglyse, tuer les ordinez.
Cil Deu sayt loé ke ad Dumbar l'ad vengez !
Les countes ke avaynt fet les malveistez,
Si tost cum savaynt[7] et furent avysez

Surrender of the castle.

De la descomfiture sur lour[8] parentez,
As Englays, quant repairent, le chastel ount liverez,
Et sauns condiciouns[9] els mesmes obligez
Al ray sir Eduuard, dount fere ses volentez.
Li rays lendemayn i vynt à ses[10] barnez,

Disposal of the prisoners.

Les prisouns ke sunt pris li sunt presentez,
Trais countes, iij. barouns, iij. banerez nomez,
Saunz els xxviij.[11] chuvalers adubbez,
Of v. vynz[12] gentilshommes ke ilokes sunt trovez ;
Deus clers et ij. Pikars par entre els sunt[13] noumbrez.
A la thour de Loundres les countes sunt maundez,
Les uns de[s] barouns les [sunt] associez ;[14]
Et[15] à diverse chastels les altres enveez,
Par deus et ij. ensemble un hakenay mountez,
Les uns en charettes, enfergez les pez.

---

[1] *De bataile ne de punice*, B. *De bataylle ne punyce*, D.

[2] *Ne ensi*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[3] *eient*, B. *eyent*, D.

[4] *les almes seient sauvez*, B. *les almes les maufez*, D.

[5] *qe ensint guere*, B. *q'ensint gweres*, D.

[6] This and the four following lines are omitted in D.

[7] *cum aveient*, B.

[8] *de lour*, C.

[9] *condicion*, B.

[10] *od ses*, B. *e ses*, C.

[11] *E sans eaus xx. et viij.*, B.

[12] *Oue xx. v.* C.

[13] *parentre sont*, C. D. "Two "clerkes, two Pikardes ȝit were "among tho," Robert of Brunne.

[14] *les sunt associez*, B. C. D.

[15] *Et* omitted in B. C. D.

Of battle or combat was never recorded
That so many people were so soon slain,
Nor thus without resistance turned their backs;
Ravens have their corpses, their souls to the fiends
Of all those who have thus conducted wars!
For on that side was never once,
Within town or without, a good deed shown,
But only to sneak about and plunder the towns,
Burn holy church, slay the clergy.
May that God be praised who at Dunbar has avenged it!
The earls who had committed the offences,
As soon as they knew and were informed
Of the discomfiture upon their kindred,
They have delivered up the castle to the English when they come back
And without conditions obliged themselves
To the king sir Edward to be at his will.
The king came there next day with his barons,
The prisoners who are taken are presented to him,
Three earls, three barons, three bannerets of name,
Besides them twenty-eight knights addubbed,
With five score gentlemen who are found there;
Two clerks and two Pikards are numbered among them.
The earls are sent to the Tower of London,
Some of the barons are associated with them;
And the others sent to different castles
By two and two together mounted on a hackney,
Some in carts, with fetters on the feet.

En tel plait de karole lur [1] jeu est terminez;
[Parmi Engletere en totes les cuntrez,] [2]
De lur surquiderye à touz jours ert [3] parlez,
Taunt cum le secle dure lur fet les ad [4] mokez.
For Scottes [5]
Telle i for sottes,[6]
And wrecches unwar;
Unsele [7]
Dintes to dele
Tham drohu [8] to Dumbar.

Negotiations of the Scots for an alliance with France.

Ore [9] est tens à dire du compassement
Les xij. peres de Escoce, ke quidaynt surement
Engleterre destrure, ben ws diray [10] coment.
Quant le ray de Fraunce après le dallyement
De cel maryage dount fu parlé sovent,
Volayt tenir Gascoyne par abbatement,[11]
Et le rays Eduuard ilokes maunda sa gent,
Et partye par guere sur Frauncays reprent,
Le ray Jon de Escoce, par l'entycement
De countes [12] et barouns, et clers ensement,
Ad maundez en Fraunce par commune assent
Le eveske de saint Andreu, par ki procurement
Frere le ray de Fraunce, Charles nomément,
Pur le fiz [13] le ray de Escoce ad fet alyement,
Dount marier sa feylle, et après par serement,
Frauncays et les Escoz [14] iraynt uniement

---

[1] *leur* omitted in C.

[2] This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. D. Robert of Brunne has here,—

"Thorghout Inglond men said of tham schame,
"And ther thei were in bond men scorned tham bi name."

[3] *ert touz jours*, B. C. D.

[4] *lour fet ad*, B.

[5] *For the Scottis*, B. *Skiterende Scottes*, E. "The Scottis," Robert of Brunne.

[6] "I telle for sottis," Robert of Brunne.

[7] *Mikel unsele*, E.

[8] *droght*, C. *drog*, D. *them drof to Dunbar*, E. *Drouh*, Robert of Brunne.

[9] *Des ore*, C. D.

[10] *dirra*, C.

[11] *abatement*, C.

[12] *Des countes*, B. D. *De countes e de barons e de clers*, C.

[13] *Pur fitz*, B. C. D.

[14] *e Escoce*, B.

In such a style of dance their game is ended ;
Throughout England in all the countries
There will be for ever talk of their presumption,
Their deed has turned them to mockery as long as the world shall last.
For the Scots
I reckon for fools,
And wretches unwary ;
Want of luck
In dealing blows
Drew them to Dunbar.

Now it is time to tell of the conspiracy
Of the twelve peers of Scotland, who thought surely
To destroy England, I will tell you exactly how.
When the king of France, after the dealing
About that marriage which was often spoken of,
Sought to hold Gascony by abatement,
And king Edward sent thither his people,
And retakes part of it from the French by war,
King John of Scotland, by the enticement
Of earls and barons, and likewise of the clergy,
Has sent into France by common assent
The bishop of St. Andrew's, by whose procuration,
The brother of the king of France, Charles by name,
Has made an alliance for the son of the king of Scotland
For a marriage with his daughter, and afterwards by oath
French and Scots should go conjointly

Engleterre destrure de Twede jekes en Kent ;[1]
Et ke le ray de Fraunce prendrayt aryvement,
Quel houre k'il vousist, en Twede prestement,
Par ount Northumberland prendraynt sodaynement,
Et pus la terre tote saunz nul[2] desturbement,
Ne lerraynt[3] homme en vye, pere ne parent.[4]
La fause purparlaunce saunz esplayt atent.
Le senescal de Escoce est venu fayntement[5]
Al rays sir Eduuard, of quant ke à ly appent,
Countes et barouns, [et] eveskes playnement,
Sunt venuz à sa pes encountre lur talent,[6]
King John Baliol carried a prisoner to London.
Le ray Jon et sun fiz, saunz terre et tenement,
Sunt menez à Loundres attender jugement.
Ore ad le rays Eduuard Escoce enterement,
Cum Albanak le avayt al comencement.[7]
Calays, Yrays,[8]
A nos Englays
Aident durement ;[9]
Dount les Escoz
Ount par le[s] noz
Enprisounement.
Et cele terre,
Par ceste guere,[10]
Est perdu finalement.
Les Walays[11] sunt repairez,
Et les Yrays retornez,
Al sigle et al vent.
Ws Englays [i] demorez[12]

---

[1] *à Kent*, B.
[2] *nul* omitted in B. C. D.
[3] *Ne lerreit*, B. C. D.
[4] *ne frere ne p.*, B. *ne pere ne parent*, D.
[5] *venu bonement*, B. *venuz bonement*, C. D.
[6] *tut à son talent*, B. C. D.
[7] This line is omitted in B.
[8] *Galeis, Irreis*, B.
[9] " halp douhtily," Robert of Brunne.
[10] *par cel gwere*, C.
[11] *Galeis*, B. *Les Galais qe sont*, C.
[12] *i demorez*, B. C. D.

To destroy England from Tweed into Kent;
And that the king of France should make arrival,
At what time he would, into Tweed ready,
Whereby they would take suddenly Northumberland,
And then all the land without any hindrance;
They would leave no man alive, father nor kinsman.
The treacherous conference remains without effect.
The steward of Scotland is come with dissimulation
To king Edward, with all that belongs to him,
Earls and barons, and bishops openly,
Are come to his peace against their will.
King John and his son, without land and tenement,
Are carried to London to wait judgment.
Now has king Edward Scotland entirely
As Albanak had it at the beginning.

Welsh and Irish,
To our English,
Give aid courageously;
Whereby the Scots
Have from ours
Imprisonment.
And that land
By this war
Is lost finally.
The Welsh are gone home,
And the Irish returned,
With sail and wind.
You English remain there,

Exhortations to king Edward to judge the Scottish prisoners with severity.

Doucement prier devez[1]
Ke Dampnedeu omnipotent[2]
Aman recounciller,
Et Mardocheum exiller,
En regal parlement.
Eduuard, parmy tuz[3] vos resuns,
Voilliez penser des arsouns[4]
Du temple Deu[5] omnipotent,
A Hexelesham, où cel host[6]
De la croice fesaint[7] rost,
Figure de humayn[8] salvement.
Herodes i fert, l'emphle mourt,[9]
En ceste angusse Rachel plurt;
Eduuard, or fa la vengement.[10]
Tu auras[11] jugé, jugez à drayt,
Suffrez k'il pend[12] ke pender dait,
La lay le volt[13] certainement.
La pain est dure et molt cruele,[14]
Kar ele est perpetuele,
A tuz[15] ke jugent altrement.
Vos enemyz or chastiez,
K'il ne se movent altre fez
En un novel torment.[16]
Homme dait mercy aver;
Mès à traitur[17] ne dait valer,
Iloke la lay la[18] suspent.

---

[1] *Devoutement Dieu priez*, B. *Devotement prier devez*, C.

[2] *qe Dampnedieu defent*, B. C. D.

[3] *tuz* omitted in B.

[4] *de arsouns*, C.

[5] *Deu* omitted in B.

[6] *Qe à Exilham en cel host*, B. *A Exilsham ouf cel hoste*, C. *A Excellesham*, D.

[7] *feseit*, B. *fesaunt*, C.

[8] *de un mayn*, C.

[9] *Herodes fert, l'enfant murt*, B. *Herodes i fert, ly emphile mourt*, C. *ly emfès*, D.

[10] *E fai jugement*, B. *Edward, fa le vengement*, D.

[11] *averas*, D.

[12] *Suffrez pendre qe pendre*, B.

[13] *La lei voet*, B.

[14] *e cruel*, B. D.

[15] *A tuz* omitted in B.

[16] *Un novel turnement*, B. C. *tournayment*, D.

[17] *Mès traitour*, C.

[18] *les*, B.

You ought gently to pray
That the Lord God forbid
To take again into favour Aman,
And to exile Mardocheus
In royal parliament.
Edward, among all your reasons,
Deign to think of the burnings
Of the temple of God Almighty,
At Hexham, where that army
Made roast of the cross,
The figure of man's salvation.
Herod there strikes, the child dies;
In this anguish Rachel laments;
Edward, now do the vengeance.
Thou wilt have judged, judge rightly;
Suffer that he hang who ought to hang,
The law wills it certainly.
The punishment is hard and very cruel,
For it is everlasting,
To all who judge otherwise.
Your enemies now chastise,
That they rise not another time
In a new trouble.
Man ought to have mercy,
But it ought not to avail a traitor;
There the law suspends it.

Verses against the Scots.

Pur amy ne pur dener,
Ray ne dait esparnier,
K'il ne juge owelement.
Si li rays volt Deu servir,
La lay ly covent mayntenir;
Si noun, il pecche et molt mesprent.[1]
Pur veir quant Jon de Balliol[2]
Lessa sun liver à[3] l'escol,
Desceu fu tremalement.[4]
For boule bred in his bok,
Wen he tint that he tok
Wiht ye kingedome.[5]
For he haves[6] overhipped,
His tipet is tipped,
His tabard is tom.

De ministris et statutis in Scotia.[7]

English rule established in Scotland.

Orgoyl en payse est urtil en herber,
Ke suztret[8] la rose, et la bout[9] arer.
Ensint est du Balliol,[10] ke par li duze per
Perduz ad [le] realme,[11] et va sojourner
A la thour de Loundres sur autri dener.
Li rays sir Eduuard Escoce fet garder;
Li quens [Jon] de Garenne i est[12] chef justiser,
Et[13] Henry de Percy ad Galway à guyer.[14]
A Berwick sur Twede assise est[15] le escheker,

---

[1] *il pecche e mesprent*, B.
[2] *Pur veir Johan le Baliol*, B.
[3] *et l'escol*, B. D. *en l'escole*, C.
[4] *fu malment*, B. *trop malement*, C. D.
[5] "Alle his kyngdome," Robert of Brunne.
[6] *has*, B.
[7] This rubric is taken from B.
[8] *surcrest*, B. C. D.
[9] *reboute*, B.
[10] *de Baliole*, C.
[11] *le reaume*, B.
[12] *Li quens Johan de Garenne est*, B. *Li quens Johan de Garenne i est*, C. *Ly quens Jon de Garenne il est justicer*, D. "Sir Jon of Warenne he is chef justise," Robert of Brunne.
[13] *Et* omitted in B.
[14] *à garder*, C.
[15] *assis ad*, B. C. D.

For friend nor for money,
A king ought not to spare,
So as not to judge equally.
If the king will serve God,
He must maintain the law;
If not, he sins and acts wrong.
For truth when John de Baliol
Left his book at the school,
He was very ill deceived.
For bale bred in this book,
When he lost what he took
With the kingdom.
For he has overhopped,
His tippet is tipped,
His tabard is empty.

Of the ministers and statutes in Scotland.

Pride in a country is a nettle in a garden,
Which overgrowes the rose and pushes it back.
So is it with the Baliol, who by the twelve peers
Has lost the realm, and goes to take his lodging
In the tower of London at another's expense.
The king sir Edward places Scotland under guard;
The earl John of Warenne is there chief justice,
And Henry de Percy has Galway to rule.
The exchequer is established at Berwick-on-Tweed,

Et Huge de Cressingham ilokes est tresorer,
Et ly Hamundesham[1] Walter est chaunceler.
Le ray pur pes norrir baunk i fet[2] crier,
Et justizes cynk la lay à governer,
Vescountes et baillifs sunt mys al mester[3]
Des Englais ke sevent et volent drait juger.
Order established in Scotland. La garde est establye si bon et si enter,
Ne Flemang ne Frauncais desore n'avera[4] poer
Entrer en Escoce, si noun pur marchaunder.
De tuz les melz vanez ke dayvent demorer[5]
Pris sunt[6] les homages, le ray les fist jorer
Ke leaus ly serraynt par terre et par mer.
Ke comencaynt la guere et li counsayler
Sunt maundez delà Trent en sewe reposer,
Taunt cum la guere en Gascoyne[7] dayt durer.
Issint dait li sire ses hommes chastier.
Energy of the bishop of Durham. Le eveske de Dureme, ke molt fet à loer,[8]
En conqueraunt la terre fut tuz jurs le primer;
Ne fussent ses[9] emprises et hardiement de quer,
Choses ore chevyes serraint[10] à comencer.

Les xii. peres
S'e[n] vount à freres,[11]
Pur[12] els confesser;
Le jugement
Ke les atent
Porrount il doter.[13]

---

[1] *Amundisham*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates,—

"Sir Hugh of Cressyngham he
"was chancelere,
"Walter of Admundesham he
"was tresorere."

[2] *fist*, D.

[3] *à ly mester*, C. D.

[4] *des ore avera*, B. C. D.

[5] This and the two following lines are omitted in D.

[6] *Pris unt*, B.

[7] *en Gascoine la guere*, B. C. D.

[8] This and the three following lines are omitted in D., the scribe of which often seeks to abridge.

[9] *ces*, C.

[10] *fusent*, B. *furent*, C.

[11] *Vunt à les freres*, B. *S'en von à freres*, C. D.

[12] *Pur* omitted in C. D.

[13] *Porrount douter*, C. D.

And Hugh de Cressingham is treasurer there,
And Walter de Hamundesham is chancellor.
The king to nourish peace causes his bench to be proclaimed there,
And five justices to administer the law.
Sheriffs and bailiffs are appointed to office
Of the English who can and will judge right.
The guard is established so good and so complete,
Neither Fleming nor Frenchman will henceforth have power
To enter into Scotland, except for merchandize.
Of all those of most account who are to remain,
Taken are the homages, the king makes them swear
That they would be loyal to him by land and by sea.
They who began the war and they who counselled it
Are sent beyond Trent to dwell in the South,
So long as the war may last in Gascony.
Thus ought the lord to chastise his men.
The bishop of Durham, who did much to deserve praise,
In conquering the land was always the first;
Were it not his energy and boldness of heart,
Things now completed would be to begin.

The twelve peers
Go to friars,
To confess them;
The judgment
Which awaits them
They may fear.

Satirical verses against the Scots.

Kambynhoy[1]
Se tent tut coy,[2]
  Ne volt aider;
La sorcerye
De Albanye
  Ne put valer.
Andreu est mort,[3]
Ou il se dort[4]
  Al mouster.
Le Escote ke fra,
Kaunt il orra
  Le ray parler
A saint Edmoun,
Et de tresoun
  Appeler[5]
Counte et baroun,
Ke par arsoun
  Destrut l'alter?[6]
Plus loynz ne pot,
Ilokes estot[7]
  Estre cum ler;

---

[1] *Cambyn oie*, B. *Kaumbynhoy*, C.

[2] *tynt en coy*, C.

[3] *Andreu se dort*, B. C. D.

[4] *Ou il est mort*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne, who was perhaps scandalized at the notion of St. Andrew being dead, or even asleep, translates these lines as follows:—

" Andrew is wroth,
" Tho wax him loth,
  " For ther pride.
" He is tham fro,
" Now salle thei go
  " Schame to betide."

[5] *Le appeller*, B.

[6] *l'autrer*, C.

[7] *l'estut*, C. *l'estoet*, D. Robert of Brunne, after omitting some lines here, alters so much to the end of the paragraph, that I prefer giving it all as it stands in his translation, to taking only the various readings:—

" Thou scabbed Scotte,
" Thi nek thi hotte,
  " The develle it breke!
" It salle be hard
" To here Edward
  " Ageyn the speke.
" He salle the ken
" Our lond to bren,
  " And werre bigynne;
" Thou getes no thing,
" But thi rivelyng
  " To hang therinne.
" The sete of the Scone
" Is driven over Done,
  " To London led.
" A hard wele telle
" That bagelle and belle
  " Be filchid and fled."

Cambinhoy
Holds himself all coy,
  Will not aid;
The sorcery
Of Albany
  Cannot avail.
Andrew is dead,
Or he sleeps
  At the minster.
What will the Scot do,
When he shall hear
  The king speak
At St. Edmund's,
And of treason
  Accuse
Earl and baron,
Who by burning
  Destroys the altar?
No further can he,
Thither he must
  Stand as a thief;

English rhymes on the Scots.

Et par agard
Le rays Eduuard
  Determiner.
And swa may men[1] kenne
The Scottes to renne
  And werre biginne;
Somme is left na thing,
Bot his rough ryveling[2]
  To hippe tharynne.
Thair kinges sette of Scone[3]
Es driven over done,
  To Lunden i-ledde;
In toune herd I telle,
Thair baghel and thair belle[4]
  Ben filched[5] and fledde.

De unione Anglicæ et Scoticæ.[6]

Merlin's prophecies of the union of England and Scotland.

Ha, Deus! ke[7] Merlyn dist sovent veritez
En ses prophecyes, [si]cum ws les lisez![8]
Ore sunt les ij. ewes en un aryvez,
Ke par graunz mountaynes[9] ount esté severez;
Et une[10] realme fet de [deus] diverse[11] regnez
Ke solaint par deus rays estre governez.
Ore sunt les insulanes trestuz assemblez,
Et Albanye rejoynte à les regaltez[12]
Des quels li rays Eduuard est seygnur clamez.
Cornewaylle et[13] Wales sunt en ses poustez,
Et Irelaunde la graunde à ses voluntez.

---

[1] *man*, C. D.

[2] *But the riven riveling*, B. *Bot his riven ryveling*, C. D.

[3] *ous Scone*, C.

[4] *That baghel and belle*, B. C. *and the belle*, D.

[5] *Bien fliched*, C.

[6] This rubric, omitted in A., is given from B. C. and D.

[7] *O Dieu! cum*, D.

[8] *sicum lisez*, B. *sicum vous lisez*, C. D.

[9] *grant mountaigne*, B.

[10] *En un*, D.

[11] *est fet de dous divers r.*, B. *est fet*, C. *de deus divers*, D.

[12] This line is omitted in D.

[13] *et* omitted in D.

And by judgment
King Edward
  Condemn him.
And so may men teach
The Scots to run
  And begin war;
To some is left nothing,
But his rough riveling (shoe)
  To hop in.
Their king's seat of Scone
Is driven over downs,
  Carried to London;
In town I heard tell,
Their jewels and their bells
  Are stolen and fled.

Of the union of England and Scotland.

Ah, God! how often Merlin said truth
In his prophecies, if you read them!
Now are the two waters united in one,
Which have been separated by great mountains;
And one realm made of two different kingdoms
Which used to be governed by two kings.
Now are the islanders all joined together,
And Albany reunited to the royalties
Of which king Edward is proclaimed lord.
Cornwall and Wales are in his power,
And Ireland the great at his will.

Edward's great fortune.

Rays n'y ad ne prince de tuz les countrez[1]
Fors le ray Eduuard, ke ensi les ad joustez;[2]
Arthur ne avayt unkes si plainement les fez.
Desore n'y ad ke fere for purver ses alez
Sur li ray de Fraunce, conquere ses heritez,
Et pus porter la croyce où Jhesu Cryst fu nez.
Ses enemys,[3]
Deus mercys!
Sunt chastiez;
Trestuz sunt[4] maz,
Et pris cum raz
Enlacez.
Il ad coruz,
Et combatuz
Ben assez,
Of deus rays
A une fays,
Et utrayez.
Cely descà
Ore aylle delà
Of ses barnez.[5]

The saints who help him.

Jon et Thomas
Li lerrount pas
Desaidez.
Chuthbert ly vent,
Ke of ly teent
En ses medlez.[6]
En Deu ws dy,
Merlyn de ly[7]
Ad prophetez.
Trays regiouns
En ses baundouns
Serrount waygnez;

---

[1] This and the following line are omitted in D.

[2] *q'ensi les ad justisez*, B. *qe ensint li ad justicez*, C.

[3] *Son enemys*, C.

[4] *sunt* omitted in B.

[5] This and the two preceding lines are omitted in D.

[6] *les medlez*, C.

[7] *le dy*, A.

There is neither king nor prince of all the countries
Except king Edward, who has thus united them ;
Arthur had never the fiefs so fully.
Henceforward there is nothing to do but provide his expedition
Against the king of France, to conquer his inheritances,
And then bear the cross where Jesus Christ was born.
His enemies,
Thank God !
Are chastised ;
They are all defeated,
And taken like rats
In trap.
He has run about,
And combated
Quite enough,
With two kings
At one time,
And overthrown them.
Let the one on this side
Now go over there
With his barons.
John and Thomas
Will not leave him
Without aid.
Cuthbert comes to him
Who holds with him
In his battles.
In God I tell you,
Merlin of him
Has prophesied,
Three regions
Into his power
Shall be gained ;

Ne sayt blemye [1]
La prophecye
Par pecchez!
Sire [2] Deus omnipotent,
A saint Edmoun al parlement [3]
Li counsayllez;
Et sur li faus [4] Phelippe de Fraunce,
Par ta vertu, aver vengaunce
Li grauntez.[5]

De parliamento apud Sanctum Edmundum.[6]

The Parliament at St. Edmund's.

Al burg Saint [7] Edmoun, le jour establye,
Sunt venuz les eveskes, of la compaygnye [8]
Des ercedenes [9] et clers, ad quels [10] li rays prie
Des bens de saint eglise aide et curtaisye,
Ensi cum il [11] promistrent auntan en le abbye [12]
De Westmouster, par quai li rays de ço [13] s'affye
En soccour [14] de sa guere, ke n'est pas finye.[15]
Countes et barouns et la chuvalerye
Pur els et pur le pople li grauntent [16] en aye
Le disime dener,[17] et pur la marchaundye

---

[1] Langtoft's translator, Robert of Brunne, who wrote at a later date, when the hopes here expressed were overthrown, and the Scots were again troublesome, adds on this passage the following reflections of his own.

" That Pers said,
" Me think it is laid,
" The pes so trewe;
" Now ilk ȝere,
" Bi tymes sere,
" Thei gynne alle newe.
" Jhesu so meke,
" I the biseke,
" On croice that was wonded,
" Grante me that bone,
" The Scottes sone
" Alle be confonded."

[2] *Sire* omitted in D.
[3] *à parlement*, C.
[4] *sur le rei Ph.*, B.
[5] This line is omitted in D.
[6] This rubric is omitted in A., but is found in B. C. D.
[7] *de Seint*, B. C. D.
[8] *od ma companie*, B.
[9] *ercediakenes*, B.
[10] *al quels*, D.
[11] *Ensint cum els*, C. D.
[12] *avant en l'abbeie*, B. C.
[13] *en ceo*, C.
[14] *en socour*, B.
[15] This line is omitted in C.
[16] *ly grant*, C.
[17] *Le xij. dener*, C. D.

Let not be blemished
The prophecy
By sin!
Lord God almighty,
At St. Edmund's at the parliament
Give him counsel;
And upon false Philip of France,
By thy virtue, to have vengeance
Grant him.

Of the Parliament at St. Edmunds.

At the town of St. Edmunds, on the day fixed,
Are come the bishops, with the company
Of the archdeacons and clergy, whom the king has asked
For aid and courtesy of the goods of holy church,
According to the promise they made formerly in the abbey
Of Westminster, for which the king trusts to it
In aid of his war, which is not finished.
Earls and barons and the knights,
For themselves and for the people, grant him in aid
The tenth penny, and for the mercantile class

Le setime parmy à sa tresorye.
The archbishop of Canterbury refuses the aid on the part of the church.
Et li erceveske, ke teent la primacye
Del sé de Caunterbyre, sur repouns estodye,
Et par deus eveskes al rays signifye
L'estat de saint eglise, ke mout est enpoverye.
Li arceveske après al ray va et dye,
" Sir, pur Deu là sus, ne te grevez mye,
" Pur tute saint eglise je te certefye,
" Desuz Deus [1] en terre est nul alme en vye
" Ke ad sur saint eglise poesté et mestrye [2]
" Fors la pape de Rome, ke teent la vicarye
" Ke saint Pere le apostoyle avayt en sa ballye.[3]
" La pape est nostre chef, il nus [4] garde et guye ;
" Estatute [5] ad fet ke durement nus lye,
" Sur privacioun de rente et prelacye,
" Ke disme, ne vintyme, ne maité, ne partye,
" Ad tay ne à ly altre [6] nul de nus ottrye,
" Saunz sun maundement en avowerye.[7]
" Sur ço solempnement escomenge et maudye
" Trestuz les fiz de mere, ke par seygnurye
" Asservent saint eglise, ke Deus ad fraunchye." [8]
The king's reply.
" Sir clers," dit le rays, " tu as parlé folye.
" Promesse est dette due,[9] si fay ne sait ublye.
" Mès ke jo te vays de [la] bulle saysye,[10]
" Ausint tuz les altres,[11] par le fiz Marye !
" Ke purryez [12] de ceste aide estre defublye ! "

---

[1] *Qe south Dieu en tere*, B.
[2] *poer ne mestrie*, B. C. D.
[3] *en baillie*, B. C. D.
[4] *vus*, B. This line is omitted in D.
[5] *E estatut*, C. *Estatut ad-il fet*, D.
[6] *ne à altre*, B.
[7] *e awowerie*, B.
[8] *ad enfranchie*, B. C. *qe Dieus enfraunchie*, D.
[9] *dieu*, C.
[10] *Mès qe jeo vei de la bulle seisie*, B. *Mès jeo te vaise de la bulle*, C. *Mès ke jeo te veysse de la bulle*, D.
[11] *Ensint touz li autre*, B. C. D.
[12] *Ne purrai*, B. *Ne purrez*, C. D.

The seventh among them for his treasury.
And the archbishop who holds the primacy
Of the see of Canterbury, studies an answer,
And by two bishops signifies to the king
The state of holy church, which is much impoverished.
The archbishop afterwards goes to the king, and says,
" Sire, for God there above, do not be angry,
" I certify thee for all holy church,
" Under God on earth there is no soul alive
" Who has over holy church power and mastery
" Except the pope of Rome, who holds the vicarate
" Which St. Peter the apostle had in his trust.
" The pope is our head, he keeps and rules us;
" He has made a statute which binds us strictly,
" Upon privation of rent and prelacy,
" That tenth, nor twentieth, nor moiety, nor part,
" No one of us give to thee or to other,
" Without his commandement as our authority.
" Upon that he solemnly excommunicates and curses
" All the sons of mother who by lordship
" Put in subjection holy church, which God has freed."
" Sir clerk," says the king, " thou hast spoken folly.
" Promise is debt due, if faith be not forgotten.
" But let me see thee possessed of the bull,
" As well as all the others, by the Son of Mary!
" You will not be able to escape this aid."

Responsio clerici super auxilio petito.

The archbishop's reply to the king.

" Sire," dist li erceveske, " mult trevolunter
" A tay, cum à seygnur, volumes tuz[1] aider
" Par congé de la pape, si tu vols[2] maunder
" Par un de tes clers of nostre[3] messager,
" Ke toun estat et nostre porrount[4] moustrer.
" Et soulom ço[5] ke la pape nus fra remaunder,
" Voloums souloum nos eses volunters aider."[6]

The king's reply.

" Sire clers," redist[7] ly rays, "jo n'ai pas mester
" De ço ke tu me dais la pape counsayller.
" Mès si tu voes respit en ço kas[8] aver,
" Fa quant tu vodras[9] tes clers assembler,
" En parlez du promesse, en parlez[10] ent de quer ;
" Après le saynt Hyllere venez à Westmouster,
" Parfournir la promesse[11] saunz plus en parler."
" Sir," dist le erceveske, "pur Deu et saint Rycher,
" Voylliez cy et là tes[12] gens comaunder,
" Ke sunt tes ministres al duzime dener,[13]
" Ke nus ne nos tenaunz ne facent molester,
" Nes nos temporals of les lays taxer."[14]
" Sir," ço dist le rais, "ço[15] n'estot doter,
" Kar ben ne mal ne frount[16] à nul de toun poer."
Noun pur ço li rays li prie[17] et requer,
" Parmy ta dyocise comaundez pryer
" Pur may et les mens,[18] et Deu mercier

---

[1] *nus*, B.
[2] *si tu le voes*, B. C.
[3] *à nostre*, D.
[4] *li purrount*, B. The line is omitted in D.
[5] *E sur ceo*, B. C. D.
[6] *Voloms nous de nostre prester e aider*, B. *aider et prester*, C. *Volums nous du nostre eyder et prester*, D.
[7] *Sire clers dit*, B. D.
[8] *en ceste cas*, B.
[9] *tu vorras*, B. C. D.
[10] *e tretés*, B. D.
[11] *E fetes là respons*, B. C. D.
[12] *ses*, B.
[13] *à xij. dener*, C.
[14] This line is omitted in D.
[15] *Sire, respount li rei, de ceo*, B. *Sire, respont ly reis, ceo*, C. D.
[16] *ne male front*, C.
[17] *Noun pur ceo, beau frere, jeo pri*, B. *Noun pur ceo, beal sire, jeo prie*, C. D.
[18] *e pur les meens*, C.

The reply of the clergy on the demand for aid.

" Sire," says the bishop, " very willingly
" To thee, as to our lord, we are willing all to give
" aid
" By leave of the pope, if thou wilt send
" By one of thy clerks with our messenger,
" Who shall be able to state thy condition and ours.
" And according to the message which the pope shall
" send us back,
" We will aid voluntarily according to our capabi-
" lities."
" Sir clerk," replies the king " I have no need
" Of thy sending to consult the pope.
" But if thou desire to have respite in this case,
" Cause when thou wilt thy clerks to assemble,
" Talk with them of the promise, talk of it heartily ;
" After St. Hillary's day come to Westminster,
" To perform the promise without more talking of
" it."
" Sire," says the archbishop " for God and St. Richer,
" Deign to give order here and there to thy people,
" Who are thy ministers for the twelfth penny,
" That they cause not to be molested us or our tenants,
" Nor tax our temporal goods with the laity."
" Sir," says the king, " that need not be feared,
" For they will do nor good nor evil to any one of
' thy power."
Nevertheless the king prays and requires him,
" Throughout thy diocese give orders to pray
" For me and mine, and to thank God

Return of the cardinals and Walter de Langton.

" Ke largement pur nous ad fet scà [1] en arer."
Le erceveske l'ottrie, et fet sun dever.
Poy avaunt cel houre revynt le tresorer,
Walter de Langetoun, ke fu passé [2] la mer
Of les chardinals [3] de la pes treter.
Respouns quel il porte put [4] nul home saver,
For cels du counsayl, ke ne l'osent [5] reveler.[6]
Messagers après vindrent nouncyer
Al rays, sir Eduuard, forme de amourer
Du contek du Gascoyne,[7] et fere acorder
Li of le ray Phelippe saunz plus guerrayer,
Si com les chardinals ount fet ordiner.
Li rays Eduuard par taunt ad fet rethorner
Walter de Langetoun et Huge le Despenser,
Et Jon de Beruuyk, clerk, averty [8] ber ;
Condure les face Deus et ben remener ! [9]

De respectu concesso Scotis.[10]

The king's indulgent feelings towards the Scots.

Des [11] barouns de Escoce à cel parlement
Ne fu resun renduz, ne doné [12] jugement.
Li rays est si curtays, de [si] pitouse [13] talent,
Et de si graunt mercy, jo cray certaynement [14]
Ke sa misericorde serra salvement
A cels ke ount la mort deservy playnement,

---

[1] *pur nous feit de sceà*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *qe passé fu*, B.

[3] *Od le cardinal*, B. *Ouf le cardinale*, C. D.

[4] *queus i porte, ne puit*, B. *quels i port poet*, C.

[5] *qe n'osent*, B.

[6] *relever*, C. Robert of Brunne, in his translation, says here :—

" Nouther of som no alle ne wist
" what thei ches,
" Bot tho that were privé, other
" myght not witen,
" Tille my maister no me was
" not told no writen."

[7] *de Gascoygne*, D.

[8] *clerk e averti*, B.

[9] This line is omitted in D.

[10] This rubric, not found in A., is taken from B. C. D.

[11] *Les*, B. C.

[12] *ne fu doné*, C.

[13] *de si pitus*, B. C. D.

[14] This line is omitted in D.

" Who has done largely for us hitherto."
The archbishop grants it, and does his duty.
A little before this time returned the treasurer,
Walter de Langton, who had passed the sea
With the cardinals to treat of peace.
The reply which he brings no man can know,
Except those of the council, who dare not reveal it.
Afterwards messengers came to announce
To the king, sir Edward, a form of conciliating
The strife of Gascony, and of reconciling
Him with king Philip without further hostilities,
Accordingly as the cardinals have caused to be arranged.
King Edward thereupon has sent back
Walter de Langton and Hugh le Despenser,
And John de Berwick, clerk, a prudent baron;
May God give them good guidance and bring them back successfully!

Of the respect yielded to the Scots.

Of the barons of Scotland in this parliament
Was no account rendered, or judgment given.
The king is so courteous, of such charitable feelings,
And of so great compassion, I believe veritably
That his mercy will be the salvation
Of those who have fully deserved death,

Et de fez ataynt[1] felonessement.
La graunt pité de quer k'il ad eu sovent
Des felouns de Gales, en parlent tote gent;
Quant plus ad eu à fere pur sun avauncement,
Meu li ount la guere, et fet[2] destourbement,
Dount ses alez aylliours lesser li covent.

De auxilio petito e clero supradicto.[3]

Obstinacy of the archbishop of Canterbury.

Après la saint Hillere, kant li rays quidait
Parlement tenir[4] à Londres cum ordinez avait,
Noveles ly vindrent par cil ke lors estait
Venuz de Kaumbray, et li nunciait
Ke la parlaunce de pes se fist pur nul esplait.
Pur quai[5] li ray Eduuard demort et se purvait,
Par terre et par[6] mer, ke tray ne sayt;
Et ad Westmouster de ses gens envayt
Treter sur quele aide la clergye li frayt.[7]
Li sire de Caunterbire sur ço se tynt estrayt,
Pur ly et pur sa[8] paroche à saint Thomas wowayt
Ke nul de sa[9] eglise tayllé plus serrayt,
Ne mys en servage, taunt com il viverayt,
Saunz maundement la pape, ke governer les dait.[10]

King Edward's quarrel with the clergy.

Li sire de Nichole à taunt se acordait,
Olyver[11] le eveske, ke flecher ne solayt.
Li rais vers la clergye par taunt se coroucait,
Et hors de [sa] pees[12] juger les comaundait;[13]

---

[1] *E des fez attaintz*, C. The line is omitted in D.

[2] *e fere*, B.

[3] The rubric is taken from B. It is omitted in A., but it is *De conditione auxilii petiti a clero*, in C. D.

[4] *tenir*, omitted in B. C.

[5] *Parquei*, B. C.

[6] *ne par*, B. *Par meere e par tere*, C. D.

[7] *li ferroit*, B.

[8] *li e sa*, B. C. D.

[9] *de la*, C.

[10] *le dait*, D.

[11] *Olivier*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[12] *de sa pes*, B. C. D. "Out his "pes did tham deme," Robert of Brunne.

[13] *juger la comandait*, C. D.

And attainted of acts of felony.
Of the great generosity of heart which he has often shown
To the felons of Wales, all people talk.
When he had most work before him for his own advancement,
They have raised war upon him, and given him trouble,
Through which he was obliged to abandon his expeditions elsewhere.

Of the above aid sought from the clergy.

After St. Hillary's day, when the king thought
To hold a parliament in London as he had ordained,
News came to him by him who was then
Come from Cambrai, and announced to him
That the conference on peace was carried on without effect.
Wherefore king Edward remains and provides,
By land and by sea, that he be not betrayed;
And he sends some of his people to Westminster
To treat on the aid which the clergy would give him.
The lord of Canterbury held himself inflexible on that subject,
For himself and for his diocese he vowed to St. Thomas
That no one of his church should be taxed in future,
Nor put in servage, as long as he lived,
Without command of the pope, who ought to be their governor.
The lord of Lincoln agreed to the same,
Bishop Oliver, who was not used to give way.
The king thereupon became angered against the clergy,
And ordered them to be judged out of his peace

Mès maintenaunt après cel fet repelait.[1]
The clergy relent and consent to give taxes.
Ço fesaynt les eveskes ke volunté chascayt
Aider à lour seygnur, dount recoverir sun drait,
Et saint eglise defendre de hounte et surfayt.[2]
L'elyt de Everwyk, ke pees desirayt,
Dist ke volunters, pur quant ke ly tuchayt,
Dunt saint eglise defendre le quint dener mettrayt.
Des Escotes chaitifs nul alme en parlayt,[3]
Demorez sunt uncore suz garde en autel esplait[4]
Cum avaunt estayent; escotez ke ço dayt.
Alliance with the count of Flanders.
An[5] taunt cum li rays et si[6] counsayllers
En debat estayent of les ordiners,
Ly quens William de Flaundres ad maundé[7] messagers,
Le seygnur de Blaunkmount, chuvaler pruz et fers,
Et li sire de Keu,[8] et li tresorers,
Rescayvour de Flaundres, ke volent volenters
Des Englays et Flemangs fere amys enters,
Ke en l'une terre et l'autre, en totes les cousters,
En bon amour et pees pussent les mercers
Aryver of lur merce, et vendre[9] pur deners.
Et quant ly rays[10] Eduuard enhaucera[11] baners,
Li quens et ses Flemengs[12] serrount ses suters[13]
Sur le ray Phelippe et sur les[14] xii. pers,
Ke à tort se deforcent[15] la terre of les maners[16]
Ke ly rays Arthur al duk sire Beduers[17]
Donait en Aquitayne, cum à si[18] botellers;

---

[1] *cel fait repelleit*, B.
[2] *e de surfait*, B. C.
[3] *n'i parleit*, B. *i parlait*, C. D.
[4] *Demorez sunt en garde, tut à lour desheit*, B. *Demorrez sont en garde molt à lour deshait*, C. D.
[5] *En*, C. D.
[6] *e ces*, C.
[7] *manda*, B.
[8] "With thre lordes pers of "Blankmonte and of Kewe," Robert of Brunne.
[9] *à vendre*, C. D.
[10] *Si li rei*, B. C. D.
[11] *eshaucera*, D.
[12] *e les Flemins*, B.
[13] *ses soters*, C.
[14] *ses*, B. D.
[15] *li deforcent*, B. C. D.
[16] *Gascoygne oue les maners*, D.
[17] *à duc de Bedewers*, B. This and the three lines following are omitted in D.
[18] *com à ses*, B.

But soon afterwards he repealed that act.
That caused the bishops, who showed willingness
To give their lord aid, whereby to recover his right,
And protect holy church from shame and injury.
The elect of York, who desired peace,
Said that willingly, for as much as touched himself,
He would contribute the fifth penny for the defence
of holy church.
No soul spoke of the wretched Scots;
They are remaining still in custody in the same position
As they were before; listen what caused that.

While the king and his counsellors
Were in debate with the clergy,
Count William of Flanders has sent messengers,
The lord of Blancmount, a prudent and bold knight,
And the lord of Kew, and the treasurer,
Receiver of Flanders, who will willingly
Make entire friends of the English and Flemings,
That in one land and the other, on all coasts,
The merchants may in good love and peace
Arrive with their wares, and sell for money.
And when king Edward shall raise his banners,
The count and his Flemings shall be his allies
Against king Philip and against the twelve peers,
Who wrongfully hold from him the land with the
manors
Which king Arthur to the duke sir Beduer
Gave in Aquitaine, as to his butler;

Lesquels li rays Eduuard et li rays Henry se pers,[1]
Et tuz lur auncestre, tenaynt[2] sçà en arers.
Li gentis quens de Henaud,[3] et tuz[4] ly Henners,
Li duk Jon de Braban, et ses Hoylaunders,[5]
Ount par[6] ly quens de Flaundres et ses chuvalers
Affermé [l'a]lyaunce[7] cum ses amys chers.

The judgment of the Scottish prisoners still delayed.

Overt[ement][8] ws ay recordé la resoun
Pur quai[9] le rays Eduuarde, pur le occupacioun
Des bosoynes de Flaundres, ne poet à Saint Edmoun,
Ne à Salesbyre, treter de raunçoun,
Ne salver ne dampner counte ne baroun
Du realme de Escoce, pur mort[10] ne pur arsoun.
Uncore i demorent suz gardayns en prisoun.[11]
Celer ne ws pusse[12] un altre achesoun,
Oyez, et je[13] dirray la narracioun.

De captione Johannis de Sancto Johanne apud Belegarde.[14]

Disasters in Aquitaine.

Noveles[15] dolereuse fu lors esparplye
En l'ostel le rays, de sa chuvalerye
Ke fust en Aquitayne, et dust aver garnye
Les chastels[16] de vitaylle et [de] moné partye.[17]
Les Mescredy[18] à vespre[19] avaunt la Purifye
La sainte mere Deu, glorieuse Marye,
Passaynt un pas estrayt, menez par lur espye,

---

[1] *e sire Henri si pers*, B. *et sire Henri fitz Peers*, C.
[2] *tindrent*, B.
[3] *Le counte de Hanaud*, B. C. D.
[4] *à tuz*, C.
[5] *et les Holanders*, B. C.
[6] *pri*, B. *pur*, D.
[7] *l'aliaunce*, B. C. D.
[8] *Overtement*, B. D. *Avertiment*, C.
[9] *Par quey*, D.
[10] *ne pur mort*, B.
[11] This line is omitted in B. C.
[12] *celer vous ne pense*, C.
[13] *E oiez, jeo*, B. *Oiez, jeo dirra*, C. *Oyez, jeo vus dirray*, D.
[14] This rubric is found in B. C. D., but not in A.
[15] *Novel*, C. *Novele*, D.
[16] *Ses chasteles*, B. C.
[17] *et de moné partie*, B. C. D.
[18] *Le Meskerdi*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates this as follows, "The Wednesday next at even be-" for Kandilmesse."
[19] *al vespre*, C. D.

Which king Edward and king Henry his father,
And all their ancestors, held hitherto.
The gentle count of Henault, with all the Henaulters,
The duke John of Brabant, and his Hollanders,
Have by the count of Flanders and his knights
Confirmed the alliance as his dear friends.

I have openly related to you the reason
Why king Edward, for the occupation
Of the affairs of Flanders, could not at St. Edmund's,
Nor at Salisbury, treat of ransom,
Nor save or condemn earl or baron
Of the realm of Scotland, for death nor for burning.
Still they remain there under custody in prison.
I cannot conceal from you another cause;
Listen, and I will tell you the narration.

Of the capture of John de Saint John at Belgarde.

Grievous news was then spread
In the king's household, of his knights
Who were in Aquitaine, and were to have stored
The castles with provisions and part with money.
At vespers on the Wednesday before the Purification
Of the holy mother of God, the glorious Mary,
They were passing through a narrow pass, led by their spy,

Ke lur dist pur veirs ke en la compaygnye
Des Frauncays cel houre el pays ne estaynt mye[1]
For v. cens as armes, de mil et plus mentye.[2]
Defeat and capture of sir John de Saint John.
Sir Jon de Saint Jon, ke sur ço s'afye,
Se mette en le auvant garde, et baner desplye.
Quant passé fu le pas, il trovayt enbuschye
Quynze cens as armes,[3] et bataylle establye
En quatre[4] granz escheles; et li baroun les escrye,[5]
Descomfit la primere, se melle of l'autrie.
Le counte de Nicole, Henry de Lascye,[6]
Retorna par counsail, la reregard l'ottrie,
La vitaille est perdue, et la moné ravye.
Death of sir John de Beauchamp.
Sir James de Bealchaump[7] la bataille ad guerpye,
Of molz de nos Englays de sa couardye,[8]
En fuyaunt se nayt, allas! la vilainye![9]
Sire Jon de Saint Jon combataunt of l'espeye,
Et xj. chuvalers, sunt pris[10] en le estaumpye,
Et xviij. gentishomes de lour esquyerye.
En le yssu Israel[11] Egipte fu blemye,
Et Pharaon naé en sa surquiderye;
Par pecché perirent Gomor et Sodomye;
David en sa simplesce al mort livra[12] Golye;

---

[1] *De Franceis u pais cel houre n'estoient mie*, B. C., which latter reads *el pais*. *De Fraunceis en pays cel oure n'estoynt mye*, D.

[2] Robert of Brunne translates here:—

"A spie did sir Jon leve that
"Frankis oste non was,
"Namely in that pas that he suld
"lede tham bi;
"He lied, that Judas, ten thou-
"sand were redi."

[3] *Quynze mil as armes*, D.

[4] *Et quatre*, A.

[5] *l'escrye*, C. D

[6] *de Lacie*, B. *Lasoye*, D.

[7] *de Beauchamp*, B. *de Beelchaump la gwere ad*, C. *De Belechaumpe*, D.

[8] This line is omitted in B. C. D.

[9] *En fuant fu naez chacez par maladie, De mortel plaie, noun pas par cowardie*, B. C. D.

[10] *Chivalers unze sunt pris*, B. *E chevalers xj.*, C. D.

[11] *de Israel*, B. C. This and the eighteen following lines are omitted in D. Robert of Brunne introduces these historical exemplifications with the two lines following:—

"Boste and deignouse pride, and
"ille avisement,
"Mishapnes often tide, and dos
"many be schent."

[12] *liverait*, C.

Who tells them for truth that in the company
Of the French at that time in the country were no more
Than five hundred men-at-arms, having lied by a thousand and more.
Sir John de Saint John, who trusts in that,
Places himself in the van-guard, and displays his banner.
When the pass was passed, he found in ambush
Fifteen hundred men-at-arms, and battle formed
In four great squadrons; and the baron raises the cry upon them,
Discomfits the first, and engages the rest.
The earl of Lincoln, Henry de Lacy,
Returned by advice, the rear-guard agrees to it,
The provision is lost, and the money plundered.
Sir James de Beauchamp has abandoned the battle,
With many of our English of his cowardice,
In flying he is drowned, alas! the disgrace!
Sir John de Saint John, combating with the sword,
And eleven knights, are taken in the flight,
And eighteen gentlemen of their esquiery.
In the departure of Israel, Egypt was disgraced,
And Pharaoh drowned in his presumption;
Through sin perished Gomorrah and Sodom;
David in his youthful age delivered Goliath to death;

Examples of political misfortunes.

Lucys ly emperour fu mort par covaytye;
Joseph, le fiz Jacob, fu vendu par envye;[1]
Et li rays Arthur surpris par tricherye,
Et Modred demaglé pur[2] sa reverye;
Kaduualdre pur poverte wayna[3] Brettaynye,
Par poer l'enchacaint[4] les genz de Germenye;
Après à tort le tynt[5] Haralde le fiz Godwye,
Ke en sun an primer perdist seygnurye;
William le Conquerour le conquist par espeye.[6]
[Lewelin jadis prince de la Walescherie,
E David son frere, unt perdu manantie,
Cil od le lunge jambes de tut est[7] seisie.][8]
Le ray Jon de Balliolf ad perdu par folye,[9]
Pur li et pur ses heirs, le regne de Albanye.[10]

Edward advised to be reconciled with the church.

Allas! ke nul homme par altre se chastye!
O[11] riche rays Eduuard! pur Deu, eyez mercye;
Ne suffrez poynt[12] perir la graunt genturye[13]
De cels ke sunt remys conquere Aquytanye.
Hastez ws laundrait, le pople vus surcrye;[14]
Acordez of[15] le eglise et of la clergye,
Et Thomas de Kent, et Jon de Beverlye,
Et Cuthbert de Dureme, te vendrount en aye.
Kar, si tu n'as de Deu ayde en longanye,[16]

---

[1] This line and the preceding are transposed in B. C.

[2] *par*, B. C.

[3] *par poverte weina*, B. *Cadwald par povert waina*, C.

[4] *le chacaint*, C.

[5] *qe tint*, B. *la tynt Harald fitz Godwie*, C.

[6] *la conquist par mestrie*, B. C.

[7] *ouf les longes jambes de tot en est*, C.

[8] These three lines are found only in B. and C.

[9] *par sa folie*, B.

[10] This line is omitted in C.

[11] *Ore*, C.

[12] *Ne suffrez pas*, B.

[13] *gentylerye*, D.

[14] *sur vus crie*, B. Robert of Brunne, omitting the exhortation to be reconciled with the church, renders this:—

"Edward, do turne the rother,
"and fare over the se,
"And socoure tho that are yit in
"Gascoyn left,
"Ne late tham not misfare, ne
"ther powere be reft."

[15] *Acordez vus od*, B.

[16] *Car si ne eis aide de Dieu en cel agonie*, B. *en le agonye*, C. D.

Lucius the emperor died through covetousness;
Joseph, son of Jacob, was sold through envy;
And king Arthur surprised through treachery,
And Modred slaughtered through his madness;
Cadwallader for poverty lost Britain,
By force the people of Germany drove him from it;
Afterwards Harold, son of Godwin, held it wrongfully,
Who in his first year lost the lordship;
William the Conqueror acquired it by the sword.
Llewellyn, formerly prince of the Welshery,
And David his brother, have lost their lordship;
He with the long shanks is seised of all.
King John de Baliol has lost by folly,
For himself and his heirs, the kingdom of Albany.
Alas! that no man corrects himself by the example
of another!
Oh, rich king Edward! for God, have mercy;
Suffer not to perish the great nobility
Of those who are left to conquer Aquitaine.
Haste you thither, the people appeals to you;
Be reconciled with the church and with the clergy,
And Thomas of Kent, and John of Beverley,
And Cuthbert of Durham, will come to thee in aid.
For, if thou hast not aid of God in the struggle,

Pur kant ke tu fras[1] ne doray un alye.
Sur cil ke Deu mayns ayme cherra[2] l'acravauntye.
En guere et en batayllе[3] Deu dona jadye
Honur et victorye al fiz Mathatye;[4]
Ausint le fet[5] à tuz ke plus ly sunt amye.
Le Prince ke morust en mount de Calvarye
Ayme[6] li rays Eduuard et sa baronye.
Recorder m'estoyt la controversye,
Après ws parleray de la forsanerye[7]
Du[8] remisaylle de Escoce, de[9] Dampnedeu maldye.[10]

De transfretatione regis supradicti in Flandriam, anno gratiæ[11] *millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo* VJ°.[12] [13]

The king prepares to embark for Flanders.

Après la sainte feste de l'Assencioun,
Maunda le rays Eduuard parmy sa regioun
Ad erceveske, eveske, à counte, et ad baroun,[14]
Et ad tuz li altre ke ount pur[15] garysoun
Vynt livre de terre en possessioun,[16]
Venir à sa court à fere[17] redempcioun,
Ou passer of sun cors sur li Frauncays feloun,
Ke à tort li deforcent sa terre[18] de Gascoun.

The barons resist his claims on them.

Les barouns en parlent, les uns dyent ke noun,
Car fere novele[19] servise saunz condicioun

---

[1] *quanqe tu fas ne durra*, C.
[2] *charra*, B. This line and the five which follow are omitted in D.
[3] *gueres e batailes*, B. C.
[4] *de Matathie*, B.
[5] *Ausi fet à touz*, C.
[6] *A vu*, B.
[7] *forcenerye*, D.
[8] *De*, C.
[9] *ke Dampne Dieu*, D.
[10] *maladye*, C.
[11] *Domini*, C.
[12] *nonagesimo vij°.*, C.
[13] This rubric is given from B. C.
[14] *A ercevesqes, evesqes, counte, e baron*, B. *à count e baroun*, C. *evesqe, count, et à baroun*, D.
[15] *par*, B.
[16] Robert of Brunne translates these lines :—

"and other that thei found,
"That ilk yere mot dispende of
"londes tuenty pound."

[17] *court fere*, C.
[18] *la tere*, B. C. D.
[19] *Car par novel*, B.

For all thou wilt do I would not give a garlic.
Upon him whom God loves least will fall the ruin.
In war and in battle God gave formerly
Honour and victory to the son of Matathias;
So he does to all who are most dear to him.
The Prince who died on the mount of Calvary
Loves king Edward and his barons.
I was obliged to relate the controversy,
Afterwards I will talk to you of the folly
Of the remnant of Scotland, accursed of the Lord.

Of the passage of the above-named king into Flanders, A.D. 1296.

After the holy feast of the Ascension,
King Edward sent through his kingdom
To archbishop, bishop, to earl, and to baron,
And to all the others who have for maintenance
Twenty pounds of land in possession,
To come to his court and make redemption,
Or proceed with his body against the felonious French,
Who wrongfully hold from him his land of Gascony.
The barons converse on it; some say no,
For to do new service without condition

Serrait pur coustoume[1] desheretisoun.
And join the clergy. Li sire de Caunterbire mettent à resoun,
Li prient de counsayl en la dissensioun.[2]
Et cil pur sainte[3] eglyse se profre champyoun,
Et vait al parlement abataunt cum leoun.
Edward's expostulation with them. Ly rays lors les parle,[4] et dist en sun sermoun,
" Jo suy chastel pur ws, et mur, et mesoun,
" Et ws la barbecane, et porte, et pavylloun;[5]
" Ma terre de Gascoyne est perdu par tresoun,
" Recoverer la m'estot, ou perdre accioun,[6]
" Le aler ay enpris, la voue[7] ay fet en soun;
" Passer of may covent chescun de ws par noun,
" De ço nul alme se escuse par evasioun."
The archbishop replies. " Sir," dist le erceveske, " à ta perdicioun
" Vols-tu guere enprendre, saunz correccioun
" Devotement parfere de l'offensioun[8]
" Ke tu as fet sovent, par ta mesprisioun,
" A Deu et ad sainte eglise,[9] et ad religioun?
" Oyez tun trespas pur ta salvacioun,
" Et fetes les amendes, et pryez de pardoun
" Vers Deu et sainte eglise, et sachez, si noun,[10]
" A tay et ad tuz ly altre de la nacioun,[11]
" Suspens le passage sur la maleyçoun[12]
" De cyl ke pur nus tuz suffry passioun."

---

[1] *par coustome*, D.
[2] *la discessioun*, C.
[3] *de seint*, B.
[4] *les parole*, C.
[5] *barbicane, i portez pavilloun*, C. Robert of Brunne has, some way or other, marvellously misunderstood this line, which he translates as follows:—
" And ȝe als naked berd loken in
" pavilloun,
" That to fight is ferd, or ȝate
" that first is doun."
Is it possible that a writer of the fourteenth century should not know what a barbacan was?
[6] *ou perdre amoun*, C.
[7] *Ke l'aler ay empris le vowe*, D.
[8] *tel offensioun*, C.
[9] *e seint eglise*, B. C. D.
[10] *eglise, par satisfaccioun*, B. C. D.
[11] *Ou à toy à touz de la nacion*, B. C. *A tey et à touz de la nacioun*, D.
[12] *malisoun*, C.

Would be disinheritance by custom.
They consult with the lord of Canterbury;
Ask him for advice in the dispute,
And he offers himself as a champion for holy church,
And he goes to the parliament, bearing down upon them like a lion.
The king then addresses them, and says in his speech,
" I am castle for you, and wall, and house,
" And you the barbacan, and gate, and pavilion;
" My land of Gascony is lost through treason,
" I must recover it, or lose my process.
" I have undertaken the expedition, I have finally
" made the vow;
" It is the duty of each of you by name to pass with
" me,
" Of that not a soul has excuse by evasion."
" Sire," says the archbishop, " to thy perdition
" Wilt thou undertake war without correction
" Performing devoutly for the offence
" That thou hast often done, by thy misbehaviour,
" To God, and to holy church, and to the clergy?
" Listen to thy trespass for thy salvation,
" And make amends, and pray for pardon
" To God and holy church, by satisfaction
" For thee and for all the others of the nation.
" Suspend the passage, upon the curse
" Of him who suffered passion for us all."

Protest of the earl Marshal.

Après ly erceveske, ly quens Marchal Roger
Vers ly rays Eduuard comença parler ;
Respyt demaundait et tens en[1] counsayler ;
Ly dist ke les barouns, ne nul de lur poer,
Ne de lur homage, dayvent outre mer,
Si noun à ses coustages par covenaunt, passer.
Li rays prist la parole irousement al quer,[2]
Harougement parlayt,[3] respit ne volt graunter,[4]
Comaundayt ly quens[5] say apparayller,
Kar vousist ou noun le estoverayt aler,
Ou de la marchalcye le office[6] là lesser.
Ly quens Roger respount, ke de si leger
Ne quidera[7] sun office ilokes resigner ;
Et hors du court s'en part saunz plus[8] par là daylller.

He is deprived of the marshalship.

Geffray de Genevile ly rays fet lors[9] maunder,
Et à la[10] marchalcye[11] la verge presenter,
Et sur ço comaunde ses privez genz armer,
Et bye[12] lendemayn les barouns arester.
Ly quens Marchal l'oit dire, se fet aprester,
Of countes et barouns, ly rays à refrener ;[13]

The bishop of Durham interferes.

Et issint, cum medlé[14] devait comencer,
Survent[15] le eveske Auntoyne, et vait al ray moustrer
Quel mal et quel peril li purrount encumbrer,
Si ly et ses barouns devaynt[16] descorder.

---

[1] *demander, e temps de*, B. *en ce conceyller*, D.

[2] *irousoument à quoer*, B. *irrusement al quer*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates these two lines :—

"The kyng his wordes toke
" wrathefully tille herte,
"For ire nere he quoke, and
" ansuerd him fulle smerte."

[3] *parla*, B.

[4] *ne volayt granter*, D.

[5] *Comaunda al quens*, B. *Comaundait al quens*, C. D.

[6] *Ou du marchaucie l'office*, B.

[7] *Ne quidoit*, B.

[8] *plus* omitted in B.

[9] *lors* omitted in C.

[10] *E de la*, B.

[11] *à la marchie*, C. "And of the "marschalcie presented him the "yerde," Robert of Brunne.

[12] *E bient*, B.

[13] *le rei refrener*, B. *ly reis affrener*, C.

[14] *Ensint cum la medlé*, B. C. D.

[15] *Survynt*, D.

[16] *deivent*, B. D.

After the archbishop, Roger, the earl Marshal,
Began to speak to king Edward;
He demanded respite, and time to consult about it;
He told him that the barons, nor any one of their power,
Nor of their homage, owe beyond sea
To pass, except at his cost by agreement.
The king took the speech angrily to heart,
Spoke haughtily, would not grant respite;
Commanded the earl to equip himself,
For, whether he would or not, he must go,
Or quit there the office of the marshalship.
Earl Roger replies that so lightly
He will not think of there resigning his office;
And out of the court he departs without further dealing there.
The king then sends for Geoffrey de Genevile
And presents to him the rod of the marshalship,
And thereupon orders his familiars to arm,
And intends on the morrow to arrest the barons.
The earl Marshal hears tell of it, makes himself ready,
With earls and barons, to restrain the king;
And thus, as battle was at the point of beginning,
Bishop Anthony arrives, and proceeds to show the king
What evil and what peril may fall upon him,
If he and his barons were to disagree.

Pus le eveske Auntoyn al barouns va prier[1]
Ke ad lur seygnur lige se deygnent plyer,[2]
Sicom[3] de lur aide or en ad mester.
Les barouns en parlent, et fount respouns arer[4]
Par peticiouns de diverse maner,
Et ke à Saint Alban vendrount[5] volunter,
Of ly rays Eduuard sur ço[6] parlementer,
Si of sun counsayl i voylle[7] decliner.
King Edward sails for Flanders.
Le ray sire Eduuard ne pot demorer,
Ses alyez delà l'estot[8] visiter,
Saunz compaygnye de counte sigle fet lever
Et va sodaynement en Flaundres aryver.
Unkes tel seygnur fu servy sçà en arer
Issint de sun pople, kant devait guerrayer.
Trop est recreaunt ke se recolt arer,
Kant vait sun seygnur en peril[9] aler.

Coment l'avauntdit Edward ariva en Flandres.[10]

Les countes demoraynt, ly rays Edward passait ;
Escotez ore coment en Flaundres aryvait ;
De vins et de viaundes son attret[11] estait

---

[1] *Pus va 'esvesqe Auntoyne les barons prier*, B. C. D.

[2] *replier*, B. C. *qe deygnent replier*, D.

[3] *De si com*, C. *Desicum*, D.

[4] *respons doner*, B. C.

[5] *vendrent*, B.

[6] *pur ceo*, B. C.

[7] *il voille*, C.

[8] *delà là estoit*, C.

[9] *en tiel peril*, B. *son seignur vers de le peris mover*, C. *vers tel peril mover*, D. It may be remarked that these four lines are altogether omitted by Robert of Brunne, who perhaps disagreed in the sentiments they contain; for he has, a few lines further on, inserted in his translation some remarks which appear intended to have a rather opposite tendency: —

"Now is Edward arived in
"Flanders, bot with fo,
"With his barons he strived, with
"him wild non go.
"A kyng that strives with hise,
"he may not wele spede,
"Where so he restis or rives he
"lyves ay in drede."

[10] This rubric is taken from B.

[11] *e viandes son atret*, B. *Des vins et des viaundes son attret*, D.

Then bishop Anthony goes to beg of the barons
That they will deign to bend to their liege lord,
Inasmuch as he has now need of their aid.
The barons consult on it, and send back their reply
By petitions of diverss manner,
And that they will willingly come to St. Albans,
To hold a conference with king Edward upon it,
If he will go down there with his council.
The king sire Edward cannot wait ;
It was necessary he should visit his allies beyond sea.
He raises his sail without company of earl,
And goes suddenly to arrive in Flanders.
Never in time back was such a sovereign served
Thus by his people, when he was going to make war.
He is too cowardly who draws back
When he sees his lord going into danger.

How the aforesaid Edward arrived in Flanders.

The earls remained, king Edward crossed the sea;
Now listen how he arrived in Flanders :
Of wines and meats his depôt was

Establishes himself at Bruges.

En la vile de Bruges,[1] où il se herbegait.
Humayne salveour, ke tut seet et vait,
De graunt encombrement illokes ly salvait.
Le provost de la vile desheriter beayt[2]
Le counte son seygnur lige, ke Flaundres governait;
Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ke countre ly guerrait,
Sa lettre privément par messagers[3] envait,
Li dist quel houre à Bruges aprocher vodrait,[4]
Tute la commune la vile ly rendrait,[5]
Ly rays Eduuard ilokes sodainement prendrait,
Ensint ke nule part[6] ayllours eschaperait.

Plot to deliver him to the king of France.

Ly rays Phelippe de Fraunce[7] meintenaunt le otrait;
Vers la vile de Bruges[8] son hoste apparaylait.
Ly rays Eduuard [l']oyt[9] dire et parler de descait,
Fet trumper as harmes, et son aler purvait

He escapes to Ghent.

Au noble burghe de Gaunt, où venir quidait[10]
Ly rays des Alemaunz, ke son[11] aver avait
Pur aider en la guerre taunt cum ele durait.[12]
Ly rays des Alemaunz ilokes ly maundait,
Souspris[13] estoit de guerre, dont venir ne poait.
Allas! ke tel[14] prince fay mentu estre dait!
Ly rays Edward demort, e mangust[15] et bayt;
Ses Walays issirent sovent à surfait.
Ly querw[16] counte de Bar entrechevauchait,

---

[1] *Briges*, B. *Burges*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it,

"His vitaile he has purveid in
"Brigges for to be,
"His wynes were ther leid, and
"warnised that cité."

[2] *bieit*, B. "The provest of the "toun, a wik traytour and cherle," Robert of Brunne.

[3] *par messangers privément*, C.

[4] *à Burgh aprocher volait*, C.

[5] *De tote la vile la comune li rendreit*, B.

[6] *q'en nul part*, C.

[7] *Philip rei de France*, B.

[8] *de Burge*, B. *de Burgh*, C.

[9] *l'oit dire*, B. C. D.

[10] Robert of Brunne has added some lines here to inform us how king Edward became acquainted with his danger, and how he escaped it.

[11] *ke le soen*, C.

[12] *tant cum il savoit*, B. C. D.

[13] *Que suspris*, B. C. D.

[14] *cel*, D.

[15] *manju*, D.

[16] *Li querru*, B. C. D.

In the town of Bruges, where he lodged.
The Saviour of mankind, who knows and sees all things,
There saved him from great disaster.
The provost of the town aimed at depriving of his heritage
The earl his liege lord, who ruled Flanders;
To king Philip of France, who was at war with him,
He sends his letter privately by messengers;
Tells him at whatever hour he would approach Bruges,
All the commune would deliver the town up to him,
And that he would there take king Edward suddenly,
So that he would escape nowhere else.
King Philip of France at once agrees to it;
He marshalled his army towards the town of Bruges.
King Edward heard tell of it and talk of deceit,
Ordered to trumpet to arms, and made preparation for his departure
To the noble burgh of Ghent, where he expected to come
The king of the Germans, who had his money
To aid in the war so long as it lasted.
The king of the Germans sent word to him there,
That he was overtaken by war, through which he could not come.
Alas! that such a prince should belie his faith!
King Edward remains, and eats and drinks;
His Welsh issued forth often for plunder.
The warlike count of Bar rode out with them,

Petty warfare between the English and French.

Et sur ly ray de Fraunce e court et robbayt ;[1]
Ses marchés et ses faires des chateus despoyllait,[2]
A maufere par tut[3] poynt ne esparniayt ;
Et ly ray Phelippe autel ly fesait.
Ly eveske de Dureme touz jour[s] travayllait
De enentir la guerre saunz contek et playt.
Le poer des Englays ly ray Phelippe savayt,
Par taunt ke fu petite,[4] se tent le plus estrait.
Ly rays Edward, ws dye, eust fet bon esplait,
S'il eust eu ses countes et lors et laundrait.[5]
Escotez la defaute, e en ly tut[6] pecchayt.

Ensaumple du noble rei sire Arthur.[7]

The example of king Arthur should have been followed.

En gestes aunciens trovoums-nous escrit
Quels rays et quels realmes ly rays[8] Arthur conquist,
Et[9] coment sun purchace largement partyst.
Roys suz ly[10] n'avoit ke ly countredist,
[Counte, duc, e baron,[11] qe unqes li faillist,][12]
En guere n'e[n][13] bataille ke chescun ne suyst.[14]
Ly rays sir Eduuard ad doné trop petyt ;
Par quai à sun aler, quant en mer se myst
Vers ly roys de Fraunce, fet ly fu despit,
Ke nes un de ses countes of ly le aler[15] emprist.

The Scots revolt again.

La commune de Escoz la novele oyst,
Chescun la sue part sur çoe se[16] joyst.
La route de raskaylle la guere renoue[17] reprist ;

---

[1] *sur le rei de France corrust e robbeit*, B. C. D.
[2] *ses chastels despuleit*, B. *de chaustels*, C.
[3] *de tut*, B. *de tot*, C. *de tote*, D.
[4] *cum fu perte*, B. *Tant com feust petit se tyent plus*, C. *com fu petite*, D.
[5] *et lors laundrait*, C.
[6] *defaute, en qi tut*, B. D. *la defaicte e qe tut*, C.
[7] This rubric is given from B.
[8] *rays* omitted in B.
[9] *Et* omitted in B.
[10] *sur ly*, D.
[11] *duk, baroun*, C. D.
[12] This line, omitted in A., is found in B. C. D.
[13] *n'en*, B. D. *ne en*. C.
[14] *ne fuist*, C.
[15] *of li aler*, B. *n'enpris*, D.
[16] *s'en*, B. *de ceo se*, C. D.
[17] *noue*, B.

And invaded and plundered the territory of the king
of France;
Robbed his markets and his fairs of their chattels,
Spared not to do evil everywhere;
And king Philip did as much to him.
The bishop of Durham continually laboured
To put an end to the war without strife and dispute.
King Philip knew the force of the English,
Insomuch as it was small, he held himself the more
unguarded.
King Edward, I tell you, would have gained a great
advantage,
If he had had his earls then and there.
Listen to the fault in which all the sin lay.

An example of the noble king sir Arthur.

In ancient histories we find written
What kings and what kingdoms king Arthur conquered,
And how he shared largely his gain.
There was not a king under him who contradicted
him,
Earl, duke, or baron, who ever failed him
In war or in battle, but each followed him.
The king sir Edward has given too little;
Whereby at his departure, when he put to sea
Against the king of France, the affront was shown
him
That not one of his earls undertook the expedition.
The commonalty of Scotland hears the news,
Each on his own part rejoices over it.
The rabble of the lower people resumed war anew;

Ly counte et ly baroun feyntement suffrist
William Wallace made their leader. Ke Williame Walays chevetayn se fist,
Par false covertoure[1] ke homme n'entendist,
Ke halt home d'Escoz relever vousist.[2]
Ly Walays meintenaunt les chastels assaillist
Parmy la terre d'Escoz, et souz Englays les prist.[3]
Hwe de Cressingham un pou avaunt mesfist,
Kant le argent[4] sir Eduuard en taunt esparnist,
Ke molt de la petaylle de l'host s'en partist.[5]
Defeat of earl John deWarenne at Stirling. Ly quens Jon de Guarayne,[6] si tost com entendist
La pees estoyt rompue ke ly Escot promist,
Vers Estrivelyn[7] s'en va of l'ost ke remist,
Où Williame le Walays[8] le counte descomfist,
Par sa folye demene, kaunt alait al lyst.[9]
Kar taunt com ly quens al matyn dormist,[10]
William le Walays le chef du pount assist ;
De launces et gavelokes home pecea ne vist[11]
Coyllette[12] plus espesse; le counte refuist,
Les Englays i morurent, l'Escot i passa[13] quit.
A cele mesavenue estaient tuez
Vavassours curtoys de gentil parentez,
Robert de Somerville et sun fiz aynez ;
Chuvalers et sergauns[14] i pristrent congez,

---

[1] Robert of Brunne translates this, "Thorgh fals concelement William did his wille."

[2] *ne vousist*, C.

[3] *e sur Engleis se prist*, B. *e sur E.*, C. D.

[4] *ke l'argent*, C.

[5] *perrist* (?), B.

[6] *Garenne*, D.

[7] *Strivelin*, B.

[8] *William Waleis*, B. D.

[9] *aleit à lit*, B. *al lit*, C. D.

[10] Robert of Brunne translates this as follows:—

"And that was his folie, so long
"in his bed gan ligge,
"Untille the Waleis partie had
"umbilaid the brigge.
"With gavelokes and dartes suilk
"ore was non sene,
"Myght no man tham departe,
"ne ride ne go bituene."

[11] *home piece sanc vist*, B. *Des launces*, C. *Des gavelocs et des launces*, D.

[12] *Cuillette*, B. *Coillet*, C. D.

[13] *morront, l'Escot passa*, B. *i morirent, l'Escote passa*, C.

[14] *Chevalers, serjaunz*, C.

The earl and the baron suffered by dissimulation
That William Wallace made himself their chieftain
By false pretence, which none understood,
That he sought to raise himself up a great man of Scotland.
The Wallace immediately assaulted the castles
Through the land of Scotland, and took them from the English.
Hugh de Cressingham had done wrong a while before,
When he was so very sparing of sir Edward's money,
That much of the foot of the army deserted.
The earl John de Warenne, as soon as he learnt
That the peace was broken which the Scot promised,
He proceeds towards Stirling with the army which remains,
Where William Wallace discomfited the earl,
By his own folly, when he went to bed.
For while the earl was sleeping in the morning,
William Wallace laid siege to the head of the bridge;
Of spears and gavelokes none ever saw before
So thick an assemblage; the earl fled,
The English died there, the Scot passed there quit.

At this misfortune were slain
Courteous vavasors of noble kindred,
Robert de Somerville and his eldest son;
Knights and serjeants there took their leave,

Sorais et Norays, ke cy ne sount nomez.[1]
Death of Hugh de Cressingham. Hwe de Cressingham, en sele[2] mesusez,
Du destrer[3] coraunt cheist desuz pez,[4]
Des ribaus[5] d'Escoz sun cors fu demaglez,
Et[6] en menues corayes le quir[7] escorchez,
En despit ly roys, ki clerk il fu clamez.[8]
Bravery of Marmaduke de Thweng. Marmeduk de Thweng,[9] de Deu sait honurez!
Cum lyon se contynt en totes les mellez,[10]
Taunt fist à la jorné[11] ke soens sunt les grez;[12]
Counte ne baroun à ly fu[13] comparez;
Combataunt of l'espeye la garde ad recoverez
Du chastel de Strivelyn, et là demorez.
Meintenaunt après ad li Escot maundez
Delà la mer en Flaundres un ribaud deguysez,[14]
Espier sir Eduuard en viles et cytez.
Cil revent[15] et dist en fin veritez,
Il vist où sir Eduuard fu mort et enterrez.
The Scots invade England. La commune d'Escoz se leve à cele fez,
Et promette et vouwe à Deu en trinitez
Engleterre destrure saunz aver pitez,
Confunder saint eglyse et les ordinez.
En Northumberland les fols ount comencez
Arder et destrure et mesuns et blez.
Au ray Eduuard en Flaundres sunt gent[16] enveez,

---

[1] This line is omitted in D.

[2] *en tel*, C. *cel*, D.

[3] *De destrer*, C.

[4] *chaist suz peez*, C.

[5] *Du ribaudaile*, B. D. *Outre ribaudaille*, C.

[6] *Et* omitted in B.

[7] *son quir*, B. C. Robert of Brunne has here, "I wene thei quik "him flouh," *i.e.*, "they flayed him "alive;" but Hearne very erroneously says in his note that *flouh* is an error for *slouh*, slew.

[8] This line is omitted in B. *i fu claimez*, C. D.

[9] *de Tuenge*, B. *de Thewenge*, C.

[10] *en touz ses medlez*, C.

[11] *à la courné*, D.

[12] This and the preceding line are transposed in B. D.

[13] *à ly ne fu*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[14] "A boye of ther rascaile, quaynt "and deguisé," Robert of Brunne.

[15] *revint*, D.

[16] *sunt genz*, B. D.

Northerns and Southerns, who are not named here.
Hugh de Cressingham, not accustomed to the saddle,
From his steed in its course fell under foot,
His body was cut to pieces by the ribalds of Scotland,
And his skin taken off in small thongs,
As an insult to the king, whose clerk he was called.
May Marmaduke de Thweng, may he be honoured of God!
Behaved like a lion in all the combats;
He did so much that day that his are the congratulations;
Earl nor baron was compared to him:
Combating with the sword he has recovered the ward
Of the castle of Stirling, and remained there.
Now afterwards the Scot has sent
Beyond sea into Flanders a ribald in disguise,
To spy sir Edward in towns and cities.
He returns and tells for perfect truth,
He saw where sir Edward was dead and buried.
The commonalty of Scotland rouses itself at this time,
And promises and vows to God in trinity
To destroy England without having pity;
To confound holy church and the clergy.
In Northumberland the madmen have begun
To burn and destroy both houses and corn.
People are sent into Flanders to king Edward,

Ke par[1] les Norays la plainte ount presentez
Coment il ount perdu lur teres et lur feez,
Distress of king Edward. Et coment plus perdrount, et touz les melz[2] vanez
Ke sunt en Engleterre en viles et citez,[3]
Si plus tost par ly ne sayent[4] aidez.
Ly rays de tote pars estoyt angussez,[5]
Issi k'à lendemayne[6] fet maunder ses privez ;
Counsayllent sur la chose, si com ws orrez.[7]
Maintenaunt après ly rays est avysez,
Ke graunter ly estoyt à clers et as barnez[8]
Les peticiouns ke furent veez.
He yields their demands to his barons and clergy. As countes et barouns ke of ly ne sunt alez,
As primaz d'Engleterre ke tenent les ij. seez,[9]
Et as tuz les autres eveskes sacrez,
As abbez et priours et beneficiez,
As countes et barouns, ly rays avaunt nomez[10]
Par lettre et par buche[11] ad durement pryez
De aide et de soccour et de amistez[12]
Encountre les Escoz et lur iniquitez ;
Leaument les promette ben[13] serrount werdonez,
Et averount lur demaunde à lur[14] voluntez.
Ly sire de Caunterbire du promès[15] est leez ;
Pur ly[16] et sa province respouns ad donez,
Salve l'estatut la pape ad publyez,
Des bens de saint eglise la disme i ad[17] grauntez,

---

[1] *E par*, B.

[2] *lour meuz*, B. D. *perderont tuz lour meltz*, C.

[3] *e viles e vilez*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

[4] *ne soiez*, B. *n'en soient*, C.

[5] "The kyng for tho tithinges "was noyed grevoslie," Robert of Brunne.

[6] *Issint qe lendemein*, B. *Issi qe il lendemayn*, D.

[7] *si vus orrez*, B.

[8] *as clers e barnez*, B. *estoit e as barnez*, C.

[9] For this and the following line, D. has one: *A les ercevesqes et evesqes sacrez.*

[10] *avant tuchez*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[11] *par lange*, B. C. D.

[12] *des amistez*, B. C. D.

[13] *qe ben*, C.

[14] *e lour*, C. D.

[15] *de la promesse*, C.

[16] *Par ly*, D.

[17] *la disme ad*, B. C. "Of holy "kirkes frute he gaf the kyng the "tende," Robert of Brunne.

Who have presented on the part of the Northerns their complaint
How they have lost their lands and their fees,
And how they will lose more, and all those of most account
Who are in England in towns and cities,
If they be not aided by him in time.
The king was tormented on all sides,
So that on the morrow he sent for his privy councillors;
They consulted on the matter, as you will hear.
Immediately after, the king is counselled,
That he must grant to clergy and to the barons
The petitions which were laid before him.
To the earls and barons who were not gone with him,
To the primates of England who hold the two sees,
And to all the other consecrated bishops,
To the abbots and priors and beneficed clergy,
To the earls and barons, the king before named
By letter and by mouth has earnestly prayed
For aid and succour and friendship
Against the Scots and their wickedness;
Faithfully he promises them they shall be well rewarded,
And shall have their demand at their will.
The lord of Canterbury is rejoiced by the promise;
He has given answer for himself and his province,
With reservation of the statute the pope has published,
He has there granted the tenth of the goods of holy church,

Dunt salver le et defendre[1] en ses dignitez,
Ensint ke par les clers[2] le aver sait levez,
Et par mesmes les[3] clers as barouns liverez,
Kaunt irrount en Escoz of lur alyez,
A salver seint eglise parmy les regnez.
E les clers du north du quinte sount chargez,
A la verrai value com furent taxez
Kant al rais Edward donaint les maytez.[4]

The Scots are alarmed.

Mayntenant après kant les Escoz savaient
Coment al rais Edward ses clers aider volaint,[5]
Coment ses barons enter eus parlaient,
Si tost quant[6] par le rai enselée verraient
La chartre des franchises[7] ke jadis avaient,
Trestuz en Albanye volunters[8] irraient
Encountre les Escoz ke plus de mal ne fraint,[9]
Le venir des barons les Escoz dotaint.
Al chastel de Strivelyn com gent de pees alaint,

Marmaduke de Thweng is captured through treachery.

A Marmeduk de Tweng[10] hostages presentaint,
E en lur bapteme[11] promistrent e joraient,
Si hors vousist venir, de pees li parlerayent,
E al rays Edward illokes se renderayent.
Marmeduke issist à cels ke ly pryayent,
Ke sanz plus delayer[12] ly pristrent e montayent,
Le joven conestabel[13] ovekes ly menayent
Tut drait à Dumbretayn, e l'enprisonayent;
Ne sevent lur amys si mort ou vifs i sayent.[14]
La treson fu fete, kar les[15] Escoz quidayent,

---

[1] *Dont salver e le deffendre*, C. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *ses clers*, B. C.

[3] *ces clers*, B.

[4] *la maitez*, C. "Whan the kyng "asked half of alle ther moble "thing," Robert of Brunne.

[5] For this and the next line, D. has: *Coment al reis Edward entre els parlaynt.*

[6] *Si tost cum*, C.

[7] *de franchise*, C.

[8] *volenters en Albanie*, C.

[9] *qe plus mal ne ferroient*, B. The line is omitted in D.

[10] *de Theweng*, C. *Thweng*, D.

[11] "Thei suore ther Cristendam," Robert of Brunne.

[12] *plus dailler*, B. *dalier*, C.

[13] *Jovene conestablie*, B.

[14] *ou vif ensaint*, C.

[15] *La treson i fu fet par les*, B.

Wherewith to save and defend him in his dignities,
So that the money he raised by the clergy,
And by the same clergy delivered to the barons,
When they shall go into Scotland with their allies,
To save holy church throughout the kingdoms.
And the clergy of the North are charged with the fifth,
At the strict valuation as they were taxed
When they gave to king Edward the moiety.

Now after when the Scots knew
How his clergy were willing to aid king Edward,
How his barons talked among themselves,
As soon as they saw sealed by the king
The charter of freedom which they had formerly,
That they would all go willingly into Albany
Against the Scots to prevent their doing more evil,
The Scots were in fear of the coming of the barons.
They went to the castle of Stirling as men of peace,
Offered hostages to Marmaduke de Thwenge,
And promised and swore on their baptism,
If he would come out they would treat of peace with him,
And there they would submit to king Edward.
Marmaduke went out to those who solicited him,
Who without further delay took him and put him on horseback,
Took with him the young constable
Straight to Dumbarton, and put him in prison;
Their friends know not if they be dead or alive there.
The treason was done, for the Scots imagined,

Si mal lour fust venue, par eus le melz[1] averayent.
Ore oyez de la chartre quel gent la portayent
A clers e al barons,[2] ke la procurayent.

The king's message to his clergy and barons.

Tant com les clers du su devaient compasser,
Ke par la disme graunté[3] ne pussent mal aver,
Ne la pape offendre, revent ly tresorer
Du rays sir Edward, ke fust outre mer.
Cil vers la clergye comença parler,
E al les barons ensi[4] noncier.
" Amis,[5] ly ray, vos sires, bee[6] de gentil quer
" De sa seygnurie tut Engleterre eyser,
" La chartre des franchises ws voet confermer,
" E[7] de la foreste l'assise amender,
" Com jadis purvist le ray Henri son per."

Publication of the charter of liberties.

La chartre fu moustré e leu à Westmouster.
Li sire de Canterbir sur çoe ne voelt targer,
Parmy sa province l'ad fet publier.
Maintenaunt après ly quens Marschal Roger,
E ly quens de Herforthe, Umfray[8] li gentil ber,
Vers Everwyke s'en vont, al mouster Saint Per ;
Les hauz homes de la terre les venent encountrer,
Ly quens Jon de Soray[9] of tut soen poer,
Ly gardayn de Glouscestre, Rauf de Moinhermer,[10]
Of Jone la countesse, sa lige mulier,[11]
E trestouz ly autre ke portent baner
De Dover à Dureme, il venent[12] volunter.

---

[1] *les fust venuz, par eaus les meuz,* B. *les fust avenue,* C. *les fust venue,* D.

[2] *as clers e as barons,* B. C. D.

[3] *grande,* B. C.

[4] *issi,* D.

[5] Perhaps, *A vus. A vous,* C. D.

[6] *bie,* B. *bye,* C.

[7] *E* omitted in D.

[8] *Herford, Homfray,* C. *de Herford,* D.

[9] *Johan de Surray,* C.

[10] *Rauf le Mohermer,* B. *de Meinhermer,* C. D.

[11] Joan Plantaganet, widow of Gilbert earl of Clare, Gloucester, and Hertford. Robert of Brunne translates here,

" Of Gloucestre stoute and gay
" sir Rauf the Mohermere,
" And his wif dame Jone, whilom
" Gilberdes of Clare."

[12] *i venent,* B. D.

If misfortune came upon them, they would by them
have the better.
Now hear of the charter what people brought it
To the clergy and barons, who procured it.

While the clergy of the South were employed in
contriving
That by the tenth granted they could have no harm,
Nor offend the pope, returns the treasurer
Of the king of England, who was beyond sea.
He began to address the clergy,
And to announce to the barons as follows:
" Friends, the king, your lord, seeks with gentle heart
" Of his lordship to ease all England,
" It is his will to you to confirm the charter of
" freedom,
" And to amend the assize of the forest,
" As king Henry his father formerly provided."
The charter was shown and read at Westminster
The lord of Canterbury will not delay thereupon,
He has caused it to be published throughout his parish.
Thereupon the earl Marshal Roger,
And the earl of Hereford, Humphrey the noble baron,
Go to York, to the minster of St. Peter;
The high men of the land come to meet them,
Earl John of Surrey with all his power,
The warden of Gloucester, Ralph de Monthermer,
With Joan the countess, his lawful wife,
And all the others who carry banner
From Dover to Durham, they come willingly.

Le jour de saint Annais[1] illokes font maunder
L'eveske de Kardoil, ke vient pronuncier
La sentence sollempne al pulpit du mouster,[2]
Entre les deus countes, of livre e lumer,
Sur tuz iceax ke facent la chartre violer,
Ou ouster, ou destrure nul poynt de l'enter.
The English recover the Marches.
Puys vont vers Escoce Northumberland garder,
Ressaisent les terres ke Walays le leer
Avaunt avait saisye, e lors fuyst[3] arer.
Entre ces aferes la graunt contrariaunce
Entre le rays Edward e le ray de Fraunce
Josqes à jour certayne pris est delayaunce,[4]
E la guere sopye e mys en suffraunce,
Josqes l'apostoyle ad fet ordinaunce
Entre[5] les deus rays purveu l'acordaunce.
Double matrimonial alliance between England and France.
Par deus mariages la pees est en beaunce;[6]
Ly rays Edward avera cele dont fu parlance,
E son fiz Edward, ke Deus là sus[7] l'avaunce!
Aura[8] la feille Felipe, ke n'ad for set aunce.
Clers e lays, des queus les roys ont[9] affiance,
Sont alez à Rome of lettres de creaunce,
Moustrer à la pape coment, par quel covenaunce,[10]
Gascon estait rendue of l'apurtenaunce.
Entendu ad la pape par lur demustrance[11]
Quel mal, e quel damage,[12] e com[13] sovent grevance,
Englays e Francays ont eu par la distance;
Discussion ad fait de la grant descordaunce,
E mandez al reis partie de sa voyllaunce.
Acorde bone i mette Deu par sa puyssaunce!

---

[1] *de seint Agneis*, B. *Auneys*, D.
[2] *pulpit de moustrer*, B.
[3] *fust*, D.
[4] *desloyaunce*, C.
[5] *Et entre*, D.
[6] *biance*, B.
[7] *Dieu sus*, B.
[8] *Avera*, C. D.
[9] *e reis desqueus le rei out*, B.
[10] *al pape par lour demustrance*, B.
[11] This and the preceding line are omitted in B.
[12] *Quele mal, quel damage*, D.
[13] *coment*, B.

On the day of St. Agnes they summon thither
The bishop of Carlisle, who comes to pronounce
In the pulpit of the minster the solemn sentence,
Between the two earls, with book and candle,
Against all those who cause the charter to be violated,
Or infringed, or any point of the whole to be destroyed.
Then they go towards Scotland to protect Northumberland,
They recover the lands which Wallace the thief
Had previously seized, and then he flies back.

Amidst these transactions, of the great dispute
Between king Edward and the king of France
A delay is taken until a certain day,
And the war appeased and put in sufferance,
Until the pope has made order
And provided the accord between the two kings.
By two marriages the peace is in negotiation;
King Edward shall have her of whom was talk,
And his son Edward, may God there above advance him!
Shall have Philip's daughter, who is only seven years of age.
Clerks and laymen, in whom the kings have trust,
Are gone to Rome, with letters of credit,
To explain to the pope how, and by what agreement,
Gascony was given up with the appurtenance.
The pope has understood by their explanation
What evil, and what damages, and how frequently grievance,
English and French have had by the quarrel,
He has made discussion of the great disagreement,
And has sent to the king part of his will.
May God by his power put there a good accord!

Anno Domini millesimo CC°. *nonagesimo viij°.*[1]

Tant com le apostoile Boneface atent
Entre les deus rays purveer l'acordement,
King Edward returns to England. Ly reys sir Edward son chymyn reprent
Tut dreit vers Engletere, of sigle e of vent.[2]
Le counte de Menetef,[3] ke fu son parent,
Treason of the liberated Scottish nobles. E li quens d'Ascetil,[4] le Comyn ensement,
Fiz cil de Badenake,[5] e autres jesqe à trent,[6]
Quex li rais Edward sanz or e sanz argent[7]
Hors de sa prisone lessa quitement,
Aler en pilrinage priaynt[8] devotement.
Kant congeez estaient, escotez coment
Al ray Felippe de France alayent fausement,
Ly pryayent[9] de soccour e de avauncement
Dont recoverir Escoce of le apurtenement,
A tenir de ly pardurabelment.
Le ray Phelippe respont, "Soz,[10] alez-ws ent,
" La pape par sa lettre me maunde e defent[11]
" Coure sour la terre k'au rays Edward apent,[12]
" Tant com nostre trewe demort sur jugement."
La fausse compaygnye desaidé s'assent,[13]
Al port de la mer s'en vount vistement,
Passage i trovent prest, promettent largement,
They return to Scotland. E ki piere s'en fount,[14] ne lessent pur tourment,
Arivent en Escoce saunz destourbement.
Li rays sir Edward par oydire atent
Coment les Escoce l'ount trahi sovent.
Lors va visiter seint Thomas de Kent,

---

[1] This rubric is taken from D.
[2] *e vent*, C. D.
[3] *Meneteste*, B. D. *Menetest*, C.
[4] *de Astrels*, B. *Ascecil*, D. *Ascetelle*, Robert of Brunne.
[5] *Badenagh*, B. C. D.
[6] *jesqe trent*, B.
[7] *e argent*, B. D.
[8] *priaunt*, B. C. D.
[9] *priaunt*, B.
[10] *Folz*, B. *Sotz*, C. D.
[11] *et me deffent*, C. D.
[12] *qe au rei apend*, B.
[13] *desaidée se sent*, D.
[14] *Eskipper se fount*, B. *E skyper s'en font*, C. *Eskipper s'en fount*, D. The reading of the text is evidently incorrect.

Anno Domini 1298.

While pope Boniface waits
To provide the accord between the two kings,
The king sir Edward takes his way back
Right towards England, with sail and with wind.
The earl of Menteith, who was his kinsman,
And the earl of Asketil, the Comyn likewise,
Son of him of Badenagh, and others to the number of thirty,
Whom king Edward without gold or silver
Let quit out of his prison,
Prayed devoutly to go on a pilgrimage.
When they had leave, hear how
They went treacherously to king Philip of France,
Prayed him for succour and advancement
Wherewith to recover Scotland with the appurtenance,
To hold of him for ever.
King Philip replies, " Fools, go away with you,
" The pope by his letter sends and forbids me
" To attack the land which belongs to king Edward,
" So long as our truce remains upon judgment."
The false company finds itself without aid,
They go hastily to the port of the sea,
They find there the passage ready, promise largely,
Cause themselves to be embarked, do not hesitate for storm,
Arrive in Scotland without impediment.
The king sir Edward learns by hearsay
How the Scots have betrayed him often.
Then he goes to visit St. Thomas of Kent

Seint Jon de Beverlé, molt devotement,[1]
Seint William de Everwyk, seint Cuthbert ensement;
Edward proceeds to Scotland. Puys va vers le north à sa[2] lige gent,
Assembler les fet, e tient[3] parlement.
Cil parlent, e purvayent, e sunt d'un assent,
Aler en Albanye à prendre vengement,
[E priver les Escotz de tere e tenement.][4]
Or oyez quel vengaunce ly Dex[5] omnipotent
I fist par sa pussance sour le faus covent[6]
Ke robba saint eglise de soun vestement,[7]
E renovelaynt la guere encontre lur serment.[8]
Battle of Falkirk. Le jour de la Magdelayne après la[9] mi esté,
D'Escoz e de Galewaye le popel maluré,
Kantke denz le Marche[10] furent norriz e née,
Chescun of lance en poigne à malfaire[11] apresté,
Sunt venuz à Faukirke à une matiné[12]
Encontre les Englais en bataille ordiné.
En l'avaunt garde estoit dos au dos[13] doné,
E point sur point de lance, en chiltrons tant sarré[14]
Com chastel en plein de mur environé.

---

[1] Robert of Brunne says,—
" Sithen on his viage to Beverley
" he went,
" Bifor saynt Jon he woke a
" nyght or he thien nam."

[2] *od sa*, B.

[3] *e tynt*, C.

[4] This line is omitted in A., but is found in B. C. D.

[5] *vengaunce Dieus*, B.

[6] *sur le fals gent*, D.

[7] Instead of this line and the one following, D. has one:
Qe renovelaynt la gwere encountre lour serment.

[8] Robert of Brunne adds,
" The date was a thousand, thre
" hundred alle bot one,
" At Foukirke in Scotland Scottis
" escapid none."

[9] *la Magdale à la*, B. " a litelle
" bifor Lammesse," Robert of Brunne.

[10] *les Marchez*, B. *dedenz les Marches*, D.

[11] *à meffare*, B.

[12] *par une matiné*, B.

[13] *dos à dos*, B. C. *dos al dos*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this,—
" Ther formast conrey ther bakkis
" togidere sette,
" Ther speres poynt over poynt
" so sare and so thikke,
" And fast togidere joynt, to se
" it was ferlike.
" Als a castelle thei stode, that
" were wallid with stone,
" Thei wende no man of blode
" thorgh tham suld haf gone."

[14] *en scheltrom sarré*, B.

St. John of Beverley, very devoutly,
St. William of York, St. Cuthbert likewise;
Then he goes towards the North to his liege people,
Causes them to assemble, and holds a parliament.
These speak, and provide, and are of one assent,
To go into Scotland and take vengeance,
And deprive the Scots of land and tenement.
Now hear what vengeance God Almighty
Took there by his power on the false people,
Who robbed holy church of its garment,
And renewed the war contrary to their oath.

On the day of the Magdalen, after Midsummer,
The wretched people of Scotland and Galloway,
As many as were bred and born in the Marches,
Each with spear in fist ready to do mischief,
Are come to Falkirk in a morning,
Arranged in order of battle against the English.
In their van guard back was placed against back,
And point of lance on point, in squadrons so serried,
Like castle in plain surrounded with wall.

La multitude estait tant fort effrené,[1]
As Englays[2] destrure de tel volunté,
Ne quidaynt[3] pur veirs ke tute la lignée
Tant com la terre est longe de Perte à Pevensé,[4]
Oveske ly rays Edward, les eust[5] parmi percé.
Ly rays Edward les vait venir aval le pré,
Escrie ses barons, "Aloms en noun de Dé!"
Lors brochent les destrers li count e ly barné;
Ky plus tost put coure s'en aut à la medlé.[6]
Great defeat and slaughter of the Scots.
La chuvalerie delà ke fu mounté,[7]
Kant vist la banere Edward le sené
Of les trais lipars[8] en place desplaé,
Meintenant fuirent e lessaint desaidé
Tute lur pitaile, ont werpé[9] e wayné.
La route de raskaille fu meintenaunt sevré
Par poer des Englais, ke n'avoyent pité;
Com mousches i morurent c. mil par coup d'espé;[10]
Les autres sy fuyrent,[11] la place fu voidé
Entre prime e noune de tote la lignée,[12]
E nes un des Englais[13] fu mort ne maigné,
For frere[14] Brian de Jai, chuvaler alosé,
Haut mestre du Temple decà mere assigné.[15]
Cil suist[16] les Escoz à une betumé,[17]

---

[1] *affrené*, C.
[2] *Des Engleis*, B.
[3] *quideit*, B.
[4] *de Perth e de Pevenesé*, B. *de Pert à Pevensé*, C.
[5] *le eust*, B.
[6] *s'en alt au medlé*, B. C. *s'en alt al medlé*, D.
[7] *qe là fu counté*, B.
[8] *Od les treis leobars*, B. *Ouf les iij. leopardes en la place*, C. *Les iij. leopardz*, D.
[9] *unt guepie*, B.
[10] Here again D. has condensed two lines into one:—*Com mouches i morirent, la place fu voydé.* Robert of Brunne translates, "Als "fleihes doun thei fleih, ten thou-"sand at ones."
[11] *s'en fuirent*, B. C.
[12] *de cele parenté*, B. C. D.
[13] *un Engleis*, B.
[14] *sire*, C. *Fors Bryan de Jay*, D.
[15] "Maister Templere he was on "this half the se," Robert of Brunne.
[16] *fuist*, C.
[17] *betumee*, C. D.

The multitude was so very fierce,
And so eager to destroy the English,
They imagined not for truth that all the race
Through the whole length of the land from Perth to Pevensey,
With king Edward, could have pierced through them.
King Edward sees them coming down the meadow,
He shouts to his barons, "Let us advance in God's "name!"
Then earls and barons spur their steeds;
He who can run quickest goes into the battle.
The knights on the other side who were mounted,
When they see the banner of Edward the wise
With the three leopards displayed in the field,
Now fled and left without aid
All their footmen, have abandoned and lost them.
The army of the common soldiers was now severed
By the power of the English, who had no mercy;
Like flies died there a hundred thousand by sword blows;
The others fled, the place was cleared
Of all the race between prime and none,
And not one of the English was killed or left on the field,
Except brother Brian de Jai, a knight of worth,
Appointed head master of the Temple on this side the sea.
He pursued the Scots to a slough,

E sanz soccour suaunt illokes fu tué.[1]

Conduct of the Welsh.

Les Galays ne fesayent[2] aide à la jorné,
Desuz une montaygne s'esturent de gré,[3]
Josqes la bataille iloques[4] fu terminé.

Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo ix°.[5]

Après la batayle ly rays retornait,
Du realme de Escoce la garde comaundait
Ad ses barouns Englays, par quels il quidayt
Refrener l'Escot, ke plus ne moverayt.

King Edward's return to London.

Ad Loundres kant il vint, la pape ly maundait,
La soer[6] al ray de Fraunce à femme[7] prenderayt,
Par ount de Gascoyne[8] la gwere cesserait;
Ne pas dame Blaunche dont homme primes parlait,[9]
Mès dame Mergerete, en ky maynder dait[10]
Plus ad de bounté, de beauté, ki la vait,
K'en la bele Ydoyne ke Amadas amait.
Ly roys le maundement curtaisement rescait,
Et de jour en autre sour çoe se purvait.[11]
Sur quel avisement kan[t] plus à fere avait,
Ly quens Marschal Roger à Loundres aprochait,
Ly quens Ounfray[12] de Boune i vint of graunt esplait,

---

[1] Robert of Brunne says,—
" He folowed the Scottis pas,
" whan the bigan to fle,
" Fer intille a wod, men calle it
" Kalenters,
" Ther in a mire a mod, withouten
" help of fers,
" Slouh thei sir Brian alon with-
" outen mo.
" Alas! that douhti man, that he
" so fer suld go!"

[2] *i feseient*, B.

[3] *Sutz la montaigne se coverent de gré*, B. *Desuz la montaigne se turent de grée*, C. D.

[4] *ensi*, B. *ensint*, C. *Ilokes la bataylle ensint*, D.

[5] This rubric is taken from B. and D.

[6] *Qe soer*, B.

[7] *al femme*, C.

[8] *à Gascoyn*, C.

[9] Robert of Brunne says,—
" Not dame Blanche the suete,
" that I first of spake,
" Bot dame Margarete, gode with-
" outen lak"

[10] *meindire deit*, C.

[11] *ceo purveit*, B.

[12] *Umfray*, C.

And following without succour there was slain.
The Welsh gave no assistance in the battle,
They voluntarily took their position on a mountain,
Until the battle there was terminated.

Anno Domini 1299.

After the battle the king came back,
He gave the custody of the realm of Scotland
To his English barons, by whom he believed he should
Curb the Scot, that he would rebel no more.
When he came to London, the pope sent to command him.
That he should take to wife the sister of the king of France,
Whereby the war of Gascony should cease;
Not the lady Blanche, of whom people spoke first,
But the lady Margaret, in whose least finger
There is more goodness and beauty, whoever looks at her,
Than in the fair Idoine whom Amadas loved.
The king receives the message courteously,
And from day to day provides for that.
On which affair when he was most occupied,
The earl Marshal approached to London,
Earl Humphrey de Bohun came there with great retinue,

Comp.aint about the statute of perambulation.

Des countes et barouns assez i trovait.
Ly quens Roger al rays pur la commune alait,
Et en bon amour devotement priait
Ke saunz plus demore la puralé se faist.[1]
Ly rays la puralé delayer volait,
Noun pur ço respouns assez cortays donait,
Le maundement la pape al quens Roger mostrait,
Et en bone fay promist et jorait
Ke, kant le damoisele esposez averait,
A la puralé fere gens assignerait,
Des quels nul de soun regne se[2] mespayerait.
Tant fu[3] son dit cortays ke lors al quen parlait,
Tant bele la parole,[4] taunt[5] bel resemblait,
Ke counte et baroun ad cel fez le crait,
Et en son pays chescun repairayt.
Ly quens Ounfray[6] de Boune malades après[7] cochait,
Mort le prent,[8] allas! son fiz Ounfray de drait[9]
Le heritage son pere retent, et le rescait.[10]

Arrival of Margaret of France.

Meyntenaunt après le ray Phelippe de Fraunce
Ad novele oye ke, par l'alyaunce
De sa soer Mergrete, la commune ordinaunce
De la court de Rome frait[11] sopir la distaunce
Du dusché de Aquitayne of le apurtenaunce.
Ly ray Phelippe se acorde cum fiz de obeisaunce,
Et pur la damoysele fet fere purviaunce;
La maunde en Engleterre of gent de conisance.
Aryvé est ad Dover saunz nule destourbaunce,
Où gent ly countervenent[12] de grant apparaunce;

---

[1] *Qe sanz plus de la puralé fesoit*, B. *Ke saunz plus delay la puraillé se faist*, C. D.

[2] *ne se*, C. The line is omitted in D.

[3] *fust*, C.

[4] *sa parole*, B. C.

[5] *e tant*, C.

[6] *Umfray*, C.

[7] *après malades*, D.

[8] *Mort ly prist*, C. *le prist*, D.

[9] *allas! Umfrei son fitz entreit*, B. C. D.

[10] *son pere, e le tient de dreit*, B. C. D.

[11] *feit*, B.

[12] *Où genz li countrevenent*, B. C. D.

He found there enough of earls and barons.
Earl Roger for the commons went to the king,
And in good love earnestly prayed him
That without further delay the perambulation should be made.
The king wished to delay the perambulation,
Nevertheless he gave a very courteous reply,
Showed to earl Roger the pope's message,
And in good faith promised and swore
That, when he had espoused the damsel,
He would appoint people to execute the perambulation,
With whom no one of his kingdom would be dissatisfied.
So courteous was his saying which he then spoke to the earl,
So fair his word, and it sounded so well,
That count and baron that time believed it,
And each returned to his country.
The earl Humphrey de Bohun after this lay down ill;
Death takes him, alas! his son Humphrey by right
Claims the heritage of his father, and receives it.

Now after, king Philip of France
Has heard news that, by the alliance
Of his sister Margaret, the common ordinance
Of the court of Rome would cause to be appeased the quarrel
About the duchy of Aquitaine withthe appurtenance.
King Philip consents to it like an obedient son,
And causes purveyance to be made for the damsel;
He sends her into England with people of knowledge.
She is arrived at Dover without any impediment,
Where people meet her with great ceremony;

Ad Kanterbyr la menent, où saunz delayaunce
Sount fet les esposailes sur memes la parlance,
Ke la court de Rome taila ly [1] covenaunce.

King Edward's marriage with Margaret.

Li erceveske Robert de Winchelesé
Fist des esposailes la sollempneté,
Le meskerdi avaunt la Nativité
La gloriouse virge Marie, la mere Dé.[2]
En le iver [3] après ly rays desavisé
Alait vers Escoce saunz aide du barné;
Kant vint en la Marche, son host ad regardé,
Petit le vist, et pover, et descounsailé.
Le Escot delà le vait, le vis ly ad moustré,
Ly profer la batayle; ly rays n'y ad pousté
Visiter Escoce ne endurer la medlé.
Suth garde com avaunt la Marche ad lessé,[4]
Sanz plus fere cele fez al suth est [5] retorné;
Despendu ad le soen, et plus n'y ad gayné.[6]
Trop fu sa chaunce [7] pover en l'an de Jubilé;
Sachez certaynement çoe fist la puralé,[8]
Ke ne estait pas fete com ele fu graunté.

De parliamento perambulationis.[9]

A parliament called at London.

Ad la Paske après ad ly rays somouns
Erceveskes, evekes, countes, et barouns,
Quatre chuvalers des countés [10] chescuns,

---

[1] *les*, C. D.

[2] Robert of Brunne has,—

" Robert of Wynchelsé, that cor-
" seynt is verray,
" Did that solempnité opon a
" Wednesday,
" Next the lattere fest that is of
" our Lady."

[3] *jour*, B. *yver*, D.

[4] This line is omitted in D.

[5] *Sanz plus fere à cele foiz, al sieu est*, B. C. D.

[6] This line is omitted in D.

[7] *la chance*, B.

[8] *le poveraille*, C.

[9] This rubric is taken from D.

[10] *Quatre chivalers de countez*, B. C. The latter reads, with the text, *des countés. Quatre chivalers des countés*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, " Four knyghtes be " somons chosen in ilk counté." In A. a hand of the fourteenth century has changed " *quatre* " into *deux*."

They take her to Canterbury, where without delay
The espousals are made according to the same covenant
Of which the court of Rome drew up the terms.

The archbishop Robert de Winchelsea
Performed the ceremony of the espousals,
The Wednesday before the Nativity
Of the glorious virgin Mary, the mother of God.
In the winter following, the king ill advised
Went towards Scotland without aid of his barons;
When he came to the March, he has reviewed his army,
Sees it small, and poor, and disheartened.
The Scot on the other side sees him, has shown him his face,
Offers him battle; the king has not power there
To visit Scotland or support a battle.
As before he has left the March under a warden,
Without doing more this time he is returned to the south;
He has spent his money, and gained no more there.
His chance was very poor in the year of the Jubilee;
Know for certain that was caused by the perambulation,
Which was not performed as it was granted.

Of the parliament of the perambulation.

At Easter following the king has summoned
Archbishops, bishops, earls, and barons,
Four knights of each of the counties,

The parliament at London.

Ad Loundres à parlement[1] pur plusurs achesounz.[2]
Al comencement sount nomez les persouns
Ad fere la puralé la terre environs.[3]
Kaunt ele serra parfete parmy la regiouns,[4]
La commune ad graunté al rays en gwerdouns[5]
Le vyntime dener de lour possessiouns.
Après fu parlé, acordé par alcuns,[6]
Maunder ad la pape pur saver respouns,
Pur quay al rays Eduuard ne volt par ses resouns
Rejuger à tenir la terre de Gascouns.[7]
En le terce article de çoe parlement,
Pria ly rays Eduuard soccours de sa gent
Dount relyer soun host sur le Escot pulent.

Adjourned to Carlisle.

Après la my esté, par commune assent,
Estait à Kardoyl[8] lour ajornement;
Surrays et Norrays pur lur tenement[9]
Ke servise ly dayvent i vount[10] bonement.
Ly quens Marschal Roger deshaité[11] se sent,[12]
Sir Jon de Segrave en soun lu[13] present,
Ad fere le servise[14] en taunt cum apent.

The queen follows.

La rayne Margarete, par comaundement
Soun seygnur ly rays, vers le North s'estent;[15]

---

[1] *à le parlement*, C. *al parlement par*, D.

[2] *enchesons*, B.

[3] Robert of Brunne translates this,—

"First the nemnid alle tho the
" puralé suld make,
" That thorgh the reame suld go,
" the boundes forto stake."

[4] *les regiouns*, C.

[5] *au rei de guerdons*, B.

[6] *par ascons*, B. *de acorde par acouns*, C. *par acuns*, D.

[7] *des Gasouns*, D,

[8] *Estait ly Cardoylle*, C.

[9] This line is omitted in D,

[10] *li deivent, venent bonement*, D.

[11] *desherité*, B.

[12] *se assent*, C.

[13] *en soun lour*, C.

[14] *les servicez*, B. Robert of Brunne translates these lines as follows:—

"The erle Marschalle Rogere no
" hele that tyme mot have,
" He went with his banere sir
" Jon the Segrave,
" To do alle tho servise that
" longed the office tille,
" And mayntend alle the prise
" ther he sauh lawe and skille."

Robert of Brunne evidently misunderstood the original of Pierre de Langtoft, which states that Segrave was sent as substitute.

[15] *se tent*, B. *se estent*, C.

To London to parliament for several causes.
At the beginning are named the persons
To make the perambulation round the country.
When that shall be completed through the kingdoms,
The commons have granted to the king in reward
The twentieth penny of their possessions.
Afterwards it was debated, agreed to by some,
To send to the pope to know his reply,
Why to king Edward he will not by his reasons
Judge back the possession of the land of the Gascons.

In the third article of that parliament,
King Edward asked for succour of his people
Wherewith to reassemble his army against the stinking Scot
After Midsummer, by common assent,
Their adjournment was at Carlisle;
Southerns and Northerns for their lordships
Who owe him service go thither well-willing,
The earl Marshal Roger feels himself discouraged,
Presents sir John de Segrave in his place,
To do the service in as much as belongs to him.
Queen Margaret, by command
Of her lord the king, proceeds towards the North;

Birth of a prince.

Gros encaint estait ; par Deu le omnipotent,[1]
A Broyerton sur Wherf[2] delyver est sauvement
De un fiz, k'a noun Thomas en baptizement.
Ly rays Eduuard l'oyt dire, se atire vistement
Aprocher à la dame, cum falcoun al vent.[3]
Après sa purifye fet sollempnement,
Ly rays vers Escoce soun chimyn reprent ;
La rayne of soun fiz à Kawode[4] attent,
Sour Ouse la rivere, assez esement.

De ingressu regis in Scotiam.[5]

King Edward enters Scotland.

[Li[6] rei à Cardoil parle od[7] ses barnez,
Ensint qe des uns est-il consallez
Passer parmy Galawai destrure les contrez,[8]
Rincer e voider pastours e prez
Des bestes pur larder, où[9] trouvoit assetz.
Le pais est garni, le pople avisez
Enchacent lour aumale[10] parmi betumez,
En mores e mareis de tielz[11] parfoundetez,
Ne seit home estrange ou tenir ses peez.
Lors le temps se chaunge, survint li oundez,[12]
Descendet[13] des montaignes en pleins e valez,
Suroundent les riveres, coverent les fossez,
Ne siet le rei Edward quel part passer les guez,
Change ses chemins, se prent à plus eisez.[14]

---

[1] *Dieu omnipotent*, B. C.

[2] *Brothertoun sur Werf deliveré*, B. *suth Werk*, C. *Brothertoun*, D.

[3] *cum à luy apent*, D.

[4] *Cawode*, C. D.

[5] This rubric is taken from B.

[6] The forty-four lines here inclosed in brackets are omitted in A., but they are found in B. C. D., and are translated by Robert of Brunne. They are here given from B., with the various readings of C. D.

[7] *ouf*, C.

[8] This line is omitted in B.

[9] *où* omitted in C. *où trovent*, D.

[10] *cel aumaylle*, D.

[11] *En mores, en marays de tel profoundetez*, D.

[12] *survenent les undez*, C. D.

[13] *Descendent*, C. D.

[14] *al plus esez*, D.

She was advanced in pregnancy; by will of God Almighty,
At Brotherton on the Wharf she is safely delivered
Of a son, who is named Thomas in his baptism.
King Edward receives information of it, prepares quickly
To visit the lady, like a falcon before the wind.
After her purification made solemnly,
The king resumes his road towards Scotland;
The queen with her son waits at Cawood,
On the river Ouse, much at her ease.

Of the entrance of the king into Scotland.

The king at Carlisle talks with his barons,
So that by some he is advised
To pass through Galloway and destroy the countries,
Sweep and clear pastures and meadows
Of the cattle to salt, where he found enough.
The country is warned, the people informed of it
Drive their cattle among the bogs,
Into the moors and marshes of such depth
A foreigner knows not where to hold his feet.
Then the weather changes, the showers come,
They descend from the mountains into the plains and valleys,
Overflow the rivers, cover the ditches,
King Edward knows not on what side to pass the fords,
Changes his roads, takes to the easiest.

The king takes Caerlaverock.

Un povere chastelet, Karlaverok[1] appellez,
Prist le rei Edward, nul alme dedenz trovez,
Fors ribaus qe le tindrent, vencuz as entrez.
Entre ses afferes, en forme des amistez,
Ad le rei de France au rei Edward priez
Pes pur les Escoz en noun de Trinitez.[2]
En l'an suant après la true li ad grantez,
E le rei Edward à Loundrez returnez.

What are the errors of a king when he aims at conquest.

Demore e traine feynte[3] e lung matinez,
Delit en luxure,[4] e surfet en vesprez,
Affiaunce en felon, des[5] enemis pitez,
Au fet e consail[6] propre voluntez,
Conqueste retenir sanz fere largetez,
Eschurent les Bretons en antiquitez.
Ensample puit home prendre de Arthur li senez,
De touz jours fu primer en touz ses alez
A matin e à vespre,[7] de grant honestetez,
Felons en companie, e gens des enemistez,[8]
Solunc lour desert, touz les[9] ad jugez.
Au fet e au consail estoit atemprés ;
Prince plus curteis de teres[10] conquestez
Entre Crestiens[11] ne fut unqes neez.
Par quei[12] le vus di, la reson escotez,
Si nostre rei eust fet les[13] puralez
Parmi Engletere, cum il avoit[14] grantez
Affermez par escrit, qe bien est testmoynez,[15]

---

[1] *Karlawerk*, C. "A povere hamlete toke, the castelle Karelaverok," Robert of Brunne.

[2] *Escoz jekes les Trinitez*, C. D.

[3] *fayne*, D.

[4] *luxurye*, D.

[5] *e des*, C. D.

[6] *Al fet e al consaille*, C. *Au fet et al counsaylle*, D.

[7] *Al matyn e al vespre*, C. D.

[8] *de enemistez*, C. D.

[9] *desertz, tost les*, C. D.

[10] *des teres*, C. D.

[11] *En tere Cristien*, C. *En tere Cristiene*, D.

[12] *Pur quai*, C. D.

[13] *nostre reis Edward eust fet la*, C. D.

[14] *cum avoyt*, D.

[15] This line is omitted in D.

A poor little castle, called Caerlaverok,
King Edward takes, no soul found in it,
Except ribalds who hold it, vanquished at the entrance.
Among these affairs, in form of friendship,
The king of France has asked king Edward
Peace for the Scots in the name of the Trinity.
In the year after following he has granted him the truce,
And king Edward is returned to London.

Idleness and fained delay, and long morning's sleep,
Delight in luxury, and surfeit in the evenings,
Trust in felons, compassion for enemies,
Self-will in act and counsel,
To retain conquest without giving distributions of gain,
Overthrew the Britons in old times.
We may take example of Arthur the wise;
He was always the first in all his expeditions
In morning and in evening, with great magnanimity;
Felons in company, and hostile people,
According to their desert, he condemned them all.
He was temperate in deed and in counsel;
A prince more courteous in conquering lands
Was never born among Christians.
Wherefore I tell you, listen to the reason,
If our king had performed the perambulations
Through England, as he had granted
And strengthened by writing, as is well witnessed,

E de la tere d'Escoce partiz e donez[1]
A ses barons Engleis, par droite quantitez,
La tere de pité scà fust[2] en ses poestez,
E pardurablement les soens[3] heritez.
La fin de ceste guere par fet après[4] orrez.]

Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo.[5]

A parliament at Lincoln.

A la Pasche après ly rays fist assembler
A Nichol sur Wyme[6] soen parlement enter,
De countes et barouns,[7] de prelaz du muster,
Ke al jour donez i venent[8] volunter,

Complaints of the parliament.

Et al Edward[9] se pleignent primer,
Coment la puralé[10] n'ad fet à soen dever;
Coment la graunt chartre que custa graunt aver,[11]
Ne sofre à tenir ne les poinz user;
Coment ses ministres wnt la tere waster
Par prises surfetuses, saunz monay payer;
Et sur ceo se pleygnent de soen tresorer,[12]
Ky parmy la tere les torz fet comaunder,
Et de jour en altre s'aforce à besturner[13]
Usages aunciens, et leys[14] de l'escheker.
Li prient en amur celuy remuer,
Et par comune assent un altre ordeyner,[15]

---

[1] *En la tere d'Escoce partiz est donez*, C. *Et la tere*, D.

[2] *La tere depesca fust*, C. D.

[3] *le soens*, C.

[4] *parfet pres*, C.

[5] This rubric is taken from B.

[6] *A Nichole sur Withme*, B. *A Nichole la bele cité son*, D.

[7] *Des countes e des barons*, B. D. *Des countes, des barons, des prelats*, C.

[8] *donez, venent*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[9] *au rei Edward*, B. C. *Kaunt sunt assemblez, se pleyment*, D.

[10] *puraylle*, C.

[11] Of this and the line following, D. makes one:—

" Ne de la grant chartre ne soffre
" les poynz user."

[12] Instead of this and the two following lines, D. gives:—

" Et de jour en altre coment son
" tresorer."

[13] *sa force bestourner*, B.

[14] *se afforce à bestourner*, D.

[15] *assigner*, B.

And of the land of Scotland had shared and given
To his English barons, by just quantities,
The land over there would have been in his power,
And his men heritors of it for ever.
The end of this war you will hear afterwards.

Anno Domini 1300.

At the Easter afterwards, the king caused to be assembled
At Lincoln on the Witham his entire parliament,
Of earls and barons, of prelates of the minster,
Who come willingly at the day appointed,
And to Edward first make their complaint
How he has not carried out the perambulation according to his duty;
How the great charter, which cost much money,
He suffers not to be held nor the points acted upon;
How his ministers go to ravage the land
By seizures for forfeit, without paying money;
And thereupon they complain of his treasurer,
Who through the land gives command for the wrongs,
And from day to day labours to overthrow
Old usages and the laws of the Exchequer.
They pray him in love to dismiss this man,
And by common assent appoint another,

Ky puse cel office salvement guyer.[1]

The king makes an angry reply.

Ly reys Edwarde respount[2] irusement de quer,
" Jeo vey ke par[3] orgoyl me voulez[4] reviler,
" Quant à si baas estat me pensez chacer ;
" N'i ad cil de vos ke n'ad byen[5] power,
" Saunz altri assent, soen ostel arayer,
" Bailifs et seneschals suz ly assigner,[6]
" Quels à soen pleysir il purra justizer.
" Ne hom deyt[7] segnur plus baas de ly bouter,
" Ne [jeo] sofrir le voyle[8] taunt cum day regner.
" Mès si mes ministres vus unt fet grever,
" La verité conue le tort frai amender,
" Ke de teles utrages mès ne orrez jangler.[9]
" La chartre de fraunchises et du puraler[10]
" Defrount ma corune, si jeo les day graunter ;
" Laquel ovoke moi vus devez supporter,[11]
" K'el ne sait blemye par prise ne par prier.
" Pur quai[12] jeo vus graunt le drait examiner
" Par xxvj.[13] descrez, que voisent[14] juger,[15]
" A vos peticiouns si purray encliner,
" Et salver la corune en taunt desmembrer.
" De altre part vus dye, jeo suy saunz dener,
" Dunt ayde de ma tere me covent aver,

A committee appointed to consider the complaints.

" Si la gwere d'Escoz day recomencer.
" Vus savez mes reysouns, [ore] alez ent parler."[16]
Ly clers et ly baroun wnt mayntenaunt trier ;
Les xxvj.[17] descrez, ke wnt cunseyler,

---

[1] This line is omitted in D.
[2] *respount* omitted in B.
[3] *vei par*, B.
[4] *me voillez*, C. D.
[5] *been*, C.
[6] *ordiner*, B.
[7] *homme ne dait*, C. D.
[8] *Ne jeo suffrir ne voil*, B. *Ne jeo suffrire*, C. D.
[9] This line is omitted in D.
[10] *de puraler*, B.
[11] This and the line following are omitted in D.
[12] *Par quei*, B. C. D.
[13] *Par xx. et vj.*, C.
[14] *voiser*, B.
[15] *joıer*, C. D.
[16] *ore alez parler*, B. *ore alez ent parler*, C.
[17] *Les vint et vj.*, C.

Who may be able to execute this office with safety.
King Edward replies with anger in his heart,
" I see that through pride you intend to insult me,
" When you think to drive me to so low condition ;
" There is not one of you who has not quite the
" power,
" Without assent of another, to arrange his household,
" To appoint bailiffs and stewards under him,
" Whom at his pleasure he will be able to judge.
" Nor ought any one to push a lord lower than himself,
" Nor will I suffer it as long as I am to reign.
" But if my officers have caused injury to you,
" When I know the truth I will cause the wrong to
" be amended,
" That you shall hear no more talk of such acts of
" violence.
" The charter of liberties and of the perambulation
" Will undo my crown, if I were to grant them ;
" Which you ought to join with me in supporting,
" That it be not damaged by taking by force or by
" prayer.
" Wherefore I grant you the right to examine
" By twenty-six discreet men, who will give judgment,
" If I can yield to your petitions,
" And save the crown in dismembering it so much.
" On another side, I say to you, I am without money,
" Of which I must have aid of my land,
" If I am to recommence the war of Scotland.
" You know my reasons, now go and discuss them."
The clergy and the barons go now to the discussion ;
The twenty-six discreet men, who go to consult,

Tretent sur les choses,[1] eschuent de l'errer,[2]
K'em les puse[3] après faymentuz[4] apeler ;[5]
De si graunt serment se voulent descharger,
Remaundent al reys, " Sir, n'est paas maner[6]
Their reply to the king. " A rey[7] ne à prince covenaunt tregeter,
" Ne mettre en agarde[8] chose vendu cher ;
" Plus bel te serrait toen pople avauncer
" Par ta curtaysie, ke par arbitrer,
" Ou par agarde de cil ke n'est paas toen peer ;[9]
" Rend ceo[10] ke tu dais, et hom te dait amer,
" Et cum segnur lige servir et honurer,
" Et de tes ennemys ayder à venger."[11]
Li rays covertement[12] respouns les fet arer,
Cum cil ke n'ad talent ses genz du soen[13] eser,
Ne eus luy verrayment par doun ne par tayler,
Mès wnt en partyes cuntre desputer
Tuz ses demaundes,[14] saunz nul alower.
Des altercaciouns taunt dure fu l'endurer,
De pees ou de la gwere le pople fu en wer,
Mès Deus i mist counsayle, ky pout kaunt volt ayder,[15]
The king yields, and obtains taxes. Et taunt i mist[16] de grace, ke tuz wnt acorder,
Après le saint Michel, à l'oes le rey lever
Le quinzim dener, pur byen afermer
La chartre de fraunchises[17] saunz ryen recoper,
Et pur la puralé certaynement bunder[18]

---

[1] *de sur les choses*, D.
[2] *eschuent le errer*, C.
[3] *pense*, C.
[4] *faymentz*, B.
[5] This line is omitted in D.
[6] *n'est pas mester*, C.
[7] *Al reis*, C. D.
[8] *en garde*, D.
[9] This line is omitted in D.
[10] *Rende sus qe*, D.
[11] *et venger*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.
[12] *courtement*, B.
[13] *de soen*, C.
[14] *ses damages*, B.
[15] This line is omitted in D.
[16] *tant mist*, B. *Mes Dieus fist taunt de grace*, D.
[17] *des fraunchises*, C. *La chartre et la puralé saunz rien recoper*, D., which omits the two following lines.
[18] Robert of Brunne has here,—
" And for the puralé, set with
" certeyn bounde,
" Thorgh the lond suld be de-
" laied no lengere stounde."

They treat on the things, avoid erring,
Lest they might be afterwards accused of disloyalty;
They desire to discharge themselves of so great an oath,
And return answer to the king: "Sir, it is not the "manner
"For a king or a prince to overthrow his covenant,
"Nor put in question a thing sold dear;
"It would be fairer in thee to advance thy people
"By thy courtesy, than by putting questions to arbi- "tration,
"Or to the judgment of him who is not thy peer;
"Repay that which thou owest, and we ought to love "thee,
"And serve and honour thee as a liege lord,
"And aid thee in taking vengeance of thy enemies."
The king covertly sends them back an answer,
As he who has no desire to ease his people with what is his,
Nor they truly him by gift or by tax;
But they go in parties to dispute against
All his demands, without allowing any.
It was so hard to bear the altercations,
That the people were in doubt between peace and war;
But God interposed his counsel, who can aid when he will,
And he threw so much of his grace into it, that all agree,
After Michaelmas, to raise for the king's use
The fifteenth penny, in exchange for well confirming
The charter of liberties without abating anything,
And for fixing exact bounds for the perambulation

Parmy la regioun, saunz nul esparnier;
A la[1] gwere d'Escoz s'acordent kaunt aler.[2]
The question of Gascony. Du contek de Gascoyn atendent[3] messager,
Le cunt de Nichol, ke fust utre mer,
[Le counte de Sauveie, et Hughe le Despenser,][4]
Sir Jhon de Berewike, trebyen avisé beer,
Ke lors furent à Rome la pape aresoner,
Ke saunz[5] plus demore voysent[6] declarer
Le drait de Gascoyn à ky dait demorer,
Proceedings of the pope in regard to it. Et par soen decré la pees pronuncier.
La pape Bonifaz oyoum nus cunter.
Les messagers[7] de Fraunce avaunt[8] ly fist maunder,
Ensint les Engleys, les[9] comencea precher,
" Em dit en vos deus teres sunt genz de graunt
" saver,
" Ke daivent par resoun lur reys confurmer,[10]
" Saunz nus ou nostre[11] curte en[12] taunt travayler;
" Returnez en vos teres, à vos reys nuncier,
" Ke par els s'acordent, si noun, par saint Peer,
" A la saint Andreu en venaunt le yver,
" Durroum la decré[13] od jugement taunt feer,
" Ke l'un et ly altre l'estuvera[14] douter." [15]
Les messagers repayrent, saunz plus reporter.[16]
Returnoum à la[17] geste, covent[18] recorder
La fyn du parlement, le[19] voylez escouter.

---

[1] *Pus à la*, D.
[2] *touz aler*, D.
[3] *attender*, B.
[4] This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. D.
[5] *Q'il sanz*, B. D.
[6] *vousist*, B. C. D.
[7] *messangers*, C.
[8] *devaunt*, C.
[9] *les* omitted in B.
[10] *confermer*, D. " And enforme " your kynges," Robert of Brunne.
[11] *et nostre*, C. D.
[12] *en* omitted in B.
[13] *Dirroms le deite*, B.
[14] *l'estrovera*, B. *l'estovera*, D.
[15] *doter*, C. D.
[16] *reparter*, B.
[17] *Reparnoum la geste*, C. *Reprenoums la geste*, D.
[18] *qe covent*, B.
[19] *le* omitted in B.

Through the kingdom, without sparing any one
And they agree to go to the war of Scotland.
Of the dispute about Gascony they wait messengers,
The earl of Lincoln, who was beyond sea,
The earl of Savoy, and Hugh le Despenser,
Sir John de Berwick, a very wise baron,
Who were then at Rome to argue with the pope,
That without more delay he would declare
To whom the right to Gascony ought to remain,
And by his decree pronounce peace.
Let us hear pope Boniface tell the case.
He sent for the messengers of France into his presence,
And likewise the English, began to preach them,
" They say in your two lands there are people of great
" knowledge,
" Who ought by reason to support their kings,
" Without giving so much trouble to us or our court;
" Return to your lands, announce to your kings,
" That they come to agreement of themselves, if not,
" by St. Peter,
" On St. Andrew's day, at the approach of winter,
" We will give the decree with judgment so solid,
" That one and the other must need respect it."
The messengers return, without further report.
Let us return to the history; we must record
The end of the parliament, be willing to listen to it.

King Edward gives the principality of Wales and the earldom of Chester to his eldest son.

Li reys sir Edeward, à ceo[1] parlement,
A soen fiz Edwarde dona playnement
La segnurye de Gales, saunz retenement,
La cunté de Cestre od l'apurteynement,
Et[2] Pountif et Mustroyle, od l'onur que apent.
Le fiz est prinz[3] et count, et les[4] homages prent;
Devers la gwere d'Escoz s'aprest[5] durement
Od xxx. mil de Galés,[6] saunz altre bone gent,
Countes et barouns, chevalers à talent,
Et venent à Kardoyle, od pavyloun et tent,[7]
Parlent et purveyent quele part et coment[8]

Invasion of Scotland.

Purrount la mere d'Escoz passer vers l'occident.
Ly reys Edwarde le per va vers l'orient,
Par Berewyke sur Tuede, où une[9] pece atent
Od sa chevalerye, et sunt de un asent
Voyder cele marche al comencement
Du faus lygnage d'Escoz dunt [sunt] tray[10] sovent.
Entre ces afers, par comaundement

The pope sends the bishop of Spoleto as his envoy.

La pape Bonifaz, sourveent sodaynement[11]
L'esveske de Spolete, od novel maundement;
Et par le rey de Fraunce un hom de covent,
Abbé de Cumpayne, ne [sai] pur quel[12] entent,
Ne pur quel message veritablement;[13]
Sur quai sur la geste reposer coveent,
Jekes la novele se leve overtement;
Ke hom ne puse dire ke ceste lettre ment.
Receu ad luy roys la[14] lettre de creance,
Et par ly[15] messagers entendu la sustance,

---

[1] *à cel*, C.
[2] *A Pountif*, B. *E Puntif e Moustroille*, C. *Moustroylle*, D.
[3] *Le fiz et prince et count*, D.
[4] *les* omitted in B.
[5] *se prent*, B.
[6] *de Galeis*, B.
[7] *à Kardoylle, se consayllent coment*, D.
[8] This line is omitted in D.
[9] *en une*, B.
[10] *dount sunt trahi*, B. C. D.
[11] *privément*, C.
[12] *de Compeigne, ne sai pur quel*, B. C.
[13] This line is omitted in B.
[14] *la* omitted in C.
[15] *Et ly*, D.

The king sir Edward, at that parliament,
Gave fully to his son Edward
The lordship of Wales, without reserve,
The county of Chester with its appurtenance,
And Pontivy and Montreuil, with the honour belonging.
The son is prince and earl, and takes the homages;
He prepares himself earnestly towards the war of Scotland
With thirty thousand Welshmen, besides other good men,
Earls and barons, knights at will,
And they come to Carlisle with pavilion and tent,
Talk and provide on which side and how
They shall be able to pass the sea of Scotland towards the west.
King Edward the father goes towards the east,
By way of Berwick-on-Tweed, where he waits a while
With his knights, and they are of one accord
To clear that march at the beginning
Of the false lineage of Scotland by whom they are often betrayed.
Amid these affairs, by command
Of pope Boniface, there arrives suddenly
The bishop of Spoleto, with new messages;
And from the king of France a man of convent,
The abbot of Compiegne, I know not nor for what purpose,
Nor for what message truly;
Wherefore we must remain quiet upon the history,
Until the news is made known openly,
That no one may say that this writing lies.

The king has received the letter of credit,
And by the messenger understood its substance;

Sa gwere vers Escoz[1] ad mis en suffrance,
A Lynliscou revent soen fiz sanz targance.
Ly roys sa pees[2] lors crie, l'Escotes est[3] en balance,
Cum avant fesait, demoert en sa tenance.

A truce concluded with France.

Ly roy repaire à Lundres, et tient ilokes parlance,
Où purveu est la trewe sur boen assurance
Jekes la saint Andreu, afermé par fiaunce.
Ceo fist le apostoile en sainte esperance,
Dedenz le tens de pees pur fere[4] l'acordance
Entre les deus roys d'Engleterre et Fraunce.
Desclos[5] vus ay le fet, ore oez la meschance
Avenue[6] est à Fraunce, et quel honurance
A Flandres est acreu par coup d'espey et lance,
Sur la fraude de Fraunce, la pompe, et la bobance;
Curtement à dire, escotez la venjance.

The earl of Flanders treacherously arrested in France.

Li quens Gwy de Flandres,[7] vers ky contencion
Ly rois de Fraunce avait par sudeyn acheison,
Vilement estoit trahy par Charlon,
Ky deveyt le cunte par convencion
Mener et remener en salvacion
Al parlement de Fraunce entre ly baron.
Le cunte, quant il vynt, pris fu[8] cum laron,
Et menez et mys en chartre cum felon.

The French take possession of Flanders.

Li roy Phelip de France,[9] après la traison,
Flandres fet seisir à sa subjeccion;
Gardeins des soens[10] i mette en terres et meyson,[11]
Des biens as riches homes funt[12] destruccion,
Lur femmes et lur filyes defulent à raundon.[13]

---

[1] *soutz Escoce*, B. *sur Escoz*, C. D.
[2] *la pes*, B.
[3] *est* omitted in C.
[4] *de fere*, B.
[5] *Descols*, B.
[6] *Qe avenuz*, B.
[7] *Wiliam de Flaundres*, B. *Guillam*, C. *Gyllam*, D.
[8] *fu pris*, B.
[9] *Philip rei de France*, B.
[10] *de soens*, C.
[11] *en tere e en meson*, B.
[12] *e fount*, B. *i fet destrucioun*, D.
[13] This line is omitted in D. Robert of Brunne makes two of it:—
"Defoules ther wyves, thar douh-
"tres lay bi,
"Ther lordes slouh with knyves,
"of fo had thei merci."

He has put in abeyance his war against Scotland ;
His son returns to Linlithgow without delay.
The king then proclaims his peace, the Scot is in balance ;
As he did before, he remains in his tenancy.
The king returns to London, and holds there conference,
In which a truce is arranged on good assurance
Until St. Andrew's day, confirmed by pledges.
That the pope did in holy hope
Within the time of peace to make accord
Between the two kings of England and France.
I have discovered to you the fact, now hear the mishap
Which is happened to France, and what honour
Is accrued to Flanders by stroke of sword and spear,
Over the fraud of France, the pomp, and the boasting ;
Shortly to tell it, listen to the vengeance.

Count Guy of Flanders, against whom contention
The king of France had by sudden cause,
Was shamefully betrayed by Charles,
Who was bound by agreement the count
To bring and take back in safety
To the parliament of France among the barons.
The count, when he came, was taken like a thief,
And carried and put in prison like a felon.
King Philip of France, after the treason,
Causes Flanders to be seized to his subjection ;
He places there wardens of his own in land and houses.
They make destruction of the goods of the rich men,
Violate their wives and daughters at will.

Insurrection of the Flemings, and destruction of the French army. Battle of Courtrai.

Les vilées en parlent, le pople environ
Enchacent les Franceys sanz remansion ;
Les uns i lessaient k'il portaient[1] en chaperon.
Ly roy Phelip l'out[2] dire, se purveit garnison
Flandres à destrure sanz redempcion.
L'ost s'aparaile, adresce gunfaynon,
Guyor i estoit ly quens d'Artoys[3] par non.
Cil fu le primer ke perdist l'escochon ;
Un rybald ly tuait sanz confession.[4]
Ly quens de Eu[5] perdist et test et talon,
Et li quens d'Aumarle membre[6] et menton.
Li sir Peres de Flote, Godefray de[7] Brabazon,
Li deus sires [de] Nele,[8] chevalers de renon,
Sire William de Fens,[9] ses parentz en son,
Les melz vanez de Fraunce par eleccion,[10]
Et banerez sanz numbre, des quels n'ay[11] mencion,
Morurent en l'estur, tumbanz[12] en sablon.
Li Henuer cheit cum oysele en lason.[13]
Normant ne Pikard, ne ly Burgeylon,[14]
Ne Vienais,[15] ne Bascle, ne Braban, ne Bretoun,
Ne[16] cele fiez ne altre, y avaint[17] fuson.
En chascune avenue puys la dissension,
Chaeu est sur France la confusion ;

---

[1] *qe portent*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[2] *l'oit dire*, B. C. D.

[3] *le quens Arthur*, B.

[4] *saunz confusioun*, C. Robert of Brunne translates *rybald* by *herlote* :—

" A foule herlote him slowe, trut
" for his renoun."

[5] *de Teu*, B. *Ly quens Eu*, D.

[6] *e membre*, B.

[7] *de* omitted in B. *le Brabazoun*, C.

[8] *de Nele*, B. *de Nel*, C. D.

[9] *de Fereres*, B. *de Feens*, C.

[10] *de Fraunce des quels n'ay mencioun*, D.

[11] *n'ad*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[12] *Morirent en l'estour cum bauz en sabloun*, D.

[13] *chait cum oiser en lascoun*, B. *chett cum oysel en lascoun*, C. *chaist cum oysel en lacoun*, D.

[14] *Burgilloun*, C. *Ne Normaund . . . ne ly Burgylloun*, D.

[15] *Ne Viens*, B. *Vieneis*, C. *Vienays*, D.

[16] *Ne* omitted in D.

[17] *ne autre n'aveient*, B.

The townships consult upon it, the people around
Drive out the French without any remaining;
Some left there what they carried in their hats.
King Philip hears tell of it, provides an army of occupation
To destroy Flanders without redemption.
The army is fitted out, raises its banners ;
The leader of it was the count of Artois by name.
He was the first who lost his escutcheon;
A ribald slew him without confession.
The count of Eu lost both head and heel,
And the count of Albemarle member and chin.
The lord Pierre de Flote, Godfrey de Brabazon,
The two lords de Nele, knights of renown,
Sir William de Fens, his kinsmen in fine,
The most renowned of France by election,
And bannerets without number, of whom I have no mention,
Died in the battle, falling on the sand.
The man of Henalt falls like a bird in a snare.
Of Norman, or Picard, or the Burgundian,
Or Viennese, or Basque, or Brabanter, or Breton,
Neither this time nor other, was there abundance.
In each occurrence since the dissension,
The defeat is fallen upon France;

Tant cum le secle dure en chascune region[1]
La hunte[2] ert pardurable, le fet en mokeyson
Al rey Phelip de France et à sa[3] nacion.
Cil ke Abacuc pust en la prison,[4]
Et salva Danyel du mors del lion,
Salve les Flemynges et lur accion,
Ke herité[5] ne perdent par extorsion.
Returnoums à la geste, reprenoums la lesson,[6]
A parler des Englais sanz fere mixciòn,
Fors ke la[7] matere demande par rayson.
Pur veir, en l'an millayne, cum nus[8] trovums escrit,
Et trecentime secunde, del nestre[9] Jhesu Crist,
Le cunte de Karrike[10] les Escoz werpist,
As gens le roy Edwarde de gré se rendist.
Marriage of Humphrey de Bohun with the king's daughter. Li quens Umfray de Boum[11] cel an[12] à femme prist
La filye al reys Edward, Elizabeth est dit.
Entre ces afers[13] cunsail s'en entremist[14]
Entre les deus roys ke gwere n'avenist,
The truce continued. Continuer la trewe, ke pees se tenist
Jeskes après la Pasche; Phelip sur ceo requist
Ke ly roys Edwarde en amur volsist
Conduyt parmy sa tere, sanz mal et sanz despit,[15]
Granter as Escoz, pur quels il transmist
Vers luy venyr en Fraunce, sire Edward assentist;[16]
Et pur perile eschure tost après purvist

---

[1] This and the following line are omitted in D.
[2] *La honure*, C.
[3] *Et al rey Phelipp et sa*, D.
[4] This and the three following lines are omitted in D.
[5] *heritage*, B.
[6] For these two lines, D. has one:—
Recoroms à la geste saunz fere mixtioun.
[7] *de la*, B.
[8] *millisme, cum nous*, B. D.
[9] *nostre sire*, B.
[10] *de Karryl*, C.
[11] *Umfrei de Boun*, B. C. *Oumfroy de Bounc*, D.
[12] *à cel an*, C.
[13] *ces dous afferes*, B.
[14] *s'entremist*, D.
[15] *respit*, C.
[16] *ensentist*, C.

As long as the world lasts in each kingdom
The shame is lasting, the fact in mockery
Of king Philip of France and of his nation.
May He who sustained Abacuc in prison,
And saved Daniel from the bite of the lion,
Save the Flemings and their action,
That they lose not their heritage by extortion.
Let us return to the history, let us resume the lesson,
To speak of the English without making mixture,
Except so far as the matter reasonably demands.

In truth, in the year a thousand, as we find written,
And three hundred and two, from the birth of Jesus Christ,
The earl of Carrick deserted the Scots,
He willingly surrendered himself to the people of king Edward.
The earl Humfrey de Bohun that year took to wife
The daughter of king Edward, Elizabeth is she called.
Amid these affairs counsel interfered
Between the two kings that war should not happen,
To continue the truce, so that peace should be preserved
Until after Easter; Philip thereupon requires
That king Edward would in love
A conduct through his land, without evil and without ill-feeling,
Grant to the Scots, for whom he sent
To come to him in France, and sir Edward assented;
And to avoid danger immediately afterwards provides

Ke Johan de Hastyn,[1] chevaler elit,
Emery de la Brette,[2] baroun ne pas [3] petyt,
Alaynt en Gascoyne tost [4] sanz cuntredit,
Pur le terme atendre del trewe avandit.[5]
The Scots rise again. Nus Englais crioums laschesce [6] sait maldite;
Kar kant à melz [7] ferir plus avums delit,
Deshonur nus vyent et piert [8] pur respit.
Jeo parle pur l'Escot [9] ke l'autrere assaylist
Nos Englays en Escoz par asaut subit;
Sire Jhon de Segrave à la fute se mist,[10]
Soen fiz et soen frere, après lever du lyt,
Et chevalers seze desgarnyz,[11] susprist,
Serjaunz jeskes à trent, dunt chascun se rendit;
Sire Thomas de Nevyl chevaler i occist,
Death of Ralph the Cofferer. Et Ralf ly Cofrers, ke grant aver tendist
A Symund Frisel ke là ne moresist.
Fresel ly regarde, Fresel ly redist,[12]
" Tu as le roy trahy ke tresorer te fist,
" Et moi et mulz des altres, dunt nes un est quit [13]
" Des gages ke tu dait [14] par tayle et par escrit;
" Ore es-tu cy trové sanz albe et sans amyt,[15]
" En hauberke de fere, ke n'est pas habit
" As clers [16] de sainte eglise par kanke chant et lit;
" Tu averas jugement solum toen merit." [17]

---

[1] *Johan de Hastinges*, B. *sire Johan de Hastinges*, C. *Jon de Hastinges*, D.

[2] *Emeri de Brette*, B.

[3] *noun pas*, B.

[4] *tut*, B.

[5] *de treu avaunt dit*, B.

[6] *l'eschele*, C.

[7] *al melz*, D.

[8] *pert*, C. D.

[9] The scribe of C. has skipped from this word to the word *Escoz* in the next line, and omitted the words which intervene.

[10] *Segrave son chemin reprist*, B. C. D. " The Segrave myght not " stand, sir John tok the gayn " stie," Robert of Brunne.

[11] *Chivalers sezze des granz*, B. *chevalers ces*, C. *ceez*, D.

[12] *rendist*, B.

[13] This and the following line are transposed in D.

[14] *daies*, C.

[15] *saunz aube ou amyt*, D.

[16] *A clerk*, C.

[17] This and the two following lines are omitted in C.

That John de Hastings, a knight of choice,
And Emery de la Brette, no little baron,
Should go into Gascony immediately without contradiction,
To wait the term of the aforesaid truce.
We English believe that negligence is accursed;
For when we have most pleasure in striking well,
Dishonour comes upon us and loss by delay.
I speak for the Scot who the other day attacked
Our English in Scotland by a sudden onset;
Sir John de Segrave took to flight,
His son and his brother, after rising from bed,
And sixteen knights undressed, [the Scot] took by surprise,
Sergeants as many as thirty, of whom all surrendered;
He there slew sir Thomas de Nevile, knight,
And Ralph the cofferer, who offered much money
To Simon Fresel that he should not die there.
Fresel looks at him, Fresel replies to him,
" Thou hast betrayed the king who made thee treasurer,
" And me and many others, of whom not one is acquitted
" Of the wages which thou owest by reckoning and by writing;
" Now art thou found here without alb and without amice,
" In hauberk of iron, which is not a habit
" For clergy of holy church in which he chants and reads;
" Thou shalt have judgment according to thy merit."

Ly rybaud des prez, ke tant tresoyst,[1]
Ly chaitif coferer maintenan[t] [2] saisyst,
Les meyns luy cospeit,[3] la teste ly partist;
A tel feor de guere cungé des armes prist.

Quarrel between the king of France and the pope.

Entre ces aferes graunt controversye
Entre luy rey de Fraunce, sire de Seynt Dinye,
Et Boniface la pape, s'en[4] leva par hatye.
Luy roys vers l'apostoylle surmist heresye,
Pecché sodomyen, usure,[5] et simonye,
Errour et mescreaunce en ydolatrye,[6]
Ravine de seynte eglise, fraude, et bugerie,
Moryne pardurable de alme com de vye.
De tele mescreaunce Phelippe la pape escrye;
Pecché plus orrible, ne greygnur vileynie,
De chef de seynte eglise fut unkes mès oye.
Boniface s'avise par sen et par clergye;

The quarrel temporarily appeased.

Maunder fet les mestres de theologye,
Cil parlent et purveyent la noyse seyt sopye,
Et ke luy rey Phelippe sur ceo se[7] chastye,
Et face les amendes de sa reverye
A Deu et seynte eglise; si noun, la pape otrie
Ke pur la mesprise Fraunce seyt honye
Par comune entredit et par croyserye,
Com terre renayé, la quele Deu defye.
En temps après orrez fyn de la folye;
Repayroms à la geste, ke ele ne seit ublie.

---

[1] *de près qi tant tresdit*, B. This line is omitted in D. Robert of Brunne has here,—

" A boye fulle pautenere he had
" a suerd that bote,
" He stirte unto the cofrere, his
" handes first of smote,
" And fro the body his heved a
" dynt than did the cleve,
" His werrying so he leved, at
" armes he tok leve."

Le cofrere un ribaud maintenant, D.

[3] *li coupeit*, B. C. *copait*, D.

[4] *s'en* omitted in B. *se leva*, C. D.

[5] *user*, C.

[6] " Errid mislyving, haunted Ma-
" humetrie,
" Wastid kirkis thing, and lyved
" in bugerie,
" And was worthi to schende
" bothe soule and lyf." Robert of Brunne.

[7] *soit*, B. *seit*, C. *sait*, D.

A ribald near at hand, who heard it all so well,
Now seized the wretched cofferer,
Cut off his hands, his head departed from him;
By such manner of war he took leave of arms.

Amidst these affairs, great quarrel
Between the king of France, lord of St. Denis,
And Boniface the pope, arose through hastiness of temper.
The king laid to the charge of the pope heresy,
The sin of Sodom, usury, and simony,
Error and misbelief in idolatry,
Robbery of holy church, fraud, and heretical tenets,
Fatal for ever to soul as well as to life.
Of such misbelief Philip accuses the pope;
Crime more horrible, or greater disgrace,
Was never heard of the head of holy church.
Boniface takes counsel by wisdom and by clergy;
Causes to be assembled the masters in theology,
These talk and provide that the quarrel be appeased,
And that king Philip correct himself in that,
And make amends for his offence
To God and holy church; if not, the pope grants
That for the error France be punished
By common interdict and by crusade,
As land renegate, which sets God at defiance.
In time afterwards you will hear the end of this madness;
Let us return to the history, that it be not forgotten.

Anno Domini M°. CCC°. *tertio.*

Edward leads his army into Scotland.

En les estez[1] après, sauntz plus demorer,
Luy reys sire Edward Escoz va waster;
Par loement des uns, avaunt fist carpenter
Nefs, batels, et barges, des clayes traverser,[2]
A foer[3] de pount, par chaunce mès i[4] n'avait mester,
Passez est la rive[5] sauntz nef et mariner.
L'Escot le vait venir, li tourn soen derer,
Vers mores et monteyns refuaunt[6] com ler.
Ly reys en parties son host fet tayller;
Les uns des barouns, le count de Hulvester,
Vount vers le occident la tere despuyller;
Ly reys vers le orient entreprent soen aler.
Hameletz et viles, graunges et gerner,
Et pleynes et voydes, par tut fet arder;
Ausi fet le prince, sauntz reen[7] esparnier.

Advances farther north than any king before him.

Ly reys si loynce en north va l'Escot chacer,
Où unkes reys[8] Engleis avaunt portait baner.[9]
Les foreyns des ylles en oyent[10] parler,
Les countes enzaynes[11] en vount conseyller,
Se rendent à la pees, et[12] vount al rey jurer
Ke leals li serrount par tere et par mer.
Le temps après se chaunge, et survent le yver;
A Dounfermelyn ly reys va reposer.
La rayne i veent, li reys la fist maunder.
Ly sire de Badenaghe s'en va gupyller,[13]

---

[1] *l'esté*, B.
[2] *transverser*, B.
[3] *Al foer*, C.
[4] *il*, B. C. D.
[5] *la mer*, B.
[6] *deffuant*, B.
[7] *nul*, B.
[8] *reys* omitted in C. D.
[9] *Engleis ne porta baner*, B. Robert of Brunne adds,
" Save kyng Athelstan, that
" wastid alle Catenesse."
[10] *des viles en oiount*, B.
[11] *e maynes*, B. The word in the text is unknown to me.
[12] *et* omitted in D.
[13] *gopiller*, D. Robert of Brunne translates these lines as follows :—
" The lord of Badenauh, Freselle,
" and Waleis,
" Lyved at theves lauh, ever
" robband alle weis.
" Thei had no sustenance the
" werre to mayntene,
" Bot skulked opon chance, and
" robbed ay bituene."

Anno Domini 1303.

In the summer after, without more delaying,
The king sir Edward goes to lay Scotland waste ;
By the advice of some, he first causes to be built of timber
Ships, boats, and barges, and crossed with hurdles,
In manner of a bridge, by chance there was no need of it,
The shore is passed without ship and mariner.
The Scot sees him come, turns his behind upon him,
Flying back towards moors and mountains like a thief.
The king causes his army to be divided in parts :
Some of the barons, with the earl of Ulster,
Go towards the west to despoil the land ;
The king undertakes his expedition towards the east.
Hamlets and towns, granges and barns,
Both full and empty, he burns everywhere ;
So does the prince, without sparing anything.
The king goes so far to the north pursuing the Scot,
Where never English king carried banner before.
The aliens of the isles hear talk of it,
Their earls go to hold counsel on it,
They submit to peace, and go to the king to swear
That they will be loyal to him by land and by sea.
The weather afterwards changes, and winter comes on ;
The king goes to take rest at Dumfermlin.
The queen comes thither, the king causes her to be sent for.
The lord of Badenagh goes skulking about,

Fresel et Walays ove li vount rober.
Desore n'i ont ke frire, ne boiver,[1] ne manger,
Ne poer à rester dount guer governer;
Venuz sunt au reys de sa pees prier.
Ly reys sur la demaunde les fet ajourner,
Dount durement me doute ke curteysye de quer
Nous fra la nove[2] sause pire du primer.
Afiaunce en feloun[3] poet nul home aver.

Quarrel between pope Boniface and the Colonnas.

Ore oyez[4] coment, en l'an avaunt dit,
A nostre apostoylle fu fet graunt despit[5]
Par les Columnyns, du lyn de Rome elit
Cardinals estayent, ne say par que merit.
La pape les hostayt[6] et privait de l'habit;
Lour teres destruait, lour chastels abatit,
Lour dignités donait, en exylle les mist.
La parenté fu graunt, g[r]evé[7] se sentit,
As altres en Cezylle alaynt saunz respit;
Phelippe rey de Fraunce aide les tramist.
Cil alaint vers Anayne, où Boniface nasquit;
La cité entraynt, ly citayne assentit.
Li Columnyne[8] pur veyr ilok la pape prist,
Et son tresor tut meyntenaunt seysist.

Death of pope Boniface.

La pape sauntz viaund fu ij. jurs en subit;
Par aide survenaunt le terce jour issist;
De tut le graunt tresor k'en son temps conquist
Ne aveit plus ke Jop[9] ou femer kaunt i[l] sist.[10]
La soume de l'aver ke Boniface perdist,
Ne combeen arer homme ly rendist,
Ne de feez de coust uncore ne fu parfist;

---

[1] *Des n'ount ke frire, ne boire,* B. *Des ore ne out qe fere ne beyver,* C.
[2] *novel,* C.
[3] *en felounye,* C.
[4] *oyez,* omitted in B.
[5] *fet par despit,* B.
[6] *ousteit,* B.
[7] *e grevé,* B. *grevé,* C. D.
[8] *Columpne,* B. *Columpnyne,* C. *Columyne,* D.
[9] *qe Job,* B. C. D.
[10] *quant il sist,* B. C. *en femer quant il sist,* D.

Fresel and Wallace go with him robbing.
Henceforth they have nothing to fry, or drink, or eat,
Nor power remaining wherewith to manage war;
They are come to the king to solicit his peace.
The king on the demand gives them a day,
Whereby I fear me much that courtesy of heart
Will make for us the new sauce worse than the first.
Trust in a felon may no man have.

Now listen how, in the year beforesaid,
To our pope was done great despite
By the Colonnas, of the lineage of Rome elected
Cardinals they were, I know not by what merit.
The pope deposed them and deprived them of the habit;
Destroyed their lands, threw down their castles,
Gave their dignities away, sent them into exile.
Their kindred was large, felt itself aggrieved,
They went without delay to the others in Sicily;
Philip king of France sent them aid.
They went to Anagni, where Boniface was born;
They entered the city, the citizen joined them.
The Colonnas in truth captured there the pope,
And then seized the whole of his treasure.
The pope was two days in confinement without meat;
He got out on the third day through aid which arrived;
Of all the great treasure which he amassed in his time,
He had no more left than Job when he sat on the dunghill.
The sum of money which Boniface lost,
Nor how much they returned him back,
Nor of fees of cost, it was never known;

Mez conuz ai de veir affraé s'empartist
Maintenaunt vers Rome, où iij. jours vesquit,
Mortz i est sauntz faylle, et à Seynt Pere gist.[1]
Election of pope Benedict.
Bulle avoms novele, le noun Benet escrit,
Ke partye repele ke Boniface purvist.
Ly robers est asous avaunt ke taunt[2] mefist.
Molt est sors et fols[3] en Rome ke se fist.[4]
Pro quante[5] posse dare à graunt et à petit
Par fare et par defare[6] Rome nous derit.
Hola ! de choses par de ceà[7] daylle nous suffist.
Resoun nous rechace revertir à la gest,
Treter ove les Escoz[8] de peez saunz molest,
De William le Walays,[9] ki gist en la forest.
Wallace demands conditions of the king.
A Dounfermelyn, après la seynte feste
Du Nowel, par amys au reis ad fet request,
Ke rendre se puysse[10] à sa pees[11] honest,
Saunz en sa manaye[12] mettre cors ou test ;
Mès ke li reys ly graunt de doune, ne pas de prest,
Bayllye honurable de boyse et de[13] beste,
Et par son escrit li seys[14] et li vest
Pur li et pur ses heyrs en teres[15] de conquest.
Edward's anger.
Ly reys pur la demaunde irrez se tempest,
A maufé li comaund, et kaunt ke sur ly creste,[16]
Treys centz mars promet à homme ke ly detest.
Walays à fuyr tapisaunt se prest
En mores et[17] montaygnes, de roberie se pest.

---

[1] *e à Saint Pere i gist*, C.
[2] *assoutz qe tant avant*, B.
[3] *sotz e fous*, B. C. D.
[4] *qe ceo fist*, C. D.
[5] *Pur quanqe*, B.
[6] *e defare*, B.
[7] *Od la chose de cea*, B. *des choses par de sa*, C.
[8] *ove l'Escot*, D.
[9] *Wiliam Waleis*, B.
[10] *pense*, C.
[11] *à la pees*, D.
[12] *manye*, C. *maneye*, D.
[13] *ou de*, B.
[14] *saise*, C. D.
[15] *en tere*, C.
[16] This line is omitted in D.
[17] *en*, B. *e en*, D.

But I have learnt for truth that he went away terrified
Thereupon towards Rome, where he lived three days,
He is dead there without fail, and lies at St. Peter's.
We have a new bull, the name written Benedict,
Which repeals part of what Boniface provided.
The robber is absolved who before did so much wrong.
He is very foolish and mad who puts his trust in Rome.
For however much he may give to great and to little,
Rome mocks us by doing and undoing.
No more! we have sufficiently dwelt upon matters abroad.

Our subject compels us to return to the history,
To treating with the Scots for peace without molestation,
To William Wallace who lies in the forest.
At Dunfermlin, after the holy festival
Of Christmas, through friends he has made request to the king,
That he may submit to his honest peace,
Without surrendering into his hands body or head;
But that the king grant him, of his gift, not as a loan,
An honourable allowance of woods and cattle,
And by his writing the seisure and investment
For him and for his heirs in purchased land.
The king, angered at this demand, breaks into a rage,
Commends him to the devil, and all that grows on him,
Promises three hundred marks to the man who makes him headless.
Wallace makes ready to seek concealment by flight
Into moors and mountains, he lives by robbery.

Anno Domini MºCCCºIIIIº.

Terms on which the Scottish prisoners were liberated.

Ore oyez[1] la fourme ke ly reys otrye
De [pe]s à les Escoz[2] ke sunt en sa mercye,
Et ajournez estayent sur lour reverye,
Jugement receyver, ke nul le countredye.
Ly reys les[3] ad graunté par sa curtasye
Tere et tenement et membre et vie,
Sauve de tote partz[4] à sa genturye
Raunceoun de chescun solum sa folye.
Sire Symon Fresel, forpris en la partye,
En exylle est jugez pur sa felonye
En realme estraunge, où il n'i ait[5] amye.
Deus aunz i fra demore, la terce, si seit[6] en vye,
En pees repairira à sa manauntye.

Peace proclaimed.

En Quarreme après ceste afere finye,
Li reys à Seynt Andreu s'en va,[7] sa pees i crye.
L'eveske de Glascu il veent, of la[8] clergye[9]
Du realme d'Escoz,[10] et là chescun se lye
A la pees le rey, ly reys à ceo se plye,
Save les amendes à sa seygnurye,
Com serrount ordinez, saunz altre escaumpye,[11]
Par ly et la comune de sa[12] baronye.

De captione castri de Strivelin.[13]

Ly reys après la Paschek enprent[14] son aler,
Of sa chevalerye, Estrivelyn[15] asseger.

---

[1] *orrez*, B.
[2] *De pes as Escoz*, B. *De peez à les Escoz*, C. D.
[3] *les* omitted in B.
[4] *de tote parte*, C.
[5] *où n'i ait*, B. *où il ne ait*, C.
[6] *s'il seit*, B.
[7] *i va*, C.
[8] *i vient od sa*, B. *i vint ouf sa*, C. *i veent*, D.
[9] *crergye*, A.
[10] *des Escoce*, D.
[11] In place of this and the next line, D. has,—*Cum ordiné serra par ly et sa baronye.*
[12] *de la*, C.
[13] This rubric is found in B. C. D., but omitted in A.
[14] *prent*, D.
[15] *Strivelin*, B. *Estryvelyn*, C.

Anno Domini 1304.

Now hear the form which the king grants
Of peace to the Scots who are at his mercy,
And who were adjourned for their outrage,
To receive judgment, that no one find fault with it.
The king has granted them by his courtesy,
Land and domain and limb and life,
Except on all parts to his lordship
Ransom of each according to his folly.
Sir Simon Fresel, excepted in the party,
Is condemned to exile for his felony
Into a foreign kingdom, where he has no friend.
He shall make his dwelling there two years, the third, if he be alive,
He shall repair in peace to his lordship.
In Lent after this affair finished,
The king proceeds to St. Andrews, proclaims his peace there.
The bishop of Glasgow comes there, with the clergy
Of the realm of Scotland, and each binds himself
To the king's peace, the king yields to that,
Excepted the amends to his lordship,
As they shall be ordered, without other escape,
By him and the communalty of his barony.

Of the taking of the castle of Stirling.

The king after Easter takes his departure,
With his knighthood, to besiege Stirling.

Siege of Stirling castle.

Kaunt là sount venuz, le lu vount visiter,[1]
Et trez[2] graunz engines i fount adrescer.
Chevalers ij. avaint le chastel à garder,
Sire William Olifarde estait ly primer,
Sire William de Dypplyn ly altre oy[3] nomer,
Et xx. gentilshoms, saunz pages et porter,
Un frere Jacobyn, un moygne conseyller,
Et xiij. gentils femmes[4] of lour lavender;
Noun pluys des persones[5] i fount à noumbrer.
Une engine avaynt, le proferent[6] à getter,
La verge debrusait,[7] après ne pout aider.
Les engines defors[8] sunt mys al mester,
Et mures et turels les peers fount passer,
Les kirnels enviroun i fount trebucher,
Et mesouns dedence à tere cravaunter.

King Edward's great engine.

Entre ses aferes ly reys fet carpenter
Une engine orrible, et Ludgar apeler,[9]
Et cel à son hurtir crevant[10] le mur enter.
Treys mays et viij. jours,[11] en journez acounter,
Dura la tempest, dure fu l'endurer
A chaytifs[12] dedeynce, ke n'avaint à manger.
De nule part lour vint socour ne poer,
Par ount la pees le rey desirent molt aver;[13]

---

[1] *venuz sont la leu va v.*, C.

[2] *E trezze*, B. "Thrittene grete "engynes, of alle the reame the "best," Robert of Brunne.

[3] *oit*, B.

[4] A. has *homes*, erroneously repeated from the line just before. Robert of Brunne translates,—

"Ther was within thrittene may-
"dens and ladies,
"And no men to mene that felle
"to telle of pris."

Of course Robert of Brunne understood that the numbers given in the text only included the men of account, not the common fighting men.

[5] *Nent plus de persones*, B.

[6] *profrent*, C. *profrerent*, D.

[7] *La verge debrisoit*, B. "The "yerde brast in tuyn, to help mot "it not last," Robert of Brunne.

[8] *dehors*, B. C. *de force*, D.

[9] *e ludgare l'apeller*, B. Robert of Brunne has here,—

"The kyng did mak right yare
"an hidous engyn,
"The name thei cald Ludgare or
"Lurdare of Strivelyn."

[10] *creveit*, B. *creva*, C. *crevayt*, D.

[11] *e treis jours*, B.

[12] *As cheitifs*, B. C.

[13] This line is omitted in B.

When they are come there, they go and examine the
place,
And cause to be raised there thirteen great engines.
Two knights had the castle in ward,
Sir William Olifard was the first,
I heard the other named sir William of Dipplyn,
And twenty gentlemen, besides pages and porter,
A Jacobin friar, a monk as counsellor,
And thirteen gentlewomen with their laundress;
No more persons they numbered there.
They had an engine, and brought it out to cast;
The rod broke, afterwards it was of no use.
The engines without are put to work,
And cause the stones to pass walls and towers;
They overthrow the battlements around,
And throw down to the ground the houses inside.
In the midst of these doings the king causes to be
built of timber
A terrible engine, and to be called Ludgar;
And this at its stroke broke down the entire wall.
Three months and eight days, reckoning by days,
Lasted the storm; the endurance was hard
To wretches within, who had nothing to eat.
From no side came to them succour or power,
Wherefore they desire much to have the king's peace;

Par entreenveyez sovent le fount prier.
Ly reys lour demaund si toste ne voet graunter.
Taunt fust la trayne longe de la pees parler,
Ke jeo ne sey ne peus la maité[1] recorder;
Surrender of Stirling castle. Mès been ay entendu ke,[2] au paraler,
Le chastel fu rendu au rey à soen voler,
Issi ke cels dedeynz, chevaler, esquier,[3]
Et tretut li altre, saunz[4] covenaunt tayller,
Se mistrent en sa grace pitousement de quoer.
Le chastel est seysi, li rey fet ordiner
Gardayns parmy la tere le pople justicer;
En tere si destrute ne voet demorer,[5]
Repaire of la victoyre en Engletere arer.

Coment Strivelin fu rendu.[6]

En Septembre après Estrivelyn est rendu;
Ly reys[7] sir Edward ses travayls ad sentu,
Vers Brustewik sur Humbre son chemyn ad tenu,[8]
Sugiour une pece i prist pur sa salu.
Death of earl John de Warenne. Sire Jon de Warenne,[9] count been conu,
Mortz fu lors, et prest à mett[r]e[10] en sarcu.
Ly reys, ke Deu garde! en alaunt vers le su
Parmy Lendesey,[11] enquist de lu en lu,
Taunt com en Escoz en sa guere fu,
Ky ont sa pees enfraynt, ki ont sa pees tenu;[12]
Pur taunt com il volait[13] remede fu purveu
Sur cil ke fust ataynt de sa pees rumpu.

---

[1] *ne pusse la meité*, B. C. D.
[2] The words *ke au p. Le ch. fu rendu*, are omitted in B.
[3] *e esquier*, B.
[4] *E trestouz les autres fount*, C. D.
[5] This line is omitted in D.
[6] This rubric is found only in B.
[7] *Au rei*, B.
[8] *en son chemin est meu*, B. C. *est mu*, D.
[9] *de Guarenne*, B. *de Garemme*, D.
[10] *mettre*, B. C. D.
[11] *Parmi de Lindeseie*, B.
[12] *e qi l'ount tenu*, B.
[13] *Par tant cum avoleit*, B. *Par taunt*, C.

By intermessengers they often solicit him.
The king sends them word that he will not grant it so soon.
So long the conference for peace dragged out,
That I know not nor can I record the half of it;
But I have heard well that, in the sequel,
The castle was surrendered to the king at his will,
So that those within, knight, squire,
And all the others, without making conditions,
Put themselves in his pardon with piteousness of heart.
The castle is taken possession of; the king causes to be appointed
Wardens throughout the land to judge the people;
He will not dwell in a land so wasted,
Returns with victory back into England.

How Stirling was surrendered.

In September following, Stirling is surrendered;
The king sir Edward has felt his labours.
He has taken his way towards Brustwick-on-Humber;
Takes there his sojourn a while for his health.
Sir John de Warenne, an earl well known,
Was then dead, and ready to put in his coffin.
The king, whom God preserve! in going towards the south
Through Lindsey, inquires from place to place,
While he was in his war in Scotland,
Who have broken his peace, who have held his peace;
In order that according to his will remedy might be provided
For him who was convicted of his peace broken.

The Trailbastons, and their turbulent proceedings.

Respouns ount fet au reys gentz de been[1] voyllance,
Coment parmy la tere fet est[2] graunt grevaunce
Par comune contekours, ke sunt par fiaunce
Obligez ensemble à une purviaunce;
Traylbastouns sunt nomez de cel retenaunce.
En fayres et marchez[3] se proferent[4] fere covenaunce,
Pur treys souz ou iiij.,[5] ou pur la valiaunce,
Batre un prodomme ke unk fist nosaunce[6]
A cors Cristiene, par nuli temoygnaunce.[7]
Si homme countredye à nul de l'aliaunce,
Ou marchaund de ses merz li vee fere creaunce,[8]
En sa mesoun demene, sauntz altre daliaunce,
Batuz serrait been, ou pur l'acordaunce
Dora de ses deners, et prendre[9] aquitaunce.
Si en la riot ne seit[10] fet desturbaunce,
Une commune guere se levera par chaunce.
Entendu ad ly reys la plaint et la parlaunce;
Escutez ore coment purveu est la vengaunce.

Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo quinto.[11]

Punishment of the Trailbastons.

Parmy Engletere gentz de graunz resouns
Assignez sunt justizes sur les traylbastouns.
Les uns par enquest sunt jugez à prisouns,
Li altre[12] alez à fourches à pendre envirouns;
Plusours sunt privez de possessiouns;[13]
Ke meyns mesfesaynt sunt passez par raunsouns.
Si chastiment ne fust de ribaldes et bricouns,[14]

---

[1] *de bon*, B.
[2] *est fet*, C.
[3] *e en marchez*, B.
[4] *profrent*, C. *profrerent*, D.
[5] *ou pur iiij.*, C. "Thei profere "a man to bete for tuo schilynges "or thre," Robert of Brunne.
[6] *qe unqes ne fist nusance*, B. C.
[7] This line is omitted in D.
[8] *li vee de creance*, B. *les vee*, D.
[9] *e prendra*, B.
[10] *la riote sait*, C.
[11] This rubric is taken from B. and D.
[12] *Les altres*, C.
[13] *de lour p.*, B. *des possessiouns*, D.
[14] *des ribaus e b.*, B.

People of good will have made reply to the king,
How throughout the land is made a great grievance
By common quarrellers, who are by oath
Bound together to a compact;
Those of that company are named Trailbastons.
In fairs and markets they offer themselves to make an engagement,
For three shillings or four, or for the worth,
To beat a freeman who never did injury
To Christian body, by any evidence.
If a man offends any one of the confederacy,
Or a merchant refuses to give him credit with his wares,
In his own house, without other dealing,
He should be well beaten, or to make it up
He shall give of his money, and take acquittance.
If there be not some stop put to this turbulence,
A war of the commons will arise by chance.
The king has heard the complaint and the talk;
Now hear how the vengeance is provided.

Anno Domini 1305.

Through England people of great judgment
Are appointed judges upon the Trailbastons.
Some by trial are condemned to imprisonment,
Others gone to hang about on gallows;
Several are deprived of their property;
Who offended least are allowed to escape by fines.
If there were no chastisement of ribalds and rogues,

Osé ne serrait homme vivre en mesouns.
O cum Deus est bons de drayturels[1] guerdouns!
Ke taunt sovent nous ad vengé de felouns.
Novel avoms oy, entre[2] compaygnouns,
Capture and execution of William Wallace.
De William le Walays,[3] mestre de larouns;[4]
Sir Jon de Menetest li suist à talouns,
En près[5] de sa puteyne li prist en tapisouns;
A Loundres le menait en ferges et laççouns,[6]
Où jugez esteit sur cels condiciouns,
En primer à fourches[7] fut treyné pur tresouns,
Pendu pur roberyes et pur occisiouns,
Et pur ceo k'il avait ennenty[8] par arsouns
Viles et eglises et religiouns,
Avalez est de fourches,[9] et overt les ventrouns,
Le quoer et la bowel brullez en carbouns,
Et copé la teste par tels mesprisiouns,
Pur ceo ke il avait par ces havyllouns
Maintenuz la guere, doné proteccions,
Seysye seygnurye[10] en ses subjeccions
De altri realme par ses entrusiouns.
Copé li fust le cors en quatre porciouns;
Chescun pende par say, en memor de ses nouns,
En lu de sa banere[11] cels sunt ces[12] gunfanouns.

---

[1] *est draiturels e de bone g.*, C. This and the line following are omitted in D.

[2] *A cel tens la novele entre*, D.

[3] *Wiliam Waleis*, B. D.

[4] *des barouns*, C. *des larouns*, D.

[5] *S'emprès*, B. Robert of Brunne has made the following additions here:—

" He tok him whan he wend lest,
" on nyght his leman bi.
" That was thorght treson of
" Jak Schort, his man,
" He was the encheson that sir
" Jon so him nam.
" Jak brother had he slayn, the
" Waleis that is said,
" The more Jak was fayn to do
" William that braid."

[6] *e lasçouns*, C. *laçouns*, D.

[7] *as furches*, C.

[8] *anenti*, B.

[9] *des fourches*, B. C.

[10] *seignurs*, C.

[11] *de banere*, B.

[12] *les*, C.

A man would not dare to live in house.
O how God is good in his righteous rewards!
Who so often has revenged us on felons.
We have heard news, among companions,
Of William Wallace, the master of thieves;
Sir John de Meneteith followed him at his heels,
Took him in hiding by the side of his concubine;
Carried him to London in shackles and bonds,
Where he was judged on the following conditions:
In the first place to the gallows he was drawn for treasons,
Hanged for robberies and slaughters;
And because he had annihilated by burnings,
Towns and churches and monasteries,
He is taken down from the gallows, his belly opened,
His heart and his bowels burnt to cinders,
And his head cut off for such treasons as follow:
Because he had by his assumptions of authority
Maintained the war, given protections,
Seized into his subjection the lordship
Of another's kingdom by his usurpations.
His body was cut into four parts;
Each one hangs by itself, in memory of his name,
In place of his banner these are his gonfanons.

Popular verses on Wallace.

Pur finir sa geste,
A Loundres est sa teste,[1]
Du cors est fet[2] partye
En iiij. bones viles,
Dount honurer les ylles
Ke sunt en Albanye.
And tus may you here[3]
A ladde to lere[4]
To bigken[5] in pais;
It falles in his eghe[6]
That hackes ovre heghe,[7]
Wit at Walays.[8]
Par la morte[9] Walays poet home remembrer
Quel gwerdoun apent à traitour et à ler,[10]
Et pur divers trespas quel divers lower.

Murder of John Comyn by Bruce.

Du quens[11] Robert de Breus nous estoet counter,
En Quarem après coment il fist prier
Luy sire de Badenaghe[12] venir ove luy parler,

---

[1] *en sa teste* B. In Robert of Brunne's translation, the six French lines of rhyme *cowée* are expanded into twelve, as follows:—

" At London is his heved,
" His quarters ere leved,
" In Scotland spred,
" To wirschip ther iles,
" And lere of his wiles,
" How wele that he sped.
" It is not to drede,
" Traytour salle spede
" Als he is worthi;
" His lif salle he tyne,
" And die thorgh pyne,
" Withouten merci."

[2] *au cors fet*, B. *de cors*, C.

[3] *And thus mai men here*, B. *And*, omitted in Robert of Brunne, who reads, *may men*.

[4] *forto lere*, Robert of Brunne.

[5] *biggin*, B. *biggen*, C., and Robert of Brunne.

[6] *iȝe*, B., and Robert of Brunne.

[7] *hakkis over hie*, B. *hagges over heghe*, C. *hewes over hie*, Robert of Brunne.

[8] *With that Waleis*, B. *With the Walays*, Robert of Brunne.

[9] *Pur la mort*, B.

[10] *e ler*, B.

[11] *Du quel*, B.

[12] *de Banagh*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this,—

" Now of kyng Roberd to telle
" ȝow his trespas,
" Als Lententide com in Cristen
" mans lauh,
" He sent for Jon Comyn, the
" lord of Badenauh,
" To Dounfres suld he come,
" unto the Minours kirke,
" A spekyng ther thei nome, the
" Comyn wild not wirke
" Ne do after the sawe of Roberd
" the Brus.

To finish his history,
His head is at London,
  Of the body is made partition
In four good towns,
Wherewith to honour the isles
  Which are in Albany.
And thus may you hear
To teach a lad
  To build in peace;
It falls in his eye,
Who hacks over high,
  Take example of Wallace.

By the death of Wallace may one bear in mind
What reward belongs to traitor and to thief,
And what divers wages to divers trespasses.
Of earl Robert de Brus we must now relate,
In the Lent following how he invited
The lord of Badenagh to come and talk with him,

A Dounfrès en l'eglise du frere Cordeler;
Où luy quens Robert, suppoaunt sur l'auter,
Tua le Badenagh par feloni de quoer,
Pur taunt[1] com il ne vout à luy[2] acorder
Sur le reys Edward la gwere susciter,
Bruce proclaims himself king of Scotland.
Et par coup d'espeye le regne desrener
Pur luy, qe lors se dist iloqes de dreit regner.[3]
Après la felonye, saunz gweres demorer,
Un sé novel à Scone fist reparayller;
Et la[4] gerlaund i prist qe reys solait porter,
En signe de seygnurye, à son encorouner.[5]
Mayntenaunt après par tut fist crier,[6]
Citez, burgs, et viles des Engleys voyder.
Eveqes deus estoyent primaz al dubber,[7]
Ove l'abbé de Scone, qe puys l'achata cher,
Countes et barouns, chivaler et esquier,[8]
Du realme d'Escoce estoyent conseyller,
Jurez en eyde al Brus par terre et par mer,
Les nouns orrez après en parlaunt du vengeer.
Luy Brus s'en va cum roys ses gweres ordiner.
The earl of Pembroke sent against him.
Luy roys Edward l'oit dire, i maund[9] sir Emer,[10]
Counte de Penebrok, le fol à refrener.
Des barouns Engleys le fet associer,
Ke bieu ount, mercy Deus! par là fet lour dever.

" Away he gan him drawe his
" conseil to refus.
" Roberd with a knyve the
" Comyn ther he smote,
" Thorgh whilk wounde his lyve
" he lost, wele I wote.
" He ȝede to the hie autere, and
" stode and restid him thore;
" Com Roberdes squiere, and
" wonded him wele more."

[1] *Par tant*, B. C.

[2] *ouf ly*, C.

[3] *iloqe dreit regner*, D.

[4] *sa*, D.

[5] *à sa coroner*, B. This line is omitted in D.

[6] This line is omitted in B. *E mayntenaunt*, D.

[7] *à dubber*, C. *au dubber*, D.

[8] *chivaler, esquier*, D.

[9] *e maunde*, C.

[10] *sire Eymer*, B.

At Dumfries in the church of the Friars Minors;
Where earl Robert, leaning upon the altar,
Slew the Badenagh through felony of heart,
Because he would not agree with him
To raise war against king Edward,
And by dint of sword obtain the kingdom
For him, who then said he was the right king.
After the felony, without remaining long,
He caused to be re-erected a new seat at Scone,
And he took there the garland which the king used to wear,
In sign of lordship, at his coronation.
Now after he caused everywhere to be proclaimed
To voyd cities, boroughs, and towns of the English.
Two bishops were primates at the investment,
With the abbot of Scone, who afterwards paid it dear,
Earls and barons, knights and squires,
Were councillors of the kingdom of Scotland,
Sworn to aid the Bruce by land and by sea,
Their names you will hear afterwards in talking of the vengeance.
The Bruce goes as king to order his wars.
King Edward hears tell of it, sends thither sir Aymer,
Earl of Pembroke, to check the madman.
He causes him to be accompanied with English barons,
Who, thank God! have done their duty well over there.

Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo vj°.[1]

Après la feste de Pasche en l'an desouz tochez,
Sa feste de Pentecost ad luy rey maundez
Tenir a Westmoustre, ove clers et ove barnez,
The prince of Wales knighted. Où, ove graunt noblaye, à son fiz aynez,
Edward prince de Gales, les armes ad donez.
Treys centz pur veir[2] chivalers acountez
A couz[3] le reys Edwarde estaynt adubbez.
Noble marriages at the great feast of Whitsuntide at Westminster. Plusours de[s] plus nobles i furent mariez.
Luy quens de Warenne, en ses noveltez,
Esposa la fylle luy quens de Bars nomez.
Le count de Arundel, seisy de ses fez,
I prist la damoysele qi pere fut clamez
William de Warenne, à Dieu comaundez.
Sir Huge le fiz Hug, Despenser appellez,[4]
I prist la pucele de gentil parentez,
Quele Gilbert de Clare avoit engendrez
Sur Jone la countesse de Acres surnomez.[5]
Nule ame[6] se mervale de jeu et joe assez,
Où feste fu ferrue[7] de tels solempnetez.
Unkes en Bretaygne puys qe Dieu fu nez
N'estoyt tel nobleye en viles[8] n'en citez,
Forpris Karleoun en antiquitez,
Qaunt sire Arthur luy reis i fust corounez.
Luy prince, qi Dieu sauve! de qi avoms parlez,
Après la dite feste pris ad ses congez
Ove compaygnye jolifs, envers le north[9] alez,

---

[1] This rubric is furnished by B. C. and D.

[2] *ccc. pur veire*, B. *et xv.*, C. *pur voir et xv.*, D.

[3] *As coutz*, B. *A touz*, D. "It "was the kynges costage, for ilk "a knyght was gest," Robert of Brunne.

[4] *nomez*, C.

[5] *appellez*, C.

[6] *Nul aume*, B.

[7] Robert of Brunne translates these two lines as follows:—

"It is not to wene, bot certeynly
"to witen,
"Joye inouh is sene ther suilk a
"fest is smyten."

[8] *en vile*, C.

[9] *envers north*, C.

Anno Domini 1306.

After the festival of Easter in the year here named,
The king has proclaimed his feast of Whitsuntide
To be held at Westminster, with clergy and with barons,
Where, with great nobleness, to his eldest son,
Edward prince of Wales, he has given arms.
Three hundred knights of account in truth
Were dubbed at the cost of king Edward.
Several of the most noble were married on that occasion.
The earl of Warenne, with his newly received title,
Espoused the daughter of the count de Barre.
The earl of Arundel, in possession of his fees,
Took there the damsel whose father was named
William de Warenne, who had departed to God.
Sir Hugh son of Hugh, called Despenser,
Took there the maiden of noble kindred,
Whom Gilbert de Clare had begotten
On Joan the countess surnamed of Acres.
No soul wonders there was game and joy enough,
Where a feast was held with such ceremonies.
Never in Britain, since God was born,
Was there such nobleness in towns nor in cities,
Except Caerleon in ancient times,
When sir Arthur the king was crowned there.
The prince, whom God preserve! of whom we have spoken,
After the said feast has taken his leave
With joyous company, and gone towards the north,

Pur quer le rey Robyn où qe seit trovez.
King Edward at Lanercost. Luy reys Edward son pere après fist ses jornez
Joqes à Lanercost,[1] où malade est cochez,
Taunt com Dieu là seus l'ad revigourez.[2]
Mayntenaunt après surdrent[3] les dolours
As abbés, as esvesqes, à clers, à lays[4] plusours,
De la terre d'Escoce, à gentz[5] sovent parjours.
Bruce's attempt on Perth. Sir Emer[6] de Valence, ove ses chivauchours,
Denz[7] la vyle Seint Jon pris avoit sojours;
De[s] barouns d'Escoce i avoynt les meyllours.
Luy rey Robyn l'oit dire, parle ove ses fautours,
Maunde à sir Emer par ses bassatours
Rendre luy la vile, deliverer les traitours
Ke wayvez luy avoyent à lour deshonours.
Au matyn lendemayn Robyn en errours,
Des rochesz et chemises cover[8] ses armours,
Se profre à combatre, esprover voet ses cours.
Sir Emer de Valence issist hors de murs;
Robyn sa mounture tuait al primours,[9]
His flight. Luy quens est remountez, de soens avoit socurs;
Robyn le dos luy tourne, s'en fuist[10] aliours.
Lors comencea la chace, et dura taunt des hours,
Ke Robyn n'avoyt[11] ne chastels ne tours,
Ne refute à vile ne à recettours.
Fresel taken and executed. Fresel, ne say coment, eschapait des estours;[12]
Pris est, menez à Loundres, traynez, penduz à fourz,[13]

---

[1] *Jesqe à Lanercost*, B. *Lavertost*, C.
[2] *reingez*, C.
[3] *surdrint*, C.
[4] *as clers, as lays*, C.
[5] *as gens*, B.
[6] *Sire Eymer*, B.
[7] *Dedenz*, B.
[8] *coverer*, C.
[9] *à primours*, D.
[10] *et s'en fuist*, D.
[11] *Ke Robin ne auit*, C. *Robin*, D.
[12] *eschapa de estour*, C. *eschapa*, D.
[13] *traynez et fourez*, C.

To seek king Robin wherever he may be found.
King Edward, his father, afterwards made his progress
As far as Lanercost, where he is laid down ill,
Until God above has restored his strength.

Now after spring up the griefs
For abbots, for bishops, and for the clergy, for many of the laity,
Of the land of Scotland, for people often perjured.
Sir Aymer de Valence, with his cavalry,
Had taken his residence within St. John's Town (Perth);
There were there the best of the barons of Scotland.
King Robin receives information of it, consults with his adherents,
Summons sir Aymer by his ambassadors
To give up to him the town, to deliver the traitors
Who had deserted him to their dishonour.
On the morning of the morrow, Robin in his wanderings,
His armour covered with surplices and skirts,
Offers battle, he will try his courage.
Sir Aymer de Valance sallies out of the walls;
Robin slew his steed at the first attack,
The earl is remounted, he has succour from his own people;
Robin turns his back upon him, flies elsewhere.
Then began the chace, and lasted so many hours,
Till Robert had neither castles nor towers,
Nor refuge in town or among receivers.
Fresel, I know not how, escaped from the battle;
He is taken, carried to London, drawn, and hanged on gallows,

Sa teste fu copé, et saunz chapel de flours
Enhaucé [1] sur le pount, le cors fust ars de jours.
En luy par sa fausine perirent grauntz valours.

Scottish prelates taken.

Ore oyez quel hounte à clers [2] est avenu
De la terre d'Escoce, par la gwere mu.
L'evesqe de Seint Andreu honur ad perdu,
Et l'abbé de Scone, l'evesqe de Glascu,
Fergez sur hakenayes sunt maundez vers le su ;
En divers prisoun chescun est tenu,
Taunt cum l'apostoylle le fet ad meuz conu.
A clers et lays saunz noumbre [3] la gwere ount maintenu,
Autel cum à ler [4] est jugement rendu.

Christopher de Seaton and the earl of Asketil executed.

Cristofore de Setoun, noun pas desconu,
Pur Jon de Badenagh est trainez et pendu ;
Et luy quens de Ascetle [5] ad jugement resceu,
Tel com luy Fresel, et en meme le lu,
Par comaundement le rey forpris [6] la trayné fu.
Allas ! le gentyl saunk ensint [7] espaundu !
Du boyvere dam Waryn luy rey Robyn ad bu,
Ke citez et viles perdist par l'escu,[8]
Après en la forest, forsenez et nu,[9]
Se pesceit ove la beste de cel herbe cru.
Son livre le temoyne luyquels de luy est lu.[10]

The duke of Britany claims Richmondshire.

Taunt cum le rey Robyn court et fet utrage,
Sir Arthur de Bretaygne, duk de haut parage,
Veent en Engleterre pur quer son heritage,

---

[1] *En haute*, C. *E haucé*, D.

[2] *as clers*, B.

[3] *saunz noumbre*, omitted in D.

[4] *A cels cum à lers est jugement*, D.

[5] *Assetle*, C., in which the words between this and *en meme le lu* (in the next line) are omitted. *Ascecle*, D.

[6] *horspris*, B. "Save he was not drawen, that poynt was forgyven," Robert of Brunne.

[7] *issint*, B. C. This and the two lines following are omitted in D.

[8] *par escu*, B.

[9] *ly Breus s'en fu*, D.

[10] *testimoigne, qe de li est lu*, B. *Son liver est temoygne*, D. The reference, of course, is to the history of Fulk fitz Warine, the celebrated outlaw under king John.

His head was cut off, and without chaplet of flowers,
Raised up on the bridge, the body was burnt.
In him, through his falseness, perished much worth.

Now hear what disgrace is come upon the clergy
Of the land of Scotland, disturbed by the war.
The bishop of St. Andrews has lost honour,
And the abbot of Scone, and the bishop of Glasgow,
Are sent in fetters on hackneys towards the south;
Each is held in a separate prison,
Until the pope has become better acquainted with the fact.
To clergy and laymen without number who have maintained the war,
Equally as to a robber is judgment rendered.
Christopher de Seaton, not unknown,
Is drawn and hanged on account of John of Badenagh;
And the earl of Asketil has received judgment
Similar to that of the Fresel, and in the same place,
By command of the king the drawing was omitted.
Alas! the noble blood which was thus spilt!
King Robin has drunk of the drink of dan Warin,
Who lost cities and towns by the shield,
Afterwards in the forest, mad and naked,
He fed with the cattle on the raw grass.
His book bears witness of it, which is read concerning him.

While king Robin is running about and committing violence,
Sir Arthur of Britany, a duke of high kindred,
Comes into England to seek his inheritance,

Richemundchire, ove rentes et waygnage,
Ove wardes et releves, forest et pounage,[1]
Du rey sir Edwarde à tenir par homage.
Curtement à dire, respouns avait volage.
Luy duk Arthur repair,[2] ove pesaunt corage;
A sir Jon son frere de plus joven age
Est doné la[3] countée, saunz novel servage,
A tenir en fé par auncien usage
Du rey sire Edward et de son lignage.
Luy rey de roys,[4] par qi tempeste de mere se asswage,[5]
Preste qe ne aveygne perde ne[6] damage!
Le duk vers Bretaygne repassez est la mer;
Du fols rey Robyn qe voet plus parler,
Thomas and Alexander Bruce seized and executed.
De sir Thomas de Breus se poet amentiner,
Et de sir Alexander, de qi me dout le quoer,[7]
Haut den[8] de Glascu et riche provender;
Par le rey Robyn à lour encumbrer,
Qi freres els estoyent,[9] alayent espier,
Les Engleys destrure saunz nul esparnier.
Un sergeaunt Galwaleys,[10] Magdowel[11] oy nomer,
Le mescredy de Cendres en venaunt du muster,
A sursaut les prist et les fist lyer,[12]
Et al reys Edward à Kardoyl envoyer.
Kaunt luy reys l'oit dire, fet justices assigner,
Et Thomas de Breus pendre et trainer,
Et sir Alexander à fourches[13] comaunder,
Et après le pendre les deus decoler.
Le pape Boniface fist determiner,
En son sime livre qe il fist ordiner,[14]

---

[1] This line is omitted in D.
[2] *retourne*, B.
[3] *Et donée la*, D.
[4] *des reis*, D.
[5] *de mer assuage*, B. *de meer savage*, C. *swage*, D.
[6] *perde n'eit ne damage*, B.
[7] *me dout quer*, C.
[8] *Haud dian*, B.
[9] *Qi freres estoient*, B.
[10] *Gallawais*, C.
[11] *Makdowel*, B.
[12] *le prist et la fist lier*, C.
[13] *al fourches*, C.
[14] MS. C. ends with this line imperfect.

Richmondshire, with the rents and profit,
With wards and reliefs, forest and pannage,
To hold by homage of the king sir Edward.
To speak briefly, he had a light answer.
Duke Arthur returns with heavy spirit;
To sir John his brother, of younger age,
Is given the county, without new services,
To hold in fee by ancient usage
Of the king sir Edward and of his lineage.
The King of kings, through whom storm of sea becomes calmed,
Grant there arrive neither loss nor damage!

The duke is repassed the sea to Britany;
Who would discourse further of the mad king Robin,
He may make mention of sir Thomas de Bruce,
And of sir Alexander, of whom my heart doubts,
High dean of Glasgow and rich beneficiary;
By appointment of king Robin, to their trouble,
Whose friends they were, they went to spy,
In order to destroy the English without sparing any.
A sergeant of Galloway, I heard him named Macdowel,
On Ash Wednesday, as they were coming from the minster,
Took them by surprise, and caused them to be bound,
And to be sent to Carlisle to king Edward.
When the king was informed of it, he caused judges to be appointed,
And Thomas de Bruce to be hanged and drawn,
And sir Alexander to be sent to the gallows,
And after the hanging the two to be beheaded.
Pope Boniface caused to be determined,
In the sixth book which he had compiled,

Quels clers en quel cas home dait sauver,
Et quels en quel habit homme dait dampner,
Attaintz de felounye, cum roubbur et leer.[1]
Ne fust l'estatute fet en tyel maner,
Plus osez serraint clers la pees Dieu violer.

Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo VIJ°.[2]

The Parliament at Carlisle.

A la Paske après à Kardoille ouf sa gent
Ly rai sire Edward tyent[3] son parlement;
Un cardinal de Rome i veent[4] sollempnement,
Pur ceo mariage dount fu parlé sovent,
Entre ly prince de Gales et la pucel gent
Feille ad ray de Fraunce, si home bonement[5]
Lors peust fere acorde de ceo daliement.
Des plosurs choses tretaint ensement.
Par clers de saint eglise assez honestement
Estatute fu fet repellez saunz assent;
Ly count e ly baroun l'empaise[6] malement.
De tut le graunt consaille estait le finement
Ke ly rois Edward, saunz daliement,[7]
Frait maunder à Loundres gentz de avisement,
Pur veer et feere entendre al ray Phelippe[8] coment
Le dit mariage purra profitement
Estre affermé, saunz plus parler ent.
Ore doigne qe been sait ly Deus[9] omnipotent!

Capture of sir John Wallace.

Ly reis Robin uncore en mores et marais
Court en sa riote, sire Johan le Waleis
Pris est en la plaine purseut des[10] Norais,
E maundez à Loundres fergez sur hakenais.

---

[1] *cum robbour ou leer*, B. D.
[2] The rubric is given from B. D.
[3] *tint*, B.
[4] *de Rome vint*, B. *i vint*, D.
[5] *bonaient*, B.
[6] *l'empeisent*, B.
[7] *delaiement*, B. *delayment*, D.
[8] *au rei Philip*, B.
[9] *soit, Dieus*, B.
[10] *en une pleine par sute de N.*, B. *par assent des Norais*, D.

What clerks in what case one ought to save,
And what clerks in what habit one ought to condemn,
As robbers and thieves, when attainted of felony.
Were it not for the statute made in such manner,
The clergy would be more daring to violate God's peace.

Anno Domini 1307.

At the Easter following, at Carlisle with his people
The king sir Edward holds his parliament;
A cardinal from Rome comes there solemnly,
For that marriage of which was often speech,
Between the prince of Wales and the fair maiden
Daughter of the king of France, if one successfully
Could then make an arrangement of that treaty.
Of several things they treated likewise.
By clerks of holy church fairly enough
A statute was made, repelled without assent.
The earl and the baron reject it unjustly.
Of all the great counsel the end was
That king Edward, without delay,
Should cause to be sent to London people of wisdom,
To see and explain to king Philip how
The said marriage will be able profitably
To be confirmed, without further negotiation about it.
Now may God Almighty grant it be well!

King Robin still in moors and marshes
Wanders in his turbulence, sir John Wallace
Is taken in the plain pursued by the northerners,
And sent to London fettered on a hackney.

Execution of sir John Wallace.

A Westmouster quant vint entre les sorais,
Solom ses desertz fu jugez par les lais.
Sa paine fu taillé par penaunces trays;
Avalez est[1] des fourchez e[n] chemyns[2] e brays,
La teste après copé e porté par Loundrais
Sur le pount de Loundres, et levez par hutais
Près du chef son frere[3] William le malvays,[4]
Qe unques n'out pité de Cristien Englais.
Chevaler e persoun, cytain e burgays,[5]
E chanoigne e moygne, e freres des abbais,
Fist passer par l'esspeiz[6] sanz avoir de pais.
Par tot seit honurez ly haut Deus verrais,
Par qi seint grace Edward[7] nostre rays
Ly leers ad hutrayé e tot sun line punays.

De morte illustris regis Edwardi.[8]

All mankind subject to death.

O Sire[9] tutpuissant ke Cristien ahure,
Ton overe est chescon terrene creature,
En fesaunt le mounde fu taillé[10] la figure,
Qe homme, femme, e beste deit morir par nature.
[Belin e Brennius, Bretons par baudure,
Pristrent Rome à force, e treu là mustrent sure;
Li rei Arthur après, sanz plaie e sanz blemure,
Conquist tote France, com à se tere pare.
Wawein et Angusele de sa noreture
En gueres e batailles Arthur soleient sure.
Home deit bien, entre reis qe unt regnez pus cel houre,

---

[1] *Avalé fu*, B. *de fourches*, D.
[2] *en chemise*, B. *en chemys*, D.
[3] *son pere*, B. *le Waleis*, B.
[4] This and the two following lines are omitted in D.
[5] *par espeie*, B.
[6] *sire Edward*, B.
[7] This rubric is taken from B. and D.
[8] *O Pere*, B. D.
[9] *fu fet*, B. D.

When he came to Westminster among the southerners,
According to his deserts he was judged by the laws.
His punishment was divided into three punishments;
He was let down from the gallows in shirt and breeches,
His head afterwards cut off and carried by the Londoners
On the bridge of London, and raised with shouts
Near the head of his brother William the wicked,
Who never had pity on an English Christian,
Knight and parson, citizen and burgher,
And canon and monk, and brothers of abbeys,
He put them all to the sword without having peace.
May everywhere be honoured the high true God,
By whose holy grace Edward our king
Has destroyed the thief and all his puny line.

Of the death of the illustrious king Edward.

O Lord Almighty, whom the Christian adores,
Every earthly creature is thy work,
In making the world was formed the law,
That man, woman, and beast must die by nature.
Belinus and Brennius, Britons in their pride,
Took Rome by force, and put a truce upon it;
King Arthur afterwards, without wound and without blemish,
Conquered all France, and took possession as his own.
Gawain and Angusele, of his nourishing,
In wars and battles used to follow Arthur.
One must well, among kings who have reigned since that time,

Parler du rei Edward e de sa menure,
Com de meuz vanez combatant sur mounture.][1]
Pus le tens Adam unqes fut nul hure[2]
Ke prince pur nobley, ne baroun pur baudoure,
Ne marchaund pur avoyr, ne clerk pur lettrure,
Par art ne par engine la mort peut[3] eschure.
Character of king Edward. De chevalerye, après ly reis[4] Arthure,
Estait ly reis Edward des Cristiens la flure;
Tant fu beals e grantz, tant pussant en armoure,[5]
De ly poet homme parler[6] tant cum le secle dure.
[Qar par nul avoit chivaler en armure
De vigour e value, ne present ne future.
Novele avoms de li dolerouse e dure;][7]
Mort l'ad pris, allas! desore qe fra draiture
Pur[8] Johan de Badenaghe, fors cyl qe ad la cure,
Edward le fitz Edward, ray de la tenure[9]
Qe tenuz est par vowe le rei Robin destrure.

De die et morte regis Edwardi prædicti.

Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo septimo.[10]

Death of king Edward. En l'an avant nomé, com nous avoms oye,
Le jur setyme de Jule,[11] pur veir vous certifye
Ke nostre reys Edward, qe alme Dieu beneye!
A Burgh sur les Sabluns, alant vers Albanye,
En verray creaunce son secle ad finye.
Maintenant après sa mort estait[12] publye,
Translatez est le corps par barnez e par clergie[13]

---

[1] The nine foregoing lines are found only in B. They are translated by Robert of Brunne.

[2] *unqes ne fu nul joure*, B.

[3] *puit la mort*, B. *pust la mort*, D.

[4] *après la mort*, B.

[5] *pussant en chivachure*, B.

[6] *chaunter*, B.

[7] These three lines are found only in B.

[8] *De*, B.

[9] *Edward fitz Edward le rei de la tenure*, B. D.

[10] The rubrics are given from B.

[11] *La setime jour de Juli*, B.

[12] *est*, B.

[13] *e clergie*, B.

Speak of king Edward and of his memory
As of the most renowned combatant on steed.
Since the time of Adam never was any time
That prince for nobility, or baron for splendour,
Or merchant for wealth, or clerk for learning,
By art or by genius could escape death.
Of chivalry, after king Arthur,
Was king Edward the flower of Christendom.
He was so handsome and great, so powerful in arms,
That of him may one speak as long as the world lasts.
For he had no equal as a knight in armour
For vigour and valour, neither present nor future.
We have of him news dolourous and hard;
Death has taken him, alas! henceforth who will do justice
Upon John of Badenagh, except him who has the care,
Edward the son of Edward, king of the tenure
Which is held by vow to destroy king Robin.

Of the day and death of king Edward aforesaid.
Anno Domini 1307.

In the year just named, as we have heard,
The seventh day of July, for truth we certify you,
That our king Edward, whose soul may God bless!
At Burgh-upon-the-Sands, on his way to Albany,
In true faith has ended his life.
Now after his death was made public,
The body is transported by barons and by clergy

A Waltham près de Loundres, sa demene[1] abbeye,
Quatre mais enters sollempnement servye.
Baumez juste sur bere[2] saunz avoir esparnye,
Partysaunt as povers[3] qe pur cel alme prie.
Burial of king Edward. Xxx. et iiij. aunz, viij. mays, v. jours, vous dye,[4]
Regnait sur Engleterre par lay establye,
Par resoun e drait maintynt la monarchye ;
De vigour e value, de sen replenye,
Pere nul avait dount gwier[5] seignurye.
En près[6] de son linage ore est le corps sevelye,
A Westmouster, en toumbe de marbre ben polye.
Ly prince ke pur nous suz Pilate[7] fu punye
Ly reis sire Edward resceive en sa mercye ;
Relese à l'alme face de[s] forfetez en sa vie,
En regal mansion là mene à compaignye,
Où servise n'i ad fors joye et melodye.[8]

---

[1] *en sa demein*, B.

[2] *Bannez i eust bere*, B. *Bannez just sure bere*, D.

[3] *à povers*, D.

[4] In Robert of Brunne's translation it is,—

" Four and tuenty ȝere, auht
" monethes, and five daies,
" Noblie regned he here bi profe
" and gode assaies."

[5] *avoit à guier*, B.

[6] *E après*, B. *En près de son*, D.

[7] *sutz Pilat*, B.

[8] The scribe of MS. D. has added the following lines upon his own labours :—

" Cy finist Peres son liver en
" honour,
" Et Jon qe l'escrit parfet ad son
" labour.
" Al terme de sa vie Dieu luy
" face socour,
" Et mette s'alme en repose oue
" seintz en doçour.
" Jon, qe l'escrit, ordre porte de
" prestre ;
" Le vikere de Atlyngflete, sire
" Jon, qe fu son mestre,
" Le pria de l'escriver par sa
" mayne destre ;
" Dieus i mene lour almes en la
" joye celestre ! "

Robert of Brunne adds the following lines to his translation :—

" Now must I nede leve here of
" Inglis forto write,
" I had no more matere of kynges
" lif in scrite.
" If I had haved more, blithly
" I wild haf writen,
" What tyme I left this lore the
" day is for to witen ;
" Idus that is of May left I to
" write this ryme,
" B letter and Friday bi ix. that
" ȝere ȝede prime."

Hearne corrects the beginning of this last line to *D letter*.

To Waltham near London, his own abbey,
Four months entire served with solemn service.
It lay embalmed on the bier, without sparing of wealth
Distributing to the poor who pray for that soul.
Thirty-four years, eight months, and five days, I tell you,
He reigned over England by established law,
By reason and right he maintained the monarchy ;
Of vigour and worth, and full of understanding,
He had no equal in ruling a lordship.
Beside his kindred now is the body buried,
At Westminster, in tomb of marble well polished.
May the Prince who for us was punished under Pilate
Receive king Edward into his mercy ;
Give remission to his soul of the sins committed in his life,
Take him to his company there into regal mansion,
Where there is no service except joy and melody.

APPENDICES.

APPENDIX I. - - - -

SUPPLEMENTARY MATTER WHICH FOLLOWS

Mult fu de grant reson le primer qe purvit
Les overes des ancestres mettre en escrit,
Du siecle les merveiles, des sages les dités,
E les prophecies qe furent nunciez.
Ne fust l'escripture qe home list e voit,
Des gestes aunciens memorie perireit.
Pur nostre rei Edward puit home vere coment
Testmoigne d'escripture puit valer sovent.
Ceo paruist quant le pape par bulle li maundeit,
E qe son reaume de li tenir deveit,
E à la court de Rome par homage obeier,[1]

Noun pas au rei Engleis pur tiel tenement,
Si noun par poer e par abatement.
Li rei Edward avisez estoit
Des gestes Engleis, à Rome remandoit
Respons assez convenable, par commun assent
Des countes e barons, des clers ensement,
A Nichole sur Withine, en l'an entitlée,
Où lue fust la bulle, escotez la ditée.

[1] A line is here omitted in the MS., and a blank left for it ; more than one line seems necessary to give the meaning intended.

APPENDIX I.

THE TEXT OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT IN MS. B.

He was a man of great judgment who first provided
To put in writing the works of our ancestors,
The wonders of the age, the sayings of the wise men,
And the prophecies which were made public.
Were it not for the writing which man reads and sees,
The memory of the ancient history would perish.
In the case of our king Edward may be seen how
Testimony of writing may often be of worth.
That appeared when the pope sent to him by bull,
And that he ought to hold his kingdom of him,
And be obedient to the court of Rome by homage,

* * * * *

Not to the English king for such lordship,
Unless by force and by seizure.
King Edward was well informed
Of English history, he sent back to Rome
A very proper reply, by common assent
Of earls and barons, of the clergy likewise,
At Lincoln on the Witham, in the year given in the title,
Where the bull was first read, listen to its terms.

Bulla domini papæ Bonifacii octavi regi Edwardo transmissa.

Boniface, evesqe, serfs de serfs nomez,
Au noble rei Edward, des Engleis clamez,
Salutz cum à fitz trescher en Dieu amez,
E grace e beneisçon en noun de Trinité.
Sir, dit l'apostoile, nous savoms verraiment,
E avoms de grant temps conu provablement,
Par tes bons meriz, e par tes fez sovent,
Coment tu as esté à nous obedient,
De nostre seé de Rome resceu le maundement,
Parfete la tenure sanz contrariement,
Ta mere eglise seinte Pere amée devoutement,
Cum fitz deit sa mere en amour fervent,
En fey, en reverence, cum à li apent
Qe l'eglise de Rome support e defent.
Par quei, dit Boniface, entendoms-nous pur veir
De tei, fitz trescher, aver bon espeir,
Fei e fiaunce bon e pleneir
De ta regalté, dount nous n'avoms despeir,
Nos ditz et nos fetz, au matin e au seir,
Et coment receiveras sanz respons contrair,
Examiner le fras cum fitz debonair,
Le portour espleiter avant son repeir.

Par quei seinement deit estre demonstré
A la celsitude de ta regalté,
En ta memorie noun pas ublié,
Coment la tere d'Escoce de grant antiquité
Estoit e estre doit tenue de nostre sé,
Noun pas de tes ancestres, en service ne en feé,
Ne feodal estoit à ta parenté,

Bull of the lord pope Boniface VIII. sent to king Edward.

Boniface, bishop, named servant of servants,
To the noble king Edward, proclaimed of the English,
Salutations as to a very dear son beloved in God,
And grace and benediction in the name of the Trinity.
Sire, said the pope, we know truly,
And have for a long time been acquainted with it provably,
By thy good merits, and by thy deeds often,
How thou hast been obedient to us,
Hast received the mandate of our see of Rome,
Performed the tenor of it without contradiction,
Loved devoutly thy mother church of St. Peter,
In fervent love as a son ought to love his mother,
In faith, in reverence, as behoves him
Who supports and defends the church of Rome.
Wherefore, said Boniface, we understand for truth
Of thee, very dear son, to have good hope,
Faith and trust good and full
Of thy royalty, of which we have no despair,
Our sayings and our deeds, in the morning and in the evening,
And how thou will receive them without reply in the contrary
Thou wilt as an obedient son cause it to be examined,
And satisfy the bearer before his return.
Wherefore it is to be substantially shown
To the highness of thy royalty,
Not forgotten in thy memory,
How the land of Scotland of great antiquity
Was and ought to be held of our see,
Not of thy ancestors, in service or in fee,
Nor was it feodal to thy family,

A nul de tes auncestres de service obligé,
En temps de pes e guere, encountre volenté,
Ne à ton pere Henri, en l'adverseté
Qe li quens Symon de Mounfort nomé
Avant avoit en Engletere encountre le levé.
Qar ton pere Henri cel houre, pur verité,
Au reï Alexandre, qe avoit esposé
Ta soer Margarete, par lettre ad prié
Au rei d'Escoce de aide en amisté,
E noun pas de dette, fors tut de son gré,
E, q'en prejudice à li ne fust tourné,
Ou service ou custom, chartre ad doné,
Confermé de son seal, le fet tesmoigné,
Coment à cel foiz cel aide fu granté
Au rei Alexandre, q'en amour ad presté.

Estre ces afferes à ton coroner,
Pur la sollempneté le plus honorer,
Fis-tu le rei d'Escoce devoutement prier
Qe par sa presence deignast avancer
La feste de ta corone, e sanz chalenger
Coustomes ou services à toi par son dever.
E par tant en ta lettre feistes nuncier
Qe sa venue par dette ne poez demander,
Feauté ne purquant vous deveit-il jurer,
Mès pur la terre d'Escoce ne service ne dener
Vous deveit-il conustre, ne ne fist son per.

E com li rei d'Escoce feauté te feseit
Pur Tyndale e Penereth, qe de toit tenoit,
En fesant la feauté overtement disoit,
Devant trestut le pople qe là lors estoit,
Qe pur la terre d'Escoce nul service ferroit,
Nul rien de son reaume de toi tenir clamoit,
Ne cum ton suget à toit se pliereit,
Si noun pur les terres dount avant parleit.

Bound by service to none of thy ancestors,
In time of peace and war, against will,
Nor to thy father Henry, in the adversity
Which the earl named Simon de Monfort
Had before stirred up against him in England.
For thy father Henry at that time, for truth,
To king Alexander, who had married
Thy sister Margaret, has prayed by letter
To the king of Scotland for aid in friendship,
And not as a duty, but entirely of his will,
And, that it should not be turned into prejudice to him,
Or service or custom, has given a charter,
Confirmed with his seal, bearing witness to the fact,
How on that occasion that aid was granted
By king Alexander, which he has lent in love.
In the ceremonies at thy coronation,
To give greater honour to the solemnity,
Thou causedst the king of Scotland to be devoutly prayed
That by his presence he would deign to celebrate
The festival of thy crown, and without claiming
Customs or services belonging to thee by his duty.
And therefore in thy letter thou causedst it to be stated to him
That thou couldst not demand his attendance as a duty,
Fealty nevertheless he ought to swear to you,
But for the land of Scotland neither service nor money
Ought he to acknowledge to you, nor did his father.
And as the king of Scotland did thee fealty
For Tyndale and Penrith, which he held of thee,
In performing the fealty he said openly,
Before all the people who were then there,
That for the land of Scotland he would do no service,
He acknowledged to holding of thee no part of his kingdom,
Nor would bend to thee as thy subject,
Except for the land of which he spoke before.

Sire, en ta memorie deis-tu remembrer,
Quant le rei d'Escoce cesseit de son regner,
Sa fidle Margarete, qe deveit governer
La reaume d'Escoce, cum dame de l'enteer
E de la seignorie cum dreit heir son pere,
Fust de meindre age e de noun poer,
La garde de son corps, ne de son aver,
Ne de son heritage, par terre ne par mer,
Ne de son reaume la value de un dener,
Cel houre par reson ne poiez clamer.
Par lettre de notarie tut puit home prover,
Coment en cel temps se fesoient assembler
Eleccion fesoient les nobles assigner
La terre e la pucele à sauver e garder.

La verité conustre devez par reson,
Quant pur ton fitz Edward tes messageres par noun
A nostre seé mandastes pur dispensacion
Qe la pucele d'Escoce li prist en baron,
Nous oimes ta priere de bon affection ;
Par quei nous grantames ta peticion.
Oil si la comune de cel region
Vousist le mariage, fors par condicion
Qe la tere d'Escoce en lour possession
Franche demorast, sanz subjection,
E usent e tenissent parmi la nacion
Lour leis et lour usages, sanz recoupison,
Bailliffs et justices par election,
Customes anciens de gaole e prison,
De tut ceo par ta lettre fis tu confection ;
E lors reconustes qe sanz tribucion
Estoit la tere d'Escoce, franche de rançon,
Cum cele qe fu pure de submission
A nul autre tere, par droit action,
Usant dedenz ses marches la cognicion
Des causes e querels sur transgression.
Ta lettre ensealé de tut fet mencion.

Sire, in thy memory ought thou to remember,
When the king of Scotland ended his reign,
His daughter Margaret, who ought to rule
The kingdom of Scotland, as lady of the whole
And of the lordship as direct heir of her father,
Was of minor age and incompetent,
The ward of her body, nor of her goods,
Nor of her heritage, by land or by water,
Or of her realm the value of a penny,
At that time couldst thou rightfully claim.
By letter of notary it could all be proved,
How at that time assembled together
And made election the nobles to appoint
To preserve and guard the land and the maiden.
You ought rightly to know the truth,
When for thy son Edward thy messengers by name
Thou sendest to our see for dispensation
That the maiden of Scotland should take him for her husband,
We listened to thy prayer with good affection;
Wherefore we granted thy petition.
But if the commonalty of that kingdom
Had wished the marriage, except by condition
That the land of Scotland in their possession
Should remain free, without subjection,
And they to use and hold throughout the nation
Their laws and their usages, without diminution,
Bailiffs and justices by election,
Ancient customs of gaol and prison,
Of all that by thy letter thou makedst allowance;
And then thou didst aknowledge that without tribute
Was the land of Scotland, free from taxation,
As that which was free from dependence
Upon any other land, by just procedure,
Using within its marches the cognizance
Of causes and quarrels on transgression.
Thy letter under seal makes mention of all.

Cum, après la grace qe à tei fu granté,
Morust la pucele dount estoit parlé,
Par pere ne par mere heir ne fust lessé,
Loyntaigne du sanc ke dreit unt clamé
A toi declineient en grant amisté,
Pur doute q'il aveient de contek e medlé ;
A lour venir à toi unt-il pronuncié
Qe la venue estoit conceu tut de gré,
E noun pas de dette pur tere ne pur fee,
Qe tu par ta lettre les as confermé,
Ton seal en testmoigne i pent pur verité.

E mes que cele gent, qe sanz chief estoient,
E sanz rectour e dustre, od tei counsaillent,
Par quei tes ministres, qi les leis saveient,
La seignorie d'Escoce à un fous doneient,
Par quei multz des altres à tei enclineient,
E ceaus du regne d'Escoce tort cel houre feseient.
Les nobles de la tere ore grever ne deient,
Ne casser le dreit qe les noz aveient.

Nul home pur verité sur ceo deit duter,
Où fet apertement puit certefier.
Escotez ore coment e en quel maner
Escoce ne deit estre à home tributer,
Si noun à l'apostoile en le noun seinte Per.
Car quant l'apostoile legat doit maunder
Au regne d'Engletere l'estat examiner
Des clers e des lais, e du rei li primer,
Tiel legat vers Escoce unqes ne passa mer.
Dunqes semble par reson e par dit de quoer,
Qe la tere d'Escoce à tei ne deit plier.
Sur ceo pur ta salue te voloms remembrer
Des choses qe nous veoms e savoms recorder,
En temps Adrian, li honurable bier,
A qi nous esteimes jadis familier,
Quant fust en Engletere en le temps ton per

When, after the grace which was granted to thee,
The maiden of whom we spoke died,
No heir was left by father or mother,
Those who have claimed the right by distance of blood
Submitted to thee in great friendship,
For fear there might be strife and contest;
On their coming to thee have they declared
That their coming was conceived entirely of their will,
And not by duty for land or for fee,
Which thou hast confirmed to them by thy letter,
Thy seal hangs to it as a witness for truth.
And more that that people, who were without head,
And without rector and leader, took counsel with thee,
Whereby thy ministers, who knew the laws,
Gave the lordship of Scotland to a madman,
Whereby many of the others inclined to thee,
And those of the kingdom of Scotland did wrong at that time.
They ought not now to oppress the nobles of the land,
Or cancel the right which ours had.
No man for truth upon this ought to doubt
Where the fact can be openly certified.
Listen now how and in what manner
Scotland ought not to be tributary to any one,
Except to the pope in the name of St. Peter.
For when the pope has to send a legate
To the kingdom of England to examine the state
Of the clergy and laity, and of the king first of all,
Such legate towards Scotland never passed the sea.
Then it seems by reason and by decree of the heart,
That the land of Scotland ought not to be subject to thee.
Thereupon for thy salvation we will remind thee
Of the things which we see and can record from knowledge,
In the time of Adrian, the honourable baron,
With whom we were formerly intimate,
When he was in England in the time of thy father

Legat l'apostoile, fesant son mester,
E fust à Kenilworthe les barons acorder;
Après hors du North comenceit aler
Vers la terre d'Escoce les pleyntes terminer,
Cum fist en Engletere, le regne visiter.
Le rei Alexaundre desturba son entrer
Par son privelege, qe li fist moustrer,
E fust la tenure, qe nul fitz de mere
Deit la tere d'Escoce cum legat justicer,
Si noun par sa licence qe là deit regner.
Rei, sur teles resons te deis bien aviser,
E nuli services à tort chalenger.

Estre ces afferes, ton regal noblie
Deit bien conustre la grant tresorie
De seint Andreu l'apostle, qe verrai Die amie
Est nomez et wowé de tut Albanie;
Le pape ses reliqes doneit en douwerie
Avant qe la province, ou nul de la partie,
Convertuz estoit à droite creauncie.
E sur ceo ton regal deit estre garnie,
Coment un ercevesqe d'Everwik jadie
Visiter voleit, par sa surquiderie,
Cum metropolitan, Escoce e la clergie.
Les clers appelleient en grant controversie
En nostre court de Rome, la cause fust sopie
Par un des esvesqes, qi dit en sa veidie:
" Remembre tei, sir pape, de ta grant baillie,
" Nous sumes touz le toens, ne nous guepés mie;
" Le honeur de ton noun, ne l' donez à autrie."
Pur voir, la parole assetz signefie
Qe Albanie deit estre à nostre awouwerie,
Par les evidences qe tu as ore oie.

E qe large estil, ne lounge document,
Te soit ennuiouse noun pas à ton talent,
Edward, fitz trescher en Dieu omnipotent,
Te dioms dereschief cum dire à fitz covient.

The pope's legate, performing his duty,
And was at Kenilworth to bring the barons to accord;
Afterwards out of the North he began to go
Towards the land of Scotland to decide the complaints,
As he did in England, to visit the kingdom.
King Alexander prevented his entry,
By his privilege, which he caused to be shown to him,
And the tenor was, that no son of mother
Ought to judge the kingdom of Scotland as legate,
Except by his licence who ought to reign there.
King, upon such reasons thou shouldst advise thee well,
And claim wrongfully nobody's services.
Besides these affairs, thy regal nobility
Ought well to know the great treasury
Of St. Andrew the apostle, who true friend of God
Is named and worshipped by all Albanie;
The pope gave his relics in gift
Before the province, or any one of the country,
Was converted to the right belief.
And thereupon thy royalty ought to be warned,
How an archbishop of York formerly
Sought to visit, through his presumption,
As metropolitan, Scotland and the clergy.
The clergy appealed in strong contradiction
In our court of Rome, the cause was settled
By one of the bishops, who said in his subtlety:
" Remember thee, sir pope, of thy great trust,
" We are all thine, do not desert us;
" The honour of thy name, give it not to another.'
In truth this statement shows sufficiently
That Albanie ought to be in our lordship,
By the evidences which thou hast now heard.
And that large style or long document
Be not wearisome to thy mind,
Edward, son very dear in God Almighty,
We tell thee again, as one ought to tell a son,

Ton sen examinez, ton quoer enterement,
Qe à nul estut duter, ne penser altrement,
Qe la seignorie d'Escoce pleinement
A nous e nostre sé par lei e drei[t] apent,
Par les evidences dount nes un ne ment.
Cil qe autre die, e fet destourbement,
A Dieu e seinte Pere trop durement mesprent.
La tere est malmené par toi e par ta gent,
Countre ton deveir, torcenousement.
Qar tu n'as dreit à tere ne tenement
Qe li rei d'Escoce ad tenu par descent
De nous e nostre seé, puis le comencement
Qe foi en Albanie vint par prechement.

Come par dit de leaus à nous est moustrez
De comune fame parmi les regnez,
Crioise en comune des tiels adversitez,
Les dites evidences as-tu mis suth pés;
A nous et multz des autres, par fole voluntez,
Tort apertement as-tu comencez,
E fet en grant partie, à tes regautez,
Conqueraunt par force les teres e les feez
Qe sunt appendanz à nous e à nos seez;
Destrut la tere d'Escoce parmi les cuntrez,
E nos dous evesqes as-tu enprisonez;
Clers e lais sans numbre en fer as-tu liez,
Dount les uns sunt mortz par tes iniquitez;
Les chastels as-tu pris, le pople malmenez,
Tant cum la tere estoit sanz her confermez;
Plusours autres choses qe ci ne sunt nomez,
En le offence de Dieu e sez majestez,
En despit de nous e nos dignetez,
En hounte e reproce du rei corounez,
En tort de chescun dreit e des equitez,
Au pople en esclaundre, qe veit veritez.

Pur les dites choses te voloms prier,
E cum pere dei fere, desore amonester,

Examine thy mind and thy heart entirely,
That none ought to doubt, or think otherwise,
That the lordship of Scotland fully
Belongs by law and right to us and our see,
By the evidences of which not one is false.
He who says differently, and labours to the contrary,
Offends very seriously against God and St. Peter.
The land is oppressed by thee and by thy people,
Contrary to thy duty, by violence.
For thou hast no right to land or lordship
Which the king of Scotland has held by descent
Of us and our see, since the beginning
That the faith came into Albany through preaching.
As by report of loyal men is shown to us
As of common fame through the kingdoms,
Sufferers in common by these adversities,
The said evidences hast thou trodden under foot;
To us and many others, by mad wilfulness,
Wrong openly hast thou begun,
And in great part done, to thy royalties,
Conquering by force the lands and the fees
Which are appendant to us and to our see,
Laid waste the land of Scotland through the countries,
And our two bishops hast thou imprisoned;
Clergy and laity without number hast thou bound in fetters,
Of whom some are dead through thy injustice;
The castles hast thou taken, tyrannized over the people,
As long as the land was confirmed without heir;
Many other things which are not named here,
In offence of God and of his majesty,
In despite of us and our dignities,
In shame and reproach of the crowned king,
In wrong of every right and of equity,
In slander to the people, who see the truth.
For the said things we will pray thee,
And, as a father ought to do, henceforth admonish,

Ton errour retrere, ton trespas amender,
Nos clers e nos evesqes de prison deliverer,
A counte e baron, e à chivaler,
Citain e burgeis, sergant e esquier,
Lour teres e lour rentes quites rebailler,
Rendre les chastels, e meson e maner,
A ces qe de dreit le deivent governer,
E à la comune quitement clamer
Totes les fraunchises qele soleit aver,
Balifs e ministres de tut facez ouster
Qi sunt en les offices mis par ton poer.
E si tu en Escoce as dreit à chalenger,
Homage, ou service, qe te sunt arer,
Venez ou maundez certein messager
A Rome devant nous, en la court seint Pere,
Qe à nul fitz de mere dreiture deit vier,
E averez jugement, sanz plus appeller.
En ceo mandement te voillez si porter,
Qe Dieu pur tes meritz te pusse gré saver,
E la court de Rome te seit tenu valer.
Purveiez nous meyntement, qe tu face maunder
A nous dedenz vj. mois qe fesoms nuncier
A toi cest mandement, e facez nous moustrer
Totes vos evidences, qe purrunt testmoigner
Si tu as nul dreit Escoce approprier.

E nous les quereles e pleez ensement,
E par toi e toens, sentence e jugement
A nous e nostre seé remenomes pleinement
E quassoms desore qe fet est altrement.
E sur ceo serroms prest fere à tote gent
Quanqe à dreiture e à reson apent.
La kalende quinte de Julii doneé,
A Vienne, en l'an quinte de nostre evesché.

To retract thine error, to amend thy offence,
To deliver from prison our clergy and our bishops,
To earl and baron, and to knight,
Citizen and burgess, serjeant and esquire,
To restore quit their lands and their rents,
Give back their castles, and house and manor,
To those who by right ought to govern it,
And to the commons quit claim
All the liberties which they used to have,
To cause to be withdrawn everywhere the bailiffs and officers
Who are in the offices established by thy authority.
And if thou hast right to claim in Scotland
Homage, or service, which are in arrear to thee,
Come or send authenticated messengers
To Rome before us, in the court of St. Peter,
Which ought to deny right to no son of mother,
And you shall have judgment without further appeal.
In this message conduct yourself in such manner,
That God may be thankful to thee for thy merits,
And the court of Rome may hold thee in esteem.
Provide for us now, that thou cause to be sent
To us within six months after we cause to be delivered
To thee this command, and cause to be shown to us
All your evidences, that they shall show
If thou hast any right to appropriate Scotland.
And we of the quarrels and pleadings equally,
Both by thee and thine, sentence and judgment
Take back fully to us and our see,
And annul from this time what is done otherwise.
And thereupon we shall be ready to do to all people
Whatever belongs to right and reason.
Given on the fifth kalend of July,
At Vienne, in the fifth year of our episcopacy.

Rescriptio regis Edwardi, ad dominum Bonefacium papam transmissa,

Au pere tresseint en Dieu le pape sire Boniface,
Evesqe plus soverein desoutz Dieu par grace,
Li rei Engleis Edward, par la grace de Dé,
Salutz e bouche as piez de sa seinteté.
Sire, n'en figure n'en fourme de jugement
Vous mandoms ceste lettre, qe nul mot ne ment,
Sur vos mandemenz à nostre dreit defendre
Par nos evidences, sanz jugement attendre.
Li surveour de tut, en qi rien est ublie,
A nous e nostre pople part fet certefie,
Qe nous e nos auncestres le regne de Albanie
Tut temps avoms hieu en garde e baillie,
Cum seigneur soverein, sanz chescon countredit,
Tut temps de rei en rei, cum nous trouvoms escrit,
Homages e services resceu benignement
De touz les reis d'Escoce pur lour tenement,
E feauté des countes, des barons ensement,
Od tote la liaunce qe fet est par serment,
E reis remuez, e donez à talent,
Countes e barons forfet par jugement.
Car en le temps Helye e Samuel jadis,
Quant propheter aleient à gent du pais,
Un sire renomé du sank Eneas,
Qe Troien estoit, ariva par cas
En l'isle de Albion, qe Brutus fu nomé;
Qe ore est region e nostre herité,
Bretaigne fu jadis, de Brut le noun avoit.
Les geauns qe le tindrent Brutus touz tueit.
En lung un braz de mer un cité fundeit,
E Trinovant par noun Brutus l'apelloit,

Rescript of king Edward, transmitted to the lord pope Boniface.

To the very holy father in God lord Boniface the pope,
By grace the most sovereign bishop under God,
The English king Edward, by the grace of God,
Salutations, and mouth at the feet of his holiness.
Sire, neither in figure nor in form of judgment
Do we send you this letter, which is false in no word,
Upon your commands to defend our right
By our evidences, without waiting judgment.
The Surveyor of all, in whom nothing is forgotten,
Certifies by fact to us and our people,
That we and our ancestors the kingdom of Albany
Have always had in ward and power,
As sovereign lord, without any contradiction,
At all times from king to king, as we find it written,
Received homages and services benignly
Of all the kings of Scotland for their lordship,
And fealty of the earls, of the barons likewise,
With all the liance (right over vassals) which is made by oath,
And the kings removed, and given at will,
Earls and barons forfeited by judgment.
For in the time of Ely and Samuel formerly,
When they went to prophecy to people of the country,
A lord of renown of the blood of Æneas,
Who was a Trojan, arrived by chance
In the isle of Albion, who was named Brutus,
Which is now a kingdom and our inheritance,
It was formerly Britain, had the name from Brut.
Brutus slew all the giants who held it.
Along an arm of the sea he founded a city,
And Brutus called it by name Trinovant,

Qe Loundres est ore dit, de Lond le noun aveit,
Qe de Bretaigne jadis reis estoit,
Après qe Breton mansion aveit.
Sire Brut e ses enfanz sa tere deviseit,
A Loqerin Engletere, qe lors fu Bretaigne ;
Escoce à Albanak, qe dit fu Albanie ;
A Kamber dona Gales pur sa porcion,
Qe dit fu Kambria, du Kamber prist-il noun.
A ses enfaunz pusneés dona son tenement
De Guales e d'Escoce heritablement,
Solunc la lei de Troie, à tenir en feé
Pur homage e service de lour frere eyné.
En l'an secunde après, Brutus de Bretanie
Mort estoit à Loundres en sa seignorie.
Humbert rei de Hunes vint en Albanie,
E Albanak en champ occist par espeie.
Quant Lokerin l'oit, sur li fist sa sute ;
Humbert li vit venir, se prist à la fute
A un braz de mer, où il fust naeé,
Qe pus cel houre en sçà Humber est nomé ;
Par quei tut Albanie en possession
A Lokerins et à ces heirs reverti par reson.
Vers Dounewal, rei jadis de Bretaigne, mesprit
Stater, rei d'Escoce, qe son service desdit.
Dunwal en bataille le rei Stater occist,
Et la tere d'Escoce en sa mein seisist.
Belin fitz Dunwal, après la mort son pere,
Dona la tere d'Escoce à Brennius son frere,
Par la lei de Troie à tenir en feé,
Par homage e service, cum de frere ayné.
De Tuede jesqe à Dovere tote la grant tere
Tint Belyns cum seigneur en temps de pes e guere.
E li rei Arthur, prince renomé,
Destrueit Albanie pur lour adverseté.
A sire Augusele Escoce après doneit,

Which is now called London, it had the name from Lond,
Who was formerly king of Britain,
After the Briton had his dwelling here.
Sir Brut to his children bequeathed his land,
To Locrine England, which was then Britain;
Scotland to Albanac, which was called Albany;
To Camber he gave Wales for his portion,
Which was called Cambria, from Camber it took its name.
To his younger children he gave his lordship
Of Wales and Scotland by inheritance,
According to the law of Troy, to hold in fee
By homage and service of their elder brother.
In the second year after, Brutus of Britain
Died at London in his lordship.
Humbert, king of the Huns, came into Albany,
And slew Albanac with sword in the field.
When Locrine heard it, he made his pursuit upon him;
Humbert saw him come, took to flight
To an arm of the sea, where he was drowned,
Which from that time to this is named Humber;
Whereby all Albany in possession
Reverted by right to Locrine and to his heirs.
Towards Dunwal, formerly king of Britain, offended
Stater, king of Scotland, who refused his service.
Dunwal slew king Stater in battle,
And seized the land of Scotland into his hand.
Belin son of Dunwal, after the death of his father,
Gave the land of Scotland to Brennius his brother,
To hold in fee by the law of Troy,
By homage and service, as of his elder brother.
All the great land from Tweed to Dover
Belin held as lord in time of peace and war.
And king Arthur, a prince of nown,
Destroyed Albany for their rebellion.
Afterwards he gave Scotland to sir Augusele,

E qe les services au rei Arthur feseit.
A Kerlion après Arthur tint sa feste,
Où tretouz ses reis lour services aveit presté;
Le rei Auguisele l'espeie Arthur porteit,
Pur le service d'Escoce, qe à li deveit.
Puis cel houre en sceà le reis de Albanie
Unt touz esté suget au reis de Bretanie.
Edward le veuz, après prince des Bretons,
Fist mander le reitels de ses regions,
De Comberland, d'Escoce, e touz les Norreis,
Qe fei li deveient, ovesqe les Westreis;
Il rescut les homage e les services en soun,
Cum seignour soverein de chescone regioun.
Le rei Athelstan après Edward regneit,
Constantin d'Escoce rei south li feseit,
E dit plus est glorie e plus est honeur
Rei fere qe rei estre en tere de valour.
Avint après par cas desdit li esteit
Le service d'Escoce q'il aver soleit.
Sa guere sur Escoce le plus tost comenceit,
Seint Johan de Beverlé en eide requereit,
E passeit en Escoce, le pople outreieit,
De touz enemis la mestrie aveit,
Empriant de consail seint Johan de Beverlie,
Feseit sa volunté parmi tut Albanie.
Cil ferist espeie en la roche dure
Une aune profound, par miracle pure;
Emprès du Dunbar puit home ver coment
Le rei Athelstan ferist si noblement.
Ensint en l'eglise Johan de Beverlé
Par verrai escripture le fet est testmoigné.
Constantin d'Escoce, e Eugene ensement
Rei de Comberland, od tere e tenement,
Au rei Athelstan se rendeient après.
Le rei Athelstan les granta sa pes.
Le fitz Constantin, en signe de pardoun,

And who performed the services to king Arthur.
At Caerleon, subsequently, Arthur held his feast,
Where all his kings had yielded their services;
King Augusele carried Arthur's sword,
For the service of Scotland, which he owed to him.
Since that time to the present the kings of Scotland
Have all been subject to the king of Britain.
Edward the Elder, afterwards prince of the Britons,
Sent his summons to the kinglets of his kingdoms,
Of Cumberland, of Scotland, and all the Northerns,
Who owed him fidelity, with the Westerns;
He received the homages and the services together,
As sovereign lord of each kingdom.
King Athelstan reigned after Edward,
He made Constantine king of Scotland under him,
And said it is more glory and more honour
To make a king than to be a king in land of worth.
It happened afterwards, as it fell out, was denied him
The service of Scotland that he used to have.
He immediately began war against Scotland,
Asked John of Beverley to be in aid to him,
And passed into Scotland, reduced the people,
Had the mastery over all his enemies,
Beseeching the counsel of St. John of Beverley,
Did his will through all Albany.
It was he who struck his sword into the hard rock
A yard deep, by pure miracle;
Near Dunbar you may see how
King Athelstan struck so nobly.
Thus in the church of John of Beverley
The fact is testified by true writing.
Constantine of Scotland, and likewise Eugenius
King of Cumberland, with land and lordship,
Submitted afterwards to king Athelstan.
King Athelstan granted them his peace.
The son of Constantine, in token of pardon,

Lors leva de founte e dona son noun.
Edred, frere Athelstan, en Engletere regneit,
Herice rei d'Escoce service qe li doneit[1]

E touz ceaus d'Escoce fesoient sanz desceit.
Rei Engleis après, Edgar, frere Edrede,
Rei south li avoit Kynaid delà Tuede,
E vj. altres des isles rei south li nomé,
De Comberland, de Wente, de Galeweie clamez,
De Man, de Fritherhide, e de Loudenie,
Qe au rei Edgar aleient à grant noblie,
A rendre lour homage qe à li deveient ;
En la rivere de Dee en nief li troveient.
Edgar les regard, e dit en son langage,
" Mult fet à preiser prince de parage,
" E ses successours se purrunt loer,
" Qe de tanz de reis service deit aver."
En divers cronicles le dit est testmoyné,
Qe par le rei Edgar illoqes estoit parlé.
Après la mort Edgar regneit en Engletere
Chescon après autre iiij. reis sanz guere ;
Edward le martir estoit le primer,
Elred le secunde, le tierz oi nomer
Edmon Irenside, le quarte appeller
Knout, pere Hardknout, à queus lour regner
Touz les reis d'Escoce feseient lour dever,
Forpris le quinzime an ke Knout fu corouné,
Malcolme rei d'Escoce encountre li fu levé.
Quant Knout la pursut, tost sur li aloit,
E parmi Escoce sa volunté fesoit.
Harald e Hardknoud les fitz Knout esteient,
A queus le rei d'Escoce, tant cum ele regneient,
Assetz sollempnement obligez jureient
A fere lour services sicum ils deveient.

[1] A line is omitted, and a blank left, in the manuscript.

He then raised from the font, and gave him his name.
Edred, brother of Athelstan, reigned in England,
Eric king of Scotland the service which he owed him

And all those of Scotland performed without deceit.
The king of England next, Edgar, brother of Edred,
Had Kynaid king under him beyond Tweed,
And six others of the isles named kings under him,
Of Cumberland, of Went, of Galloway proclaimed,
Of Man, of Fritherhide [? Hebrides], and of Lothian,
Who went to king Edgar with great nobility,
To render their homage which they owed to him ;
Thy found him in a ship in the river of Dee.
Edgar contemplates them, and says in his language,
" Much cause to be praised has a prince of kindred,
" And his successors can take glory from it,
" Who claims the service of so many kings."
The saying is recorded in divers chronicles,
Which was there spoken by king Edgar.
After the death of Edgar reigned in England
Each after other four kings without war ;
Edward the martyr was the first,
Elred the second, the third I heard named
Edmund Ironside, the fourth called
Cnut, the father of Hardacnut, to whom during their reigns
All the kings of Scotland performed their duty,
Except the fifth year after Cnut was crowned,
Malcolm king of Scotland rose against him.
When Cnut was aware of it, he immediately went against him,
And did his will throughout Scotland.
Harald and Hardacnut were the sons of Cnut,
To whom the kings of Scotland, as long as they reigned,
Very solemnly swore to their obligations
To do their services as they owed.

Après la mort Harald e Hardknoud son frere,
Resceut seint Edward la monarchie entere.
Tant cum il regneit en grant humilité,
Morust le rei d'Escoce sanz fitz en herité.
Le rei de Comberland, Malcolme, un fitz avoit,
A qi le regne d'Escoce seint Edward doneit,
De li e ses heirs à tenir en feé,
Fesaunt les services dues e les coustomé.
En Engletere regneit après seint Edward
Un son cosin Normaund, Wiliam le bastard,
A ki le rei Malcolme vint e dit de greé
Pur la tere d'Escoce homage e feauté;
E à Wiliam le rous son fitz après li
Fist Malcolme homage pur tut Albani.
Wiliam le rous après housteit de son seé
Dunwal, rei d'Escoce, pur sa iniquité,
E Dunkan fitz Malcolme rei d'Escoce fist;
De li pur son reaume homage e feauté prist.
Dunkan après estoit par treson tué,
E Dunwal en la tere par poer fu entré.
Le rei Wiliam le rous le rei Dunwal ousteit,
Edgar fitz Malcolme rei d'Escoce feseit.
Son frere Alexandre après Edgar regneit,[1]
Le rei Henri son frere, à qi de gré feseit
Le rei Alexandre quanqe fere deveit.
Maud l'emperice fu fidle e fitz Henri;[2]
David rei d'Escoce fist homage à li;
E quant le rei Estevene en Engletere regneit,
Henri le fitz David homage à li feseit.
Henri fitz l'emperice coronez estoit,
Escoce e Engletere en pes governeit;
Chivaler pruz e sage un fitz Henri avoit,
Qe rei de son reaume à Loundres coroneit;
Wiliam rei d'Escoce, e David son frere,

[1] There is perhaps a line wanting here, which stated that William Rufus was succeeded by his brother.

[2] This line is apparently corrupt or imperfect.

After the death of Harald and Hardacnut his brother,
St. Edward received the entire monarchy.
While he reigned in great humility,
The king of Scotland died without son to inherit.
The king of Cumberland, Malcolm, had a son,
To whom St. Edward gave the kingdom of Scotland,
To hold in fee of him and his heirs,
Doing the services due and the customs.
In England reigned after St. Edward
A Norman cousin of his, William the bastard,
To whom king Malcolm came and said voluntarily
Homage and fealty for the land of Scotland;
And to William Rufus, his son, after him
Malcolm did homage for all Albany.
William Rufus afterwards expelled from his throne
Dunwal, king of Scotland, for his iniquity,
And made Duncan son of Malcolm king of Scotland;
He took of him homage and fealty for his kingdom.
Duncan afterwards was slain by treason,
And Dunwal was entered into the land by force.
King William Rufus expelled king Dunwal,
Made Edgar son of Malcolm king of Scotland.
His brother Alexander reigned after Edgar,
King Henry his brother, to whom voluntarily performed
King Alexander all that he ought to perform.
Maud the empress was daughter and Henry the son;
David king of Scotland did homage to him;
And when king Stephen reigned in England,
Henry son of David did homage to him.
Henry son of the empress was crowned,
Scotland and England he governed in peace;
He had a son Henry, a gallant and wise knight,
Whom he crowned at London king of his kingdom;
William king of Scotland, and David his brother,

Les hautz homes d'Escoce, uncle, fitz, e pere,
A li feseient homage, e ceo li jureient,
Sauve la feauté qe à son pere deveient.
Le fitz morust après, cum Dieu out ordiné,
E survesquit le pere en sa regauté.
En l'an vintisme après Henri fitz l'emperice,
Le rei William d'Escoce, par mult grant malice,
Encontre son serment, od son fole sute,
Hast par coup d'espeie Northumberland destrute.
Les Norreis de sçà countre li combateient,
A Alnewike li pristrent, au rei Henri meneient.
L'an après, en Marce, par condicion,
Estoit le rei William deliveré de prison.
En cel an en Septembre plus prochein après
Vint li rei Wiliam en bon amour e pes
En la mere eglise à Everwik nomé,
Par sa patente lettre se obliga de greé,
Pur li e pur ses heirs, à touz les reis Engleis
Qe après vendrunt, e testmoignance de treis,
La chapel de sa teste, sa seal, e sa leaunce,
Sunt en cel eglise pur verraie remembrance.
La comune d'Escoce au rei Henri assure,
Si ceste covenant ne teigne, le rei Wiliam destrure.
E Gregorie la pape, qe none est nomé,
Conferma la liaunce par lettre enbullé.
En Engle[te]re e Escoce par divers escrit
Put home ver e lire la verité parfit.
E al dit Henri Clement le pape escrit
Pur Johan l'esvesqe de Seint Andreu, dit
Qe le rei d'Escoce l'aveit engeté,
E qe le rei Henri par sa regauté
Wiliam amonesteit restorer de greé
Au dit Johan evesqe la dite evescheé.
Le mandement le pape par tant certefie

The high men of Scotland, uncle, son, and father.
Did homage to him, and swore it to him,
Save the fealty which they owed to his father.
The son died afterwards, as God had ordered it,
And the father survived in his royalty.
In the twentieth year after Henry son of the empress,
King William of Scotland, through very great malice,
Against his oath, with his mad followers,
Has destroyed Northumberland with the sword.
The northerners on this side fought against him,
They took him at Alnwick, and carried him to king Henry.
The year following, in March, by treaty,
Was king William delivered from prison.
In that year in September nearest following
Came king William in good love and peace
Into the mother church at York,
Bound himself voluntarily by his letter patent,
For himself and for his heirs, to all the English kings
Who shall come after, in witness of three things,
The hat from his head, his seal, and his spear,
Are in that church for true remembrance.
The commonalty of Scotland made assurance to king Edward
To destroy king William, if he hold not this covenant.
And Gregory the pope, who is called ninth,
Confirmed the sovereignty by his letter with bull,
In England and Scotland by divers writings
May a man see and read the perfect truth.
And Clement the pope wrote to the said Henry
For John bishop of St. Andrews, said
That the king of Scotland had expelled him,
And that king Henry by his royalty
Should admonish William to restore voluntarily
The said bishopric to the said bishop John.
The pope's mandate therefore certifies

Qe au reis Engleis estoit la seignorie.
En la dit eglise vindrount autre feez
A Henri e Wiliam, reis avant nomez,
De la tere d'Escoce countes e barons,
Evesqes e gardeins de religiouns,
E cum au seigneur lige illoqes li feseient
Homage e feauté, sicome il deveient.
Le rei Wiliam après, od mesmes cel gent,
A Norhamptoun au rei vint à parlement,
Autre foiz aillours à son mandement.
E au rei Richard, après Henri son pere,
Wiliam le rei d'Escoce, pur sa tere entiere,
Tut dreit à Caunterbire son homage fist,
E le rei Richard sollempnement le prist.
Après le rei Richard, son frere Johan regneit,
A ki son homage li dit Wiliam feseit
A Nichole sur un mount hors de la cité.
Sur la croice Hubert, ercevesqe sacrée
Au sé de Canterbire, Wiliam là jureit
Au rei Johan e ses heirs qe leaus li serreit.
Après le rei Wiliam, desutz nous regneit
Son fitz Alexandre, ke nostre sorour esteit;
Homage à nostre pere e à nous ensement
Pur le regne d'Escoce fist devoutement.
Morust Alexandre, un soul soer aveit,
Par noun Margarete, qe nostre niece estoit,
Cele sanz heir de sei sa vie quant finist,
Escoce sanz gardein lors south nous remist.
En cel vacacion, à nous vindrent de greé
Les hautz homes d'Escoce, nes un accepté,
Come à chief seigneur e guiour souverein,
Citez, burgs, e viles, cum à lour gardein,
Chastels, tours, e teres, sanz retenement,
A nus e à nos gens rendirent pleinement,
Feauté nous fesoient sur livere par serement,
E par lour seals pendanz, dount testmoigne ne ment,

That the sovereignty belonged to the English king.
In the said church came another time
To Henry and William, the kings before named,
Earls and barons of the land of Scotland,
Bishops and wardens of abbeys,
And, as to their liege lord, there performed to him
Homage and fealty, as they ought.
King William afterwards, with those same people,
Came to the king at Northampton to the parliament,
At another time elsewhere at his summons.
And to king Richard, after his father Henry,
William king of Scotland, for his entire land,
All the way at Canterbury did his homage,
And king Richard took it in ceremonious form.
After king Richard, his brother John reigned,
To whom king William performed his homage
At Lincoln on a hill outside the city,
On the cross of Hubert, consecrated archbishop
To the see of Canterbury, William there swore
That he would be loyal to king John and his heirs.
After king William, under us reigned
His son Alexander, who was our brother-in-law ;
Homage to our father and to us likewise
He performed devoutly for the kingdom of Scotland.
Alexander died, he had an only sister,
By name Margaret, who was our niece,
When she ended her life without heir of her body,
Scotland without ruler then remained under us.
In this vacancy, came to us voluntarily
The high men of Scotland, not one excepted,
As to their chief lord and sovereign ruler,
Cities, boroughs, and towns, as to their keeper,
Castles, towers, and lands, without reservation,
They fully surrendered to us and to our people,
Did fealty to us on book by oath,
And by their seals attached, of which witness lies not,

Nous mesmes e nos ministres la tere qe gardeient,
A queus les Escoz tretouz enclineient ;
E nous cum seigneur e dustre honureient,
E sanz countredire pleinement feseient
Quanqe à seignur lige en tel temps deveient.
Après tiels afferes sourda contencion
En la tere d'Escoce pur la region,
Par quei les parties à nous cum à seignur
Vindrent e se mistrent de lour grant clamour
En certeines persones e trier lour descent,
E sur ceo resceivere nostre jugement.
En cele enqueste prise, le triour troveit
Qe Johan de Bailliol heir plus près esteit.
Nous, par la vertue de nostre seignorie,
Al dit Johan donames le regne d'Albanie,
E là li vestimes de la regauté,
A tenir par homage de nous e noz enfeez,
Fesaunt les services à nos mandemenz,
Venir en Engletere à noz parlemenz
A nous e nos heirs, sanz collusion,
E leaument receiver la subjectioun.
Le rei Johan de Bailliol, un poi de temps après,
Enfreint son serment, debrusa nostre pees,
E ausint feseient countes e barons
Qe odvesqe li leveient en conspiracioun,
Tindrent nos ministres cum fous e felouns,
A nous e nos heirs en desheritisoun.
Nous par la pleint oie meintenant alames
En la marche d'Escoce, au rei Johan mandames
Qe à nous venist en fei qe nous deveit,
E tretter des choses qe nous e li tocheit.
Responant nous redist en rien fu tenuz,
Mès son service à tort avoit-il conuz.
Sanz plus fere à nous, cil e ses felons
Curunt sur nos teres e nos possessions,

Our selves and our officers who had charge of the land,
To whom all the Scots submitted;
And honoured us as lord and leader,
And without contradiction performed fully
What they owed to a liege lord on such an occasion,
After these affairs arose contention
In the land of Scotland for the kingdom,
Wherefore the parties to us as to the lord
Came and placed themselves with their great claims
In certain persons, and to try their descent,
And upon that receive our judgment.
In this inquest taken, the trier found
That John de Bailiol was the nearest heir.
We, by virtue of our seignory,
Gave to the said John the kingdom of Albany,
And there we invested him with the royalty,
To hold by homage of us and ours in fee,
Performing the services at our summons,
To come into England to our parliaments
To us and to our heirs, without deceit,
And loyally receive the subjection.
King John de Bailiol, a little time afterwards,
Broke his oath, transgressed our peace,
And so did earls and barons
Who rose in conspiracy with him,
And held our officers like madmen and felons,
In disinheritance of us and our heirs.
We, on hearing the complaint, went now
Into the March of Scotland, we summoned king John
To come to us on the fidelity which he owed us,
To treat of matters which touched us and him.
He returned us a reply that he was bound in nothing,
But he had wrongfully acknowledged his service.
Without more ado with us, he and his felons
Invaded our lands and our possessions,

Abbeies, burgs, e viles, manoirs, en Engletere
Ardrent, destrurent, trop dure fu la guere,
Qar femmes e enfanz mistrent à l'espeie,
Ne grant ne petit suffreient aver vie.
Tant fu li rei devez, tant fu sa route fole,
Qe dous cenz des clergeons arderent en l'escole.
Nos niefs sur la rive en furent arivez
Ardeient, e tueient les genz dedenz trovez.
Treis de nos countez wasteient pleinerement.
Homages e feautés pur eaus comunement
Qe avant nous feseient, lors à nous rendirent,
E nous defieient, cum fous qe plus ne virent.
E, sire, quant nous veimes sur nous tiel damage,
E sur nostre pople tiel tortz e tiel outrage,
Tielz fetz de felons, e tiel diffiaunce,
Sur nous e nos heirs en desheritaunce,
Reson nous chasça refrener la folie
De ces qe si blemeient nostre seignorie,
E par les leys usez touz jours sçà en arere,
Tant nous despiseient, sanz eus joustisere
Le reaume d'Escoce, qe tant fu plein de mal,
E come avant est dit nostre feodal,
Par counsail de nos clers, nos countes, e barons,
Par poer chastiames tiels mesprisons
Du dit rei Johan e de sa compaignie,
Qi feimentuz feseient treson e trecherie.

Escoce fu perdu e forjugé de dreit
Par la prodicion qe li rei Johan feseit.
Nous lors reseisimes la tere pleinement,
Od citez, burgs, e viles, sanz retenement.
Li dit Johan Bailliol à nous approcheit,
E à nous e noz de grée conoisseit
Trestut son trespas, quitement clameit
A nous e nos heirs tut le cleim e dreit
Q'en le dit reaume en nul temps avoit,
Nous rendi son homage qe avant nous fist;

Abbeys, burghs, and towns, and manors, in England
They burn and destroy, very cruel was the war,
For they put to the sword women and children,
Suffered neither great nor little to have life.
So insane was the king, so mad was his army,
That they burnt two hundred little scholars in their school.
Our ships which were arrived on the coast
They burnt, and slew the people found in them.
They completely laid waste three of our counties.
The homages and fealties generally by them
Which before they performed to us, they gave back to us,
And defied us, like madmen who saw no further.
And, sire, when we saw such damage upon us.
And upon our people such wrongs and such injury,
Such felons' acts, and such hostility,
In disinheritance upon us and our heirs,
Justice drove us to put a check to the folly
Of those who thus mutilated our lordship,
And by the laws used always down to the present,
They despised us so much, without them to govern
The kingdom of Scotland, which was so full of evil,
And as before is said our fief,
By counsel of our clergy, our earls, and barons,
By force we chastised such offences
Of the said king John and of his company,
Who breaking their faith did treason and treachery.
Scotland was lost and confiscated rightly
Through the treason which king John did.
We then resumed the land fully,
With cities, burghs, and towns, without reserve.
The said John Bailiol came to us,
And to us and ours voluntarily acknowledged
All his trespass, quit-claimed
To us and our heirs all the claim and right
Which he had at any time in the said kingdom,
And rendered us his homage as he did before;

Son fet est testmoigné par verrai escrit.
Nos hautz homes de la tere touz communement
Homages nous feseient pur lour tenement,
Cum de seigneur lige, sanz mené à tenir,
A nous e nos heirs duement servir.
Lour fet est escrit qe ne puit faillir ;
Chescon seal i pent, qe ne puit mentir.

Sire, ta sentence prioms devoutement,
Le dreit de nous e nos, recordé tant sovent,
Cum tu as oie en ceste escripture.
Toun quoer enfourmer voillez par figure
En voie de verité, ke hors de dreit ne veit,
Ne à ditz contraries legerement otreit,
Ne à nos enemis, sire, ne voillez crere,
Qe volent nous e nos desheriter de tere.
Mès voillez pur Dieu, come à pere apent,
Nous e nos reaumes, od l'apurteinement,
Sauver sanz blemure pardurablement.
Ta vie sauve e garde Dieus omnipotent.
Done à Kelleseie, par commun agard,
En l'an xxix. de nostre regne, Edward.

Mandatum communitatis Angliæ domino papæ transmissum pro jure regis Angliæ, factum per viij. comites, et xxiiij^or^. barones, et xv. vexillares, per verba Gallica quæ immediate sequantur.

Sire Boniface, par Dieu e sa grace pape consecrez,
Li counte a li baroun d'Engleterre par noun, salutz e bouche à peez,
La seinte mere eglise de Rome renomé,
Par qi nostre fei deit estre governé,
Tiel est en ses feez, cum avoms entendu,
Qe nuli droit par li deit estre perdu ;

His act is witnessed by true writing.
Our magnates of the land all commonly
Performed homage to us for their lordship
As to the liege lord, without summons to hold,
To serve duly us and our heirs.
Their deed is put in writing that it cannot fail;
The seal of each hangs to it, that it cannot be false.
Sire, we devoutly pray thy judgment,
The right of us and ours, recorded so often,
As thou hast heard in this writing.
Be willing to inform thy heart by figure
In way of truth, that it go not away from right,
Nor yield lightly to contrary statements,
Nor, sire, be willing to believe our enemies,
Who seek to disinherit us and our heirs of land.
But be willing, for God's sake, as becomes a father,
Us and our kingdoms, with the appurtenance,
To save without mutilation for ever.
May God Almighty save and guard thy life.
Given at Kelsoe, by common award,
In the year twenty-nine of our reign, Edward.

Message of the commonalty of England sent to the lord the pope for the right of the king of England, made by eight earls, and twenty-four barons, and fifteen bannerets, in French words which immediately follow.

To sir Boniface, by God and his grace consecrated pope,
The earls and barons of England by name, salutations and mouth to foot.
The holy mother church of Rome renowned,
By whom our faith ought to be governed,
Is such in her acts, as we have heard,
That nobody's right ought to be lost by her;

Mès cum chief de touz fere deit equité
A touz, cum à li mesmes, par voie de verité.
Nostre sire Edward n'ad guers plus pleinement
A Nichole sa cité tint son parlement,
Où nous touz venimes par comun assent,
E là à tres oimes vostre mandement
Sur choses qe touchent nostre rei Engleis,
Pur les genz d'Escoce, qe sount hors de peez.
Ton mandement oi e bien escouté,
Chescon de nous estoit mult emerveilé.
En temps de nos ancestres unqe ne fu parlé
Qe au rei Edward par toi fust nuncié,
Qe querele oie ne pleinte ne clamour,
De la seignorie dount il est seignour.

Beau pere, nous savoms assez certeinement
De la tere d'Escoce, e quanqe à li apent ;
En temps des Bretons, des Engleis ensement,
Ad tut temps esté soutz le governement
De touz les auncestres nostre rei Edward,
En lour seignorie, quites sanz reward,
Sire, jesqe l'autreher, qe tu as nous chalengé,
A tort, qar tu n'as dreit, ne nul autre estrange.
Qar unqes en nul temps pus le comencement
Qe Escoce fu doné pur tere e tenement
Au rei Albanac, dount Albanie fu dit,
N'aveit home en vie qe soverein se fist
Sur la tere d'Escoce, les genz justiser,
Si noun les reis Engleis, parmi lour poer ;
Ne les reis Engleis aillours pledeient
Pur choses qe d'Escoce à eus appendeient,
Ne de temporals aillours respundirent
Pur chose qe soutz eaus lour subjetz mesfirent
Ne à l'eglise de Rome ren apurteneit ;
Mès touz jours à nos reis feodal esteit.

Sire, pur tiel chose en vostre mandement
Continue estoit, en nostre parlement

But as chief of all she ought to do equity
To all, as to herself, by way of truth.
Our lord Edward not long ago very fully
At Lincoln his city held his parliament,
Where we all came by common assent,
And there we heard attentively your message
On things which touched our English king,
For the people of Scotland, who are out of peace.
Thy message heard and well listened to,
Each of us was much astonished.
In time of our ancestors never was said
What to king Edward was announced by thee,
Nor claim heard, nor complaint, nor clamour,
Of the sovereignty of which he is lord.
Fair father, we know certainly enough
Of the land of Scotland, and all that belongs to it;
In times of the Britons, of the English likewise,
It has always been under the government
Of all the ancestors of our king Edward,
In their lordship, quit without fee,
Sir, till the other day, when thou hast challenged us,
Wrongfully, for thou hast no right, nor no other foreigner.
For never at any time since the beginning
When Scotland was given for land and lordship
To king Albanac, from whom it was called Albany,
Was there a man alive who made himself sovereign
Over the land of Scotland, to judge the people,
Except the English kings, as part of their power;
Nor did the English kings plead elsewhere
For affairs of Scotland which belonged to them.
Nor of temporals were responsible elsewhere
For thing in which under them their subjects erred,
Nor did anything belong to the church of Rome;
But it was always feodal to our kings.
Sire, for such thing as in your message
Was contained, in our parliament

Esteimes e serroms trestouz d'un assent,
Par aide e consail de Dieu omnipotent,
Eider à nostre rei en sa regauté,
Q'en balaunce ne mette seignorie ne fée,
Ne avant toi ne altre mette en jugement
Qe à sa coroune de tant temps appent ;
Ne procuratour i mande à toi ne à ton sée,
Par quei sa coroune soit desherité,
Encountre vieuz usages e leis des auncestres,
En citez, viles, e burgs, e teres champestres.
Queles leis e quel usages du rei e sa coroune
Nous jurez à defendre, qi unqes cointresoune.
Mès qe li rei Edward de tiel chose n'eit cure,
Defendre le voloms tantqe vie nous dure.
A nous serroit esclaundre e notarie huntage,
Qe nostre reis Edward perdesist homage
Qe nous pussums defendre e sauver par espeie,
Assez serroms digne de Dieu aver maugré.

Par quei ta sentence prioms devoutement,
Qe nostre rei Edward voillez benignement
Sustenir en son droit sanz desturbement,
Cum un des reis du munde qe plus sollempnement
Se porte e se meine vers Dieu omnipotent;
E pur la bounté voillez sanz blemure
Ses teres e ses feez sauver sanz destrure.
Si tu seiez son pere, tiel estre deit ta cure.
Te comandoms à Dieu, fitz la Virge pure.
En testmoigne à ceste lettre penduz sunt nos seals,
Pur nous avant nomez e pur touz iceaus
Qe sunt de la tere dount nous sumes neez.
Doné à Nichole devant noz parentez,
En meis de Februare, le jour pur veir duzisme,
En l'an le fitz Marie mil e trescentisme.

We were and shall be all of one assent,
By aid and counsel of God Almighty,
To assist our king in his royalty,
That he put in risk neither lordship nor fee,
Nor before thee nor other put in judgment
What belongs to his crown since so long a time ;
Nor send proctor to thee or to thy see,
Whereby his crown may be deprived of heritage,
Contrary to old usages and laws of our ancestors,
In cities, towns, and burghs, and country lands.
Which laws and which usages of the king and his crown
We are sworn to defend, whoever may attack them.
But that king Edward may have no fear of such thing,
We will defend him as long as our lives last.
It would be scandal and notable shame to us,
That our king Edward should lose homage
Which we could defend and save with the sword,
We shall be very worthy to have God's enmity.
Wherefore we pray thee devoutly thy sentence,
That thou wilt benignly our king Edward
Sustain in his right without impediment,
As one of the kings of the world who most solemnly
Bears and conducts himself towards God Almighty ;
And for goodness, do thou decide without diminution
To save his lands and his fees from destruction.
If thou be his father, such ought to be thy care.
We commend thee to God, the son of the pure Virgin.
In witness our seals are hanged to this letter,
For us before named and for all those
Who are of the land of which we are born.
Given at Lincoln in presence of our kindred,
In the month of February, the day for truth the twelfth,
In the year of the son of Mary one thousand and three hundred.

APPENDIX II. - - -

Poems ascribed to Pierre de Langtoft, im-

AN ALLEGORICAL ROMANCE ON

Un rois jadis estait qe avait un amye,
Laquele plus ama qe ne fist sa vie.
Ceo apparust bien quant par gelusye
La mort en prist pur lye à seison establye.
S'amie out close en un chaustel fort,
Où ele out assetz de solace e de comfort.
Là vint un traitour, et par un acord
Ouf ly la mena, si fist al roy grant tort.
Ly rois, qe fust geluse de sa chier amye,
Sout qe par descort ust fet la folye;
De ly se vout venger qe fist la gylerye,
E cele remener qe estoit de ly fuié.
Par power de son host ust hu sa volunté,
Saunz venir à bataille à chivale ou à pée,
Mès pur attreer le quer de cele alopé,
Par soi vout desrener son drait en ly clamé
Tant fu de pruesce son noun renomé,
Qe sa chevalerie de tyrant fut doté;
Dont jà ne ust en chaumpe al rois encontré,
Si le roy ses armes en bataille ust porté.
Mès cointement le fist li vaillaunt chevaler;
Kar il prist les armes un son bacheler,
Qe Adam out à noun, si les fitz rouler,
E par un damoisele ce fist de ceaux armer.
Il entra en la chaumbre cele damoisele,

APPENDIX II.

mediately following the Chronicle in MS. A.

THE DEATH OF CHRIST. (fol. 172 r°.)

There was formerly a king who had a love,
Whom he loved more than he did his life.
That appeared clearly when through jealously
He took death for her at the season ordained.
He had shut up his love in a strong castle,
Where she had enough of solace and comfort.
There came a traitor, and by an agreement
Led her away with him, and did great wrong to the king.
The king, who was jealous of his dear love,
Knew that through discord she had done the folly;
Sought to avenge himself upon him who did the deceit,
And bring her back who had fled from him.
By power of his army he would have had his will,
Without coming to battle on horseback or on foot,
But to draw the heart of that eloped one
He would prove by himself his right claim in her.
His name was so renowned for prowess,
That his chivalry was feared by the tyrant;
Wherefore he would never have met the king in the field,
If the king had carried his arms in battle.
But cunningly the valiant knight did it;
For he took the arms of a bachelor of his,
Whose name was Adam, and caused them to be rolled,
And caused himself to be armed with them by a damsel.
He entered into the chamber of that damsel,

Qe de totes altres estoit la plus bele.
Il entra si suef, saunz noise e favele,
Qe nul homme le sout, fors qe soul cele.
La damoisele l'arma de mut estraunge armure ;
Pur aketoun li bailla blaundre chare e pure ;
Pur cadace e cotoun, saunk mist en cochure ;
Pur quissocz e mustilers, ly dona la furchure ;
Pur chauces de fere, de nerfs mist la jointure.
Ses plates furent de os, qe sisterent à mesure ;
La gaumbeysoun de say, la pele par desure.
De tot partz assist les veynes pur urlure ;
Pur bacyn à la test, li planta anapele ;
Pur la tour de bacin, dedeinz mist la cervele.
La ventaile de l'hauberk estoit la face bele,
Qe privément en chaumbre lascea la pucele.
Quant li rei fust armé, de chambre s'en issist,
De combatre al tyrant fraunchement se profrit.
Le tyrant bien l'avisa, si le out en despit,
E par grant engrèes devers ly roy se mist.
Maint dure assout le tyrant dunc ly fist,
Et le duz chevaler un poy de temps suffrit.
L'autre fu egre, et tant le surquist,
Qe homage e service du chevaler enquist.
" Avay, sire Belial, tu queres grant utrage,"
Dist le chevaler, ke fut de fere curage ;
" Unqes ne fust oye qe serfs de seignurage
" Par poer demandast servise e homage."
" Où est ta seignurie ? " dist ly feal tyrant,
" Unqes ne vis roy aler pain querant,
" Mès i pert qe sortz de linage graunt.
" Par ma curtoisie, si vous frei taunt,
" Rendez vous ore à moy, et jeo vous seiseroy
" De teres e tenementz q'en ma bailli ay,
" E mes en ceste vie ne vous greveroy,
" Par si qe vous facez ceo qe dist vous ay."
" Uncore di, Belial, uncore vous difi ;

Who was the most handsome of all others.
He entered so softly, without noise and talk,
That no man knew it except her alone.
The damsel armed him with very strange armour;
For acketon she gave him very white and pure flesh;
For worsted and cotton, she put blood in layers;
For cuisses and mustilers, she gave him the fourchure;
For iron chausses, she put the juncture of the nerves.
His plates were of bone, which fitted him exactly;
The gambeson of silk, the skin over it.
On all sides she laid the veins for hemming;
For bacinet on the head, she placed him a skull;
For the round of the bacinet, she put the brain within.
The ventaille of the hauberk was the fair face,
Which privately in the chamber the maiden laced.
When the king was armed, he issued from the chamber,
Freely offered himself to combat the tyrant.
The tyrant looked at him well, and held him in contempt,
And with great insolence took his place against the king.
Many a hard blow the tyrant then gave him,
And the gentle knight suffered it a little while.
The other was fierce, and treated him so disdainfully,
That he demanded of the knight homage and service.
" Aha, sir Belial, thou seekest great wrong,"
Said the knight, who was of high courage;
" It was never heard that serfs from lordship
" By force demanded service and homage."
" Where is thy lordship?" said the wicked tyrant,
" I never saw a king go begging his bread,
" But it appears that you are sprung from great lineage.
" By my courtesy, I will do so much for you,
" Yield you now to me, and I will give you seisure
" Of lands and lordships which I have in my power,
" And I will no more grieve you in this life,
" On condition that you do what I have told you."
" Again I say it, Belial, again I defy you;

" De tere ne tenement rien ne vous pri.
" Pur ma chier amye su-jeo venu ci,
" Qe vous malepastes, dont jeo vous defi."
" M'avez ore defié?" dist sire Belial,
" De ceo jour en avant vous garderay par male.
" Asseetz ore un jour, où pople comunal
" Poés veer la bataille en montaigne u en vale."
Le jour fu assis par un Venderdi,
Et leu fu pris en un mount auxi,
Où le chevaler de soen enemy
Desrener dust s'amie, cum promis out à ly.
Au roi fust amené un cheval sojorné,
De quatre manere de pail si estoit veiré,
De cypresce fu le corps, de cedre le pée,
L'eschine fu de olive, de palme haut cryné.
E ly rois mounta tout à son ayn degré,
Pur moustre q'il out drait en chose chalengé.
Sa sele fu trop dure, et mout l'ad anguisé,
Mès pur l'amour s'amye la payne ad ublyé.
Ly tyraunt enviroune le roi de son host;
Le roi ben aperceut lour bobaunce e lour bost;
La baner de ces braz en encountre eaux desclost,
E boute avant l'escu qe ahai tot cel host.
Son esku fu blaunk, estencellé de goules;
En chef sa coroune de verges espinouses;
Blieue la bordure, ouf quatre signes custuses,
En un leu la fountayne, of les veines e woses:
Un heaume out à la teste de chevus rubrichez;
Un hauberk endosé d'escorges maellez;
Un espei en poigne de un clow de fere forgez;
E un launce de pacience fort e ben ferrez.
Ly tyrant le regard, si out grant dedeigne.
E le roi le suffrit travailler en vaine,
Ben attendist houre de lever la mayne.

" Neither of land nor tenement do I ask you anything.
" I am come here for my dear love,
" Whom you illtreated, for which I defy you,"
" Have you now defied me?" said sir Belial,
" From this day forward I will hold you in ill-will.
" Fix now a day, where people of the commonalty
" Can see the battle on mountain or in vale,"
The day was fixed on a Friday,
And the place also was chosen on a mount,
Where the knight from his enemy
Was to rescue his love, as he had promised.
To the king was brought a war-horse,
And it was vairy with four sorts of hair,
The body was of cypress, of cedar the foot,
The back was of olive, high maned with palm,
And the king mounted all at his own will
To show that he had right in the thing claimed.
His saddle was very hard, and has caused him much suffering,
But for the love of his lady he has ignoredthe pain.
The tyrant surrounds the king with his army;
The king perceives well their pride and their boast,
He displays the banner of his arms against them,
And thrusts forward the shield which that army hates.
His shield was white, stencilled with gules;
In chief his crown of thorny rods;
The bordure blue, with four costly signs,
In one place the fountain, with the veins and . . . .;
A helmet he had on his head of red hairs;
A hauberk on his back enamelled with scourges;
A sword in his hand forged from an iron nail;
And a lance of patience strong and well pointed with iron.
The tyrant looks at him, and had great disdain.
And the king suffered him to labour in vain,
He waited patiently the time for raising his hand.

L'autre le surquert de malencolye pleine,
Si doun au roi du launce, e perce ses escu;
Le coupe fu si fort dont ad le roi feru,
Qe sink lues de corps saunk en espandu.
Lors quide l'autre avoir le roi venku.
Fort fu cel estour quant si assemblerent,
Qe la tere trembla, e peers debruserent.
La gent de tot partz le roi tant surquerent,
Qe tot à la mort en chaumpe le lesserent.
Cy poet l'em dire où estoit son host,
Qe dust au rois entendre encontre l'autre host?
Là vous respondrai brevement en un mot,
Il out si ordené qe nul luy fust de cost,
Kar soul volait avoir l'amur de s'amye,
Qe soul emprist pur ly tel mescheve sanz aye;
Si altre li ust aidé, lors fust departye
L'amur antre plusours, qe soul ad deservye.
Par tant se mist soul le rois encontre touz;
Et pur ceo qe soul se mist encontre multz,
Le tyraunt quide veindre le chevaler pruz;
Mès il par sa pruesce si les venquist touz.
Il leva sa launce qe suffraunce est dist,
L'un main au tyraunt plainement tollist,
L'autre mayn par vaidie se mist en respit
Tant q'il ust parfait ceo qe il establist.
Par tant ne lessa mie cy tremalvais leer,
Tot drait par la cote prist le chevaler,
Trestot la descire devant e derere;
Jà pur ceo ly rois ne chaunga sa chere.
Quant la cote estrange du roi degisé
Par la main au tyrant fu ci desciré,
Lors estoit ly rois desuz bien armé
En sa armour demayne, qe ensi est devisé;
De joye e de vie tutdroit quartilé,

The other looks fierce at him, full of choler,
Then strikes the king with his lance, and pierces his shield;
The blow was so great with which he has struck the king,
That it has shed blood in five places of his body.
Then the other thinks he has vanquished the king.
Hard was the battle when they thus came together,
That the earth quaked, and the rocks were broken.
The people from all sides pressed so upon the king,
That they left him in the field on the point of death.
Here one might say where was his army
Which ought for the king to contend against the other army?
There I will reply to you briefly in a word,
He had so ordered that none should be with him,
For he sought to have alone the love of his lady,
Who alone undertook for her the danger without aid;
If another had aided him, then would have been divided
The love between several, which he alone had earned.
Therefore the king offered himself alone against them all;
And because he placed himself alone against many,
The tyrant thinks to vanquish the brave knight;
And yet he by his prowess vanquished them all.
He raised his lance which is called suffrance,
Took from the tyrant one hand fully,
The other hand by subtleness waited its time
Until he had completed that which he designed.
Then the very wicked thief hesitated not,
Straightway he seized the knight by the coat,
Tears it all before and behind;
Never for that did the king change his countenance.
When the foreign coat of the disguised king
Was thus torn by the hand of the tyrant,
Then was the king underneath well armed
In his own armour, which is thus devised;
Entirely quartered with joy and with life,

De puissaunce e de saver e de draiture fretté,
En le chef un saicture de haut dignité,
Une bende en belif de immortalité.
Quant ly tyrant le vist qe ceo fu ly rois,
Lors out le corage trop à malehis ;
Il le out vu avant en son grant palais,
Et conisçoit son power, e les droit lais.
Luy chaitif s'en fuist à grant confusioun,
E ly roi descendist en un bas dongoun,
Là trova s'amie en grant chaitivesoun,
Qe mercy li requist de sa mesprisioun.
" Sire," dist-ele, "mercy, chevaler allosé,
" De cest lase cheitif prenge toi pité ;
" Jeo ai tant meffait encontre vostre grée,
" Ne vous ose regarder, de hounte enfrounté.
" Vous me faistez riche, là où pover estoi,
" De robe me vestites qe valust qe sai ;
" La curtoisi fu vostre, la vilanie fu moy,
" Quant ouf le tyrant alai de vous ma vai.
" Sire, en vostre verger, où jadis m'en juai,
" Par un fause clef le tyraunt quist sa pray,
" Entra en parole, e tant me donay,
" Qe à ly me senty par promesse de nobleye.
" Ouf ly m'en aloi à malhoure le mien,
" Qe, si tost cum entroi la tere qe claime soen,
" En prison si me mist, si com vous veez bien.
" Unqes pus ne avoi solace ne joye de nul rien.
" Gentyl quer de roi, mercy vous requer,
" De ma fole emprise me volez pardoner."
Doucement respount ly curtoise chevaler,
" E jeo le vous pardoune fraunchement de qoer.
" Vous me avez costé mut chier huy ceo jour ;
" Unks fitz pur peer entra teel estour.
" Puis qe vous ai conquis par saunk e suour,
" Ne vous poies refuser, en aietez de moi socour.

Fretty with power and with knowledge, and with
righteousness.
In the chief a fillet of high dignity,
A bend in belief of immortality. (?)
When the tyrant saw that it was the king,
Then he had his courage very much abated,
He had seen him before in his great palace,
And knew his power and the just laws.
The wretch fled thence in great confusion,
And the king descended into a low dungeon,
There he found his love in great captivity,
Who sought pardon of him for her offence.
" Sire," she said " mercy, noble knight,
" On this wretched captive take pity;
" I have so much misdone against your will,
" I dare not look on you, overwhelmed with shame.
" You made me rich, there where I was poor,
" You clothed me with a robe which was better than silk;
" The courtesy was yours, the wickedness was mine,
" When I went with the tyrant away from you.
" Sir, in your garden, where formerly I solaced myself
" The tyrant sought his prey with a false key,
" He entered into talk, and gave me so much,
" That he drew me to him by promise of nobility.
" With him I went to my misfortune,
" Who, as soon as he entered the land which he claims
" as his,
" Threw me into prison, as you see well.
" Never after had I solace or joy of anything.
" Gentle heart of a king, I solicit your mercy,
" Deign to pardon my mad conduct."
The courteous knight replies gently,
" And I pardon you freely from my heart.
" You have cost me very dear this day;
" Never did son for father undertake such a battle.
" Since I have won you by blood and sweat,
" I cannot refuse you, have succour of me.

" Si vous avez hount de auncien folye,
" Ore vous afiez en ma gelousie,
" Quant pur l'amour de vous abaundona ma vie,
" Pur vous remener, qe estaitz de moy fuie.
" Regardez ma face com est demaglé,
" Regardez mon corps, cum est pur vous plaié,
" Avisetz mon esku cum est deberdisé,
" E ne quidez jà qe soiez refusé.
" Jadis vous donay fiance en privé,
" Soulement ma amye fustes dunk nomée ;
" Mès ore ma espouse serrez appellé
" De touz qe sevent e saveront de la sollempneté."
Lors prent ly roi sa espouse de prisoun,
Si la meigne ouf ly en bon salvacioun,
" Demorir," dist-il, " cy une bref seisoun,
" Tant com jeo rethorne pur mener vous à mesoun.
" E qe soiez plus sure encountre li adverser,
" Vers vous retenez, en lu de baner,
" Ma chemis de chartres et ma mort amer,
" E ceo vous sauvera du diable encombrer.
" A l'entré de la port mon destrer alowez,
" A l'entré de la chaumbre mon escu pendez,
" Enprès de vostre lit ma launce fichez,
" Si n'averez garde de nul adversitez.
" E si vous gardez bien ceo qe ci vous doun,
" E me volez amer sicum voet resoun,
" Jeo vous fra rayne, e porterez corun
" En ma riche tere, qe tut vous abandoun.
" E quant vostre mené ert tot assemblé,
" A vous revendroi en tens bien seisoné,
" Si vous ameneroy à ma grant cité,
" Où vous troverez solace et tot biens à plenté."
Jeo pri Dieus, nostre roys, chevaler alosée,
Qe conquist en bataille tot humayne ligné,
Nous garde nuit e jour du tyraunt et maufée,
E nous meigne en joye entre sa mesné.
Amen

" If you have shame of your old folly,
" Now put your trust in my jealousy,
" Since for love of you I gave up my life,
" To bring you back, who was fled from me.
" Look at my face, how it is bruised;
" Look at my body, how it is wounded for you;
" Regard my shield how it is bruised,
" And no longer suppose that you are refused.
" Formerly I gave you my faith in private,
" You were then only named my lover;
" But now you shall be called my spouse
" By all who know and shall know of the solemnity."
Then the king takes his spouse from prison,
And leads her with him into a good place of safety,
" To remain," says he, "here a short season,
" Until I return to take you home.
" And that you may be more safe against the enemy,
" Keep with you, in place of banner,
" My shirt of prison (?) and my cruel death,
" And that will protect you from the devil's persecution.
" Leave my steed at the entrance of the gate,
" At the entrance of the chamber hang my shield,
" Fix my lance near your bed,
" And then you will have no fear of any adversity.
" And if you keep well what I here give you,
" And will love me as reason requires,
" I will make you queen, and you shall carry a crown
" In my rich land, which I give up entirely to you.
" And when your household shall be all assembled,
" I will return to you in time convenient,
" And I will lead you to my great city,
" Where you will find solace and all good in plenty."
I pray God, our king, the noble knight,
Who won in battle the whole human race,
That he guard us night and day from the tyrant and fiend,
And lead us in joy among his household.

Amen.

The Lament of the Virgin Mary.
(fol. 174, v°.)

Dame corouné, floure de Parays,
De haut chose emprendre me fu entremys,
Quant paroge ouf ma dame qe fu tant chaitifs;
Mès un fole baudure m'ad le qoer suppris.
Dame, jeo vous pri, pur vostre grant genterise,
Si ma parole seit de folie enprise,
Escotez ma folie e grantez seint eglise
Qe la chose qe pri par vous nous soit aprise.
Mustrez nous la processe cum Jhesu fu peiné,
Quant la mort emprist pur humaigne ligné,
E quel fust la dolure dont fu ton quere percé,
Quant vaistez vostre fitz à la mort liveré.
Vous empernez, dist-ele, mult grant hardement,
Qe me priez ore rehercer cel torment,
Pus qe fu en joye et nul mal ne sent;
Assets avez oye par escrit sovent.
Dame, bien ay trové ceo q'est escrit,
Qe de tuz ses privez ton fitz Jhesu Crist
Nul ne vist la fine, car chescon s'en fuist,
Fors soulement vous e Johan l'Ewangelist.
E si tot le mound ust esté present,
Bien soi qe vous soule maistes plus de entent
De savoir qe l'em fait à cel innocent;
Pur ceo countez nous le processe bonement.
Volunters, fet la dame, e bien le puis faire,
Kar ore me torne à joye trestut cel afaire,
E fra tregrant bien à plusours gentz en tere,
E lour dorra matere de pechez eaux retrere.
Le jour ke mon fitz fu jugez à la mort,
Jeo fu en la cité, et ceo me fut mut fort,
Quant jeo oy sa crie qe amené fust à mort;
Jeo suy après com cele ke n'out confort.
Lors vi mon fitz cum laron amené,

Lady with the crown, flower of Paradise,
I had undertaken to interfere in high things,
When I who was such a wretch conversed with my lady;
But a wild joy had taken my heart by surprise.
Lady, I pray you, for your great gentleness,
If my talk be presumptuous,
Listen to my folly, and grant holy church
That the thing I ask may be taught us by you.
Show us the proceeding how Christ was tormented,
When he took upon him death for the human race,
And what was the pain with which thy heart was pierced,
When you saw your son delivered to death.
You assume, she said, very great boldness,
Who pray me now to repeat that suffering,
Since I was in joy and feel no hurt;
You have heard enough often by writing.
Lady, I have learnt well that which is written,
That of all his private friends, of thy son Jesus Christ
No one saw the end, for every one fled away,
Except only you and John the Evangelist.
And if all the world had been present,
I know that you alone gave more attention
To know what they did to that innocent;
Therefore relate to us the proceedings exactly.
Willingly, says the lady, and I can well do it,
For now all that affair turns to me to joy,
And it will do very great good to many people on earth,
And will give them matter to withdraw them from sin.
The day that my son was condemned to death,
I was in the city, and it was very grievous to me.
When I heard his cry as he was led to death;
I follow after as one whom nothing comforts.
Then I saw my son led like a thief,

E pur cel amour q'en lui oi ficché,
Ne ne me sovent pas q'il out ordené
De mettre soi à mort pur humayne ligné.
Tiel doel me prist qe rien ne pou penser,
Fors ceo qe vi mon fitz si vilement treter.
Jeo ne soi qe fere ne quel part tourner ;
Vers ly m'adrescai, mès ne poai aider.
Mult gentz ly suirent, et les uns plorauntz ;
Vers euz se tourna, e dit en suspiraunz,
" Ne plorez pas pur moy, mès pur vos enfauntz,
" Qe comprent ma mort après ceo jour C. aunz."

Les uns par la voie avant li saqerent,
Ly altre de lour mayns vilement boterent ;
Plusours de la bowe en sa face getterent,
E, qe plus me greva, en ly eschacherent.
Qi est ore en vie qe purra ceo pas lire,
Qu'il des ouez ne plorge ou de quer suspire,
Quant sa bele face, dont tut le cele se mire,
Si dejetté estoit com fondrez est de cire.
La croice, ke fust sa mort, ne fu pas donk à quere,
Devant ly fu mys sur la nue tere ;
A ren qe l'em ly fet jà ne fu contreire,
Einz estoit pliaunt à quanqe volaint fere.
E cyl saunz pité ount pris mon fitz Jhesu,
Si l'ount despullié le corps tretut nue,
E sur la croice cocherent mon duz fitz estendu.
Ha ! dolur q'en mon quer à cel houre fu !
Le corps avait grant, de beel estature,
Dont il avaint percé la croice fors de mesure,
E sakent donc le cors estendu par desure,
Pur feer à mayns et pées acorder la parçure.
De trois clowes de fere trop demesuretz
Li doune[n]t donk parmy les mains et le peez,
E pus ount la croice of son cors levez,
E en la ferme tere mult tresferme ficchez.

And for the love I had fixed in him,
I did not bear in mind that he had ordained
To give himself to death for mankind;
Such grief seized me that I can think of nothing,
Except that I saw my son so vilely treated.
I know not what to do or to what side to turn;
I addressed myself towards him, but could not aid.
Many people followed him, and some weeping;
Towards them he turned, and said sighing,
" Weep not for me, but for your children,
" Whom my death includes a hundred years after to-day."
Some pulled him forwards along the way,
Others pushed him rudely with their hands;
Many threw mud into his face,
And, what grieved me most, they spat upon him.
Who is now alive who can read that passage,
That he does not plunge into tears or groan from his heart,
When his handsome face, which all heaven reflects,
Was all disfigured like melted wax.
The cross, which was his death, was not then to seek,
It was laid before him on the bare ground;
He made no resistance to whatever was done to him,
But was yielding to whatever they would do.
And they without pity have taken my son Jesus,
And have stripped his body entirely naked,
And they laid my gentle son down stretched on the cross.
Ah! the grief that was at that time in my heart!
He had a large body, of handsome stature,
For which they had pierced the cross out of proportion,
And therefore stretch the body extended upon it,
To make the holes fit to the hands and feet.
With three iron nails of very great size
They then strike him through the hands and feet,
And afterwards they have raised the cross with his body,
And fixed it very firmly in the solid earth.

Quant la croice leverent, par charge de son corps
Les vaines se debrisaint et se launcent hors,
Les neerfs poet homme et numbrer touz les os;
Nul ne seet la paine qe Jhesu suffry lors.
Unqes chare en tere ne suffrit payne greindre
Qe ne fist son corps, qe tant fu duz e taindre.
Jeo pri la mort qe me vousist prendre;
Mès ceo me fu pur ren, ne vout à moy entendre.
Jeo regard mon fitz en la croice pendaunt,
Et vi de ses plaies le saunk tot boillaunt
Descendre par ses coustes en la tere rovaunt;
De si riche tresour mist largement avant.
Ha! sa bele chare, qe fu si blaunk e pure,
Jà devent si blef cum la marbre dure;
La vow qe out si clere, jà devent oscure;
La chalur de son cors chaunga en fraidure.
La payn de mon fitz me peerça tot le qoer,
Quant jeo vi sa chare si ferment refraider.
Ore chai avale, e ore vou relever,
Mès ne avay pée qe me poet porter.
Allas! jeo dolourouse, qe avendra de moy!
Pendre en la croice pur tortinuy l'ai,
Qe de ren mesfait, entre larons voi.
Allas! desconfit! où devendroi?
Tretut mun solace ore perdu ai;
Ma vie si est langour, jeo mais en assai
Tantost demorir saunz mettre en delay.
La mort me serra duz, la vie m'est amere;
Jeo pierk cy mà joie qe tant me fu chere.
Pur qoi estes, mort, si cruel e fiere?
Qe ne pernez ouf le fiz cele dolent mere?
Allas! vous chaitifs, trop cruel gentz,
Quele chose vous mist encontre le innocent,
Qe tantz des biens ad fait à plosure gents?
Ceaus qe furent malades, il les sana;

When they raised the cross, by weight of his body
The veins broke and fly out,
The muscles may man count and all the bones;
No man knows the pain which Jesus suffered then.
Never did flesh on earth suffer greater pain
Than did his body, which was so soft and tender.
I prayed death that he would take me;
But it was to no purpose, he would not listen to me.
I look at my son hanging on the cross,
And saw from his wounds the blood all boiling
Descend along his sides, running to the ground;
Of such rich treasure he made large display.
Ah! his fair flesh, which was so white and pure,
Already became as blue as the hard marble;
The countenance which he had so clear, now became dark;
The heat of his body changed to cold.
The suffering of my son pierced all my heart,
When I saw his flesh become so entirely cold.
Now I fall down, and now I will rise,
But I had not a foot which would carry me.
Alas! me unhappy, what will become of me!
I have seen him wrongfully hang on the cross,
Him who sinned in nothing, between robbers.
Alas! disconsolate! what will become of me?
All my solace I have now lost;
My life now is suffering, I seek earnestly
To die soon without making delay in it.
Death will be sweet to me, life is to me bitter;
I lose here my joy which was so very dear to me.
Wherefore are you, death, so cruel and so savage?
Why do you not take with the son this sorrowful mother?
Alas! you wretches, too cruel people,
What thing set you against the innocent,
Who has done so many benefits to many people?
Those who were ill, he cured them;

Ceuz qe furent dolentz, il les conforta;
Ceaux qe furent mort, il les resuscita;
E male encountre bien vous ly rendez jà.
Si nul soit ici q'ait le qoer pitous,
Abreggetz ma dolure entre vous touz,
Aracez mon qoer du corps dolour[u]s,
Si me lessez paiser ouf mon fitz si douz.
Allas! jeo gwerpi! ha! jeo dolorus!
Tiel amur me lye à chose preciouse,
Qe ceste departye m'est si anguissouse,
Qe mort me serrait vie sur tot rien joyouse.
Beaus tredouz fitz, q'en la croice pendez,
Mettez ore consaille qe soi confortez;
Pur la joie qe avoy quant vous fustez neez,
Ne suffrez ore qe soi si ferement esgaretz.
Nul ne seet la joye q'en mon quer conqu,
Quant vostre deité deinz mon cors rescu;
Ne nul ne seet le doloure dont jeo su esmu,
Quant si noble fitz par mort ay perdu.
Ma joie fu mult grant tant cum vous portoi,
Mès uncore greignoure tant com vous letoi,
Et touz jours me crust tant com vous aloi,
Mès ore est ma joie tornez en affray.
Mon fitz me regard de mout pitous oille,
E pus ly grieve al queor qe jeo face tel doel,
Qe ne fet la peyne q'il suffre en tel toelle;
" Suffrez," dist-il, " mere; pur homme morir voille.
" Bele mere," dit-il, " tout seiez-vous mout nett,
" Vous avez mester qe la mort me met;
" Il n'i ad nul autre q'aquiter poet la dett
" De cele forfeture qe Dieuz à homme arett.
" E si ne soit aquité, jà bounté n'avera lu,
" Q'en la joie de ciel homme soit resceu,
" Mès tretouz s'en irront en cel oscure lu
" Où jeo ne vendra ne Dieu ne serra veu.

Those who were in grief, he comforted them;
Those who were dead, he restored them to life;
And now you render him evil in return for good.
If there be any one here who has a compassionate heart,
Abridge my grief among you all,
Tear my heart from the dolorous body,
And let me pass away with my so gentle son.
Alas! me abandoned! ah! me filled with grief!
Such love binds me to a precious object,
That this separation is so painful to me,
That death would be to me life above everything joyful.
Fair and very gentle son, who hang on the cross,
Take now counsel that I be comforted;
For the joy which I had when you were born,
Suffer not now that I be so cruelly tormented.
No one knows the joy which I conceived in my heart,
When I received your godship in my body;
Nor no one knows the grief with which I am agitated,
When I have lost by death so noble a son.
My joy was great while I bore you,
But still greater while I gave you milk,
And always it increased as long as I nourished you,
But now my joy is turned into terror.
My son regards me with very compassionate eye,
And then it grieves him to the heart that I make such lament,
More than does the pain he suffers in such torment;
" Bear with it," he said, "mother; it is my will to die for man.
" Fair mother," said he, " though you be altogether " very sinless,
" You have need that death take me;
" There is no other who can pay off the debt
" Of that forfeit with which God charges man.
" And if it be not paid, goodness will never have place,
" That man be received into the joy of heaven,
" But they will all depart into that dark place
" Where I shall not come nor God be seen.

" Pur ceo, bele mere, ne seez pas esmu ;
" Kar ceo l'acheson pur quo vous eslu,
" Qe par cest chare qe de vous rescu
" Homme soit reformé, qe fut corrumpu."
Lors chai paumé quant oy mon fitz parler,
De qi la voice fu quasé q'avant fut si cler :
E de ceo si pris si grant doel en quoer,
Ke langue ne seet dire, ne homme deviser.
Quant jeo recovery mon entendement,
Vers mount regardoi, e plorou tendrement ;
Gettai les suspires trope pitousement,
Et rechai à tere et là geu longement.
De ceo out mon fitz mout tregrant pitée,
E dist à soen disciple qe Johane es apellé,
" Veez cy vostre miere, la servez tot à grée,
" E vous, beele mere, pur fitz vous soit counté."
E pus devant sa mort à haute voice si dist,
" Ore ai-jeo parfait quanqe reison dist,
" E si ai amendé ceo qe Adam forfist,"
Et jetta donke un cry, si rendist l'espirit.
Mon douz gardain Johan garde emprist de moy ;
Mès si ne feust esperaunce q'avoi bon en moy,
Qe mon fitz releveroit par vertu de soi,
Jeo fuse mort à l'houre de fin doel, jeo croy.
Mès le terce jour après mon fitz releva,
Si m'a parust vif et me conforta,
Qu'il out la victoire me dist e moustra ;
Lors me torne à joye q'avant me greva.
Prioms cely Dieus qe seet en trinité,
Qe suffrist tiel peyne pur humayne ligné,
Q'il nous garde et sauve de mortel pecché,
E pur l'amour Marie nous meigne en sauveté.
AMEN.

Artus scriptoris careant gravitate doloris.
Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto;
Culpa datur Petro deficiente metro.

" Therefore, fair mother, be not distressed;
" For this is the reason for which I chose you,
" That through this flesh which I received from you
" Man may be reformed, who was corrupted."
Then I fell in a swoon when I heard my son talk,
Whose voice was broken which before was so clear:
And of that I took so great grief in heart,
That neither tongue can tell nor man devise.
When I recovered my understanding,
I looked towards the mount, and wept tenderly;
I uttered sighs very piteously,
And fell to the ground again and lay there long.
Of that my son had very great pity,
And said to his disciple who is named John,
" See there your mother, serve her all at her will,
" And you, fair mother, let him be counted for your
" son."
And then before his death he said with a loud voice,
" Now have I completed all that reason required,
" And so have I made the amend for Adam's sin;"
And then he uttered a cry, and gave up the ghost.
My gentle guardian John took charge of me;
But had it not been the hope I had good within me,
That my son would rise again by virtue of himself,
I should have been dead at the time of extreme grief,
I believe.
But the third day after my son rose again,
And has appeared alive to me and comforted me,
That he had the victory he told and showed me;
Then turned to joy for me what before grieved me.
Let us pray that God who sits in trinity,
Who suffered such pain for mankind,
That he keep and save us from mortal sin,
And for the love of Mary lead us into salvation.

AMEN.

APPENDIX III.

Latin verses on the Scots from MS. B.
(fol. 139, r°.)

Regnum Scotorum fuit inter cætera regna
Terrarum quondam nobile, forte, potens.
Reges magnifici Bruti de stirpe regebant
Fortiter egregie Scotia regna prius.
Ex Albanacto trinepote fortis Eneæ
Dicitur Albania, litera prisca probat.
A Scota nata Pharaonis regis Egypti,
Ut veteres tradunt, Scotia nomen habet.
Post Britones, Danatos, Dacos, Piscosque repulsos,
Nobiliter Scoti jus tenuere suum.
Fata ducis celebris super omnia Scotia flebit,
Qui loca septa sato viget ubique sibi.

Mès sur toutes choses Escoce plora la destinée du noble prince le rei Edward, qi altre bounde ne prendra fors le mer pur joindre tut à li.

Principe magnifico tellus viduata vacabit
Annis bis trinis mensibus atque novem.

C'est à dire qe la terre d'Escoce serra vefve après la mort le rei Alexandre vj. anz e ix. mois.

Antiquos reges, justos, largos, locupletes,
Formosos, fortes, Scotia mœsta luget.
Ut Merlinus ait, post reges victoriosos,
Regis more carens regia sceptra geret.
Serviet Anglini regi per tempora quædam.

Merlin dit qe, après le reis victorious avant nomez, un rei serra en Escoce qe ne savera mie estre rei, e celi fust Johan Bailliol, e il servira au rei Engleis par ascon temps.

Pro dolor! Albania fraude subacta sua.

Ceo est à dire, Allas! Escoce, cum vous estes destruz pur vostre fet demeine.

Quod respirabit post funus regis avari.

Ceo est à dire, qe vous averez à recoverer après la mort le rei avers.

Versus Sibillæ.

Cum fuerint anni completi mille ducenti
Et decies deni, post partum virginis almæ,
Bis sex et bini, navigabunt æquora remi,
Inter saxosum fontem castrumque nodosum
Corruet Anglorum gens perfida fraude suorum,
Vix erit in terra binis annis sine guerra,
Versibus antiquis prisca Sibylla canit.

Sibylla dicit.

Rex borialis erit numerosa classe potitus,
Affligens Scotos ense, furore, fame.

C'est à dire, q'il avera un rei norreis qe avera multitude des niefs, e il turmentra les Escoz par espeie, deverie, e faim.

Extra gens tandem Scotorum fraude peribit,

C'est à dire, gens aliens qe sunt en Escoce perirount par fraude d'Escoce.

In bello princeps notus ipse vel ense cadet,
Gallica quem genuit, qui gazis regna replebit,
Proh dolor! o gemitus! fratris ab ense cadet.

C'est à dire, qe li rei surreis charra par espeie en bataile, lequel Fraunce engendra, allas! qe unqes fu née, qe par l'espeie son frere charra, e tut par malice son frere.

Candidus Albanus, patriotis causa ruinæ,
Traditione sua Scotia regna teret

C'est à dire, blaunche Albanie, as gens de vostre pais à garder de ruine, e par ceaus serrez tenuz soutz pez.

Bruti posteritas, Albanis associata,
Anglica regna teret peste, labore, nece.
Regnabunt Britones, Albaniæ gentis amici,
Antiquum nomen insula tota feret.
Ut profert aquila, veteri de terra locuta,
Cum Scotis Britones regna paterna gerent.
Regnabunt pariter in prosperitate quieta,
Hostibus expulsis judicis usque diem.

Gallorum levitas Germanos justificabit;
Italiæ gravitas Gallos confusa necabit;
Succumbet Gallus, aquilæ victricia regna
Mundus adorabit, erit urbs vix præsule digna,
Milleque ducentis, nonaginta sub tribus annis,
Merlini dictis consurget aquila grandis.
Terræmotus erunt, quos non procul auguror esse,
Constantini cædes, et equi de marmore facti,
Et lapis erectus, et multa palatia Romæ.
Papa cito moritur, Cæsar regnabit ubique,
Sub quo tunc vana cessabit gloria cleri.

Isti versus immediate præcedentes inventi fuerint in ecclesia Petri et Pauli sub petra marmorea.

Versus de Prophetiis Merlini.[1]

Ecce dies veniunt, Scoti sine principe fiunt,
Regnum Balliolus perdit, transit mare solus.
Defendi bello Scotus mucrone novello[2]
Sperans Gallorum, vires expectat eorum.
De guerra tuti Gallorum viribus uti,
Congaudent Scoti, currunt ad prælia moti.
Gallia de parvo Scotus profecit in arvo,[3]
Cur in conflictu Scotus ter corruit ictu?

[1] A more correct text of the following lines is given in MS. A. (fol. 2 r°.), from which I have corrected the text here.

[2] *duello*, B.

[3] *Scotus mucrone duello*, B.

Conflictu quarto Scoti ponentur in arto.
Quales sunt et erunt, carmina plura ferunt;
Carmina qui didicit,[1] Trojam per prælia vicit,
Ovidius docuit[2] quæ sibi causa fuit.
Percussis bellis, sterilis fit Troja puellis;
Finitis motis, sic fiet Scotia Scotis.
Vastantur guerra Trojani de prope terra,
Castrorum plena cum finibus est aliena.
Urbibus et villis proles dominatur[3] Achillis;
Pyrrhus vastat eas, Priamum ploravit[4] Eneas;
Merlinus scribit quod turba superba peribit.
Latrans exibit canis et bos profugus ibit.
Tunc nemus Eutherium[5] pennata fronte carebit,
Et genus Albanium sua regna perire videbit.[6]
Scote miser, plora, tibi flendi jam venit hora,
Nam regnum patruum desinet[7] esse tuum.
Principe privaris, campo sic subpeditaris,
Quod meritis miseris semper asellus eris.
Vox de profundis Cambini te vocat undis,
Torquendum clade, quam non novit genus Adæ.
Illuc tende vias, et[8] demonis assecla fias;
Amplius[9] Andreas ducere nescit eas.

Ces sunt les countes d'Escoce.

De Stratherne.	De Archetil.	De Anegos.
De Rosse.	De Carrik.	De Mentest.
Patrik.	De Fif.	De Sutherland.
De Bouhan.	De Mar.	De Murreve.
De Lovenaie.	De Catenesse.	

[1] *Quem carmen dicit*, B.
[2] *Quid jus docuit*, B.
[3] *Viribus et villis proles dominantur*, B.
[4] *plorabat*, B.
[5] *Ethereum*, B.
[6] This line is omitted in B.
[7] *desinit*, B.
[8] *ne*, B.
[9] *Implius*, B.

APPENDIX IV. - - -

A Prophecy in English Rhymes

From MS. A.

Als y yod on ay Mounday
  bytwene Wyltinden and Walle,
Me ane aftere brade waye,
  ay litel man y mette withalle,
The leste that evere I, sathe to say,
  oithere in boure oithere in halle;
His robe was noithere grene na gray,
  bot alle yt was of riche palle.

On me he cald and bad me bide;
  wel stille y stode ay litel space;
Fram Lanchestre the parke syde
  y cen he come, wel faire his pase.
He hailsed me with mikel pride,
  ic haved wel mykel ferly wat he was;
I saide, "Wel mote the bityde!"
  that litel man with large face.

I biheld that litel man
  bi the stretes als we gon gae,
His berd was syde ay large span,
  and glided als the fethere of pae;
His heved was wyte als any swan,
  his hegehen ware gret and grai alsso;
Brues lange wel I the can
  merkes it to fize inches and mae.

APPENDIX IV.

RELATING TO THE SCOTTISH WARS.

(fol. 180, r°.).

As I went on a Monday
between Wiltinden and Wall,
Me alone along the broad way,
a little man I met withal
The least that I, to tell the truth,
[saw] either in chamber or in hall;
His robe was neither green nor grey,
but it was all of rich palle (*a fine cloth*)..

On me he called, and bade me stay;
I stood quite still a little while;
From the parkside at Lanchester
I know he came, very fair his pace.
He saluted me with great pride,
I had very great wonder what he was;
I said, "Well may thee betide!"
that litle man with broad face.

I beheld that little man,
by the roads as we began to go,
His beard was a broad span wide,
and shone like the peacock's feather;
His head was white as any swan,
his eyes were great and grey also;
Brows long well I thee can
mark it to five inches and more.

Armes scort, for sothe I saye,
ay span semed thaem to bee;
Handes brade, vytouten nay,
and fingeres lange he scheued me.
Ay stan he toke op thare it lay,
and castid forth that I mothe see.
Ay merke soote of large way,
bifor me strides he castid three.

Wel stille I stod als did the stane,
to loke him on thouth me nouthe lange;
His robe was alle golde bigane,
wel craftlike maked, I underestande,
Botones asurd everlkes ane,
fra his elbouthe on til his hande;
Eldelike man was he nane,
that in myn herte icke onderestande.

Til him I sayde ful sone on ane,
for forthirmare I wald him fraine,
"Glalli wild I wit thi name,
" and I wist wat me mouthe gaine;
"Thou ert so litel of flesse and bane,
" and so mikel of mithe and mayne,
"Ware vones thou, litel man, at hame,
" wit of their walde ful faine."

"Thoth I be litel and lith,
" amy nothe wytouten wane.
"Fferli frained thou wat I hith,
" that thou salt noth with my name.
"My wonige stede ful wel es dygh,
" nou sone thou salt se at hame."
Til him I sayde, "For Godes mith,
" lat me forth myn erand gane."

"The thar noth of thin errand lette,
" thouth thou come ay stonde wit me,

Arms short, for truth I say,
a span they seemed to be;
Hands broad, without denial,
and fingers long he showed me.
A stone he took up where it lay,
and cast it forth that I might see.
A mark . . . . of broad way
before me he cast three strides.

Very still I stood as the stone did,
to look upon him seemed to me not long;
His robe was all formed of gold,
very artistically made, I understand,
Buttons azured every one,
from his elbow down to his hand;
Old-like man was he none,
that in my heart I understand.

To him I said full soon singly,
for furthermore I would him interrogate,
" Gladly would I know thy name,
" if I knew what I might gain;
" Thou art so small of flesh and bone,
" and so great of might and main;
" Where dwellest thou, little man, at home,
" know of thee I would full gladly."

" Though I be small and supple,
" am I not without dwelling.
" A wonder asked thou, what I am named,
" that thou shalt not know my name.
" My dwelling place full well is arranged,
" now soon thou shalt see at home."
To him I said, " For God's might,
" let me forth my errand go."

" Thou needest not fail of thy errand,
" though thou come a while with me;

" Forthere salt thou noth bisette
" bi miles twa noythere bi three."
Na linger durste I for him lette
bot forth ij fundid wyt that free;
Stintid us broke no becke,
ferlicke me thouth hu so mouth bee.

He vent forth, als ij you say,
in at ay yate, ij underestande;
Intil ay yate, wundouten nay,
it to se south me nouth lange;
The bankers on the binkes lay,
and fair lordes sette ij fonde;
In ilke ay hirn ij herd ay lay,
and levedys south me loude sange.

Lithe, bothe yonge and alde,
of ay worde ij wil you saye,
A litel tale that me was tald,
erli on ay Wedenesdaye.
A mody barn that was ful bald,
my frend that ij frained aye,
Al my thering he me tald,
and y atid me als we went bi waye.

" Miri man, that es so wythe,
" of ay thinge gif me answere,
" For him that mensked man wyt mith,
" wat sal worth of this were?
" And eke our folke hou sal thai fare,
" that at ere by northen nou?
" Sal thai have any contré thare,
" other wether hande sel ave the prou?"

" Ay toupe," he sayde, " es redy thare,
" agayn him yitte es nane that don;
" On yondealfe Humbre is ay bare,
" be he sped salsides son;

" Further shalt thou not go
" by miles two nor by three."
No longer durst I to him object,
but forth I went with that man ;
Neither brook nor stream stopped us,
it seemed to me wonderful how it might be.

He went forth, as I tell you,
in at a gate, I understand ;
In at a gate, without denial,
in to see seemed me not long ;
The coverings lay on the benches,
and I found fair lords seated ;
In each a corner I heard a lay,
and ladies truth to me loudly sang.

Listen, both young and old,
of a word I will you tell,
A little tale that was told me,
early on a Wednesday.
A moody man that was very bald,
my friend whom I interrogated ever,
At my . . . . he told me,
and . . . . me by the way.

" Merry man, who art so knowing,
" of one thing give me answer,
" For him who adorned man with might,
" what shall become of this war?
" And also our people, how shall they fare,
" that are now in the north?
" Shall they have any country there,
" or which hand shall have the superiority."

" A mole," he said, " is ready there,
" against him yet is none that do ;
" On yond side Humber is a bear,
" be he sped . . . . soon,

" Bi he have sped als sal thai sped,
" and redi gates on to fare,
" And man be mensked for his mede,
" and stablestat for evermare.

" And sethen thou fraines, ij wille the say,
" and sette thi state in stabilité.
" Rymitte reith als thou may,
" for ay skill ij tellit the,
" And warn em wel wytouten nay,
" a tyme bifor the Trinité,
" Thare sal deye on ay day
" a folke on feld, ful fa sal flee.

" Wa so flees sal duelle in care,
" for thare may naman time tyde;
" A toupe sal stande agayn ay bare,
" he es ful bald, him dar habide."
" Miri man, ij prai the, yif thou maye,
" yif that thi wille ware,
" Bathe thair names thou me saye,
" wat hate the toupe and wat the bare?"

Am he sayde, "Outen nay hate the tane,
" trou thou my lare.
" Ar thou may that other say,
" that sal be falden wyt that fare."
" The wiser es ij noth of that, miri man,
" wat may ys bee?"
" Nou have ij sayde the wat thai hat,
" forther wites thou nothe for me.

" So lange the lebard loves the layke,
" wit his onsped your sped ye spille,
" And lates the lion have his raike,
" wit werke in werdl als he wille;

" By the time he has sped as shall they speed,
" and ready to go on the way,
" And man be honoured for his desert,
" and established for evermore.

" And since thou askest, I will say to thee,
" and put thy state in stability.
" Remit right as thou may,
" for a reason I tell it thee;
" And warn them well without contradiction,
" a while before the Trinity,
" There shall die on a day
" a people in field, very few shall flee.

" Whoever flees shall dwell in care,
" for there may no man time wait;
" A mole shall stand against a bear,
" he is full bold, he must abide."
" Merry man, I pray thee, if thou may,
" if it be thy will,
" Both their names, thou me tell,
" What is named the mole and what the bear?"

And he said, " Without nay, is called the one,
" believe thou my teaching.
" Before thou mayest say the other,
" that shall be folded with that proceeding."
" The wiser am I nought of that, merry man,
" What may it be?"
" Now have I said to thee what they are named,
" further knowest thou not from me.

" So long the leopard loves the game,
" with his unspeed your speed ye spoil,
" And let the lion have his course,
" with work in world as he will;

" The bare es bonden hard in baite,
" wit foles that wil folies fille ;
" The toupe in toune your werkes wayte,
" to bald his folke he bides stille.

" Bide wa bide, he sal habide,
" thar foles for thaire false fare,
" Fa fra feld theen sal ride,
" the land sal lene wit the bare."
" Forther mare ij wille the frein,
" my frend, yif that thi wille ware,
" Sal ij telle it forthe or layn,
" or thou sal telle me ani mare?"

" Rymith reeth, als ij the sayn,
" als sal thou redi findit thare,
" And fel be of thi tithinges fain,
" wen lives liggen on holtes hare ;
" Bot oute sal ride a chivauché,
" wyt febel fare on ay inche ;
" So false sal thaire waytes be,
" that deye sal many a dougty knythe.

" Knythe and stother bathe sal deye,
" that other moren biyond ma,
" Thouche thay be never so sleeche,
" wyt schrogen snetes fra lives ga.
" The bare es bone to tyne the toure,
" but bald sal be of bataille swa ;
" Wa bides him on hard and herth,
" that day sal deye and duelle in wa.

" Wyt foles sal the fold be leest,
" a poeple liest fol neghe biside,
" Sal come out of the souther west
" wyt reken routes ful on ride ;

" The bear is bound hard in pasture,
" with fools who will perform follies;
" The mole in town watches your works,
" to embolden his people he abides still.

" Abide who abides, he shall abide,
" where fools go for their falseness;
" Few from field then shall ride,
" the land shall remain with the bear."
" Furthermore I will thee ask,
" my friend, if it were thy will,
" Shall I tell it forth or conceal it?
" or shalt thou tell me any more?"

" Rhyme right, as I thee say,
" as thou shalt find it ready there,
" And many be of the tidings eager,
" when lives lie in the grey woods;
" But out shall ride a cavalry expedition,
" with feeble progress on an island;
" So false shall their watchmen be,
" that die shall many a doughty knight.

" Knight and steed both shall die,
" the other morning beyond more,
" Though they be never so sly,
" with . . . . from lives go.
" The bear is ready to lose the tower,
" but bold shall be of battle so;
" Who waits for him on hard and hearth,
" That day shall die and dwell in woe.

" With fools shall the fold be left.
" a people lies full nigh beside,
" Shall come out of the south-west,
" With hasty routs full in riding;

" Thare sal the foles dreege is paine,
" and folie, for his false fare,
" Lie opon the feld slayne,
" and lose his live for evermare.

" And wyt sal winne the lande agayn
" a day fra Clide on to Clare,
" And fa be of thair frendes fain,
" and toures stande als thai did are,
" And simple men, that wil have dede,
" thare sal thai ful redi finde,
" That mester affe to wynne theem mede,
" for faute sal nothe stande bihinde.

" Ther bare es brouthe out of his denne,
" the leopard haldes hym so lange,
" That we wate never swa ne swenne,
" na wilke of them sal woldye lan . . . .
" Amange ay hondre no fynd ij tenne,
" that thai ne fald als a wande.
" By reson may thou know and kenne,
" that be ful fele has wroth alle wrange.

" Wrangwis werkes sul men se
" be flemed for thaire fals willes,
" And after them sal wip ay be,
" and outemont of alle thaire wyles."
" Miri man, ij beseke the,
" yif that thi wille ware, of a tything telle
" me mare,
" Hou hendes alle ys folke to there?
" suilke qualme no saith ij never are."

" So comeli so men deyen here,
" povere na riche is nane to spare."
" Liche," he sayd, "ij sal the lere,
" have thou no ferly of that fare.

" There shall the fool suffer his punishment,
" and foolishness for his false proceeding
" Lie opun the field slain,
" and lose his life for evermore.

" And wit shall win the land again
" one day from Clyde unto Clare,
" And few be of their friends glad,
" and towers stand as they did before;
" And mean men, who will have deeds,
" there shall they full ready find,
" They who need have to win them reward
" for fault shall not stay behind.

" The bear is brought out of his den,
" the leopard holds him so long,
" That we know never how nor when
" nor which of them shall . . .
" Among a hundred find I not ten,
" that they bend not as a rod.
" By reason may thou know and recognize
" there are full many who have worked all
" wrong.

" Wrongous works shall men see
" be banished for their false wills,
" And after them shall weep a bee,
" and out them of all their wyles."
" Merry man, I beseech thee,
" if that thy will were, of one tiding tell me
" more,
" How endes all this people to there?
" such slaughter saw I never before.

" So commonly as men die here,
" poor nor rich is none to spare."
" Like," he said, " I shall teach thee,
" have thou no wonder of that business.

" For twenti souzand mot thou say,
" that deyed tother day on this half Twede,
" Sal falle by thon on ay day,
" so lives lithe sal alle that lede.

" In my sathe southe ij say,
" herkens alle of a tyme
" That sal be aftere neueyers day,
" lat clerkes se the nexte prime
" The terme es werde, soethe to say,
" and twelve es comen after . . . .
" To led him forthe a lange waye,
" his wonyng stede es on yondalf Tyne.

" On southalf Tyne sal he wone,
" wyt thou wel it sal be swa.
" Fra suth sal blessed brether comen,
" and dele the lande even in twa.
" Wen domes es doand on his dede,
" sal na mercy be biside,
" Na naman have mercy for na mede,
" na in hope thair hevedes hide.

" Bot soffid sal be mani of stede,
" for res that thai sal after ride,
" And seen sal leauté falsed lede
" in rapes sone after that tyde.
" Fra twa to three the lande es liest,
" bot nameli sal it fra the twa ;
" The lion thare sal fare to fexit,
" the lande til the bare sal ga.

" Wel galli wald ij understande,
" to telle theem hou so moxiste be,
" Welke of theem sald weld the lande.
for wel thou spake of the three.

" For twenty thousand might thou see
" that died the other day on this side Tweed,
" Shall happen by them on a day,
" so lose their lives shall all that people.

" In my saying truth I tell,
" hearken all of a time
" That shall be after new-year's day,
" let clerks see the next morning,
" The term is fated, truth to say,
" and twelve is come after . . . .
" To lead him forth a long way;
" his dwelling place is on yond side Tyne.

" On south side Tine shall he dwell,
" know thou well it shall be so.
" From south shall blessed brethren come,
" and share the land even in two.
" When judgment is doing on his deed,
" shall no mercy be beside,
" Nor no man have mercy for no bribe,
" Nor in hope to hide their heads.

" But cast many shall be off horse,
" for deeds after which they shall ride,
" And shall see loyalty lead falseness
" in ropes soon after that time.
" From two to three the land is left,
" But especially shall it from the two;
" The lion there shall go to fetch it,
" the land to the bear shall go.

" Well gladly would I understand,
" to tell them how so must it be,
" Which of them shall govern the land,
" for well thou speakest of the three.

" A T. biside an L. ij fonde,
" chese thi selven sege and see,
" An Ed. the thred wyt hope and hande,
" the baillifs bee.

" Bot nou of theem hat loves the lede,
" that es so bald that dar habide,
" That theem ne sal reu yif ij can rede,
" on ay Friday on est halfe Clide ;
" For wel thai wen hour lande to winne.
" to fele that may finde biforin,
" Thai sal bee blonked ar thai blinne,
" thair folis that haves ben forthorin.

" Many be dampned to daye tharinne,
" that riden heck wit' hond and horin,
" Wen yonge sal falle for ald synne,
" and lose the lyf and be forthorin.
" Wrange werkes wil away,
" it sal be als God haves sette ;
" Of thair biginnynge can ij say,
" sal na frend of other reve.

" Dougty sal daye on the feld,
" to wyt theem be never so wa,
" And falsed under halles held,
" in frith sul men the foles ta.
" Leauté men haves ben ful seld,
" it sal be sette wyt mirthes ma,
" And marchant have the werld to weld,
" and capman wyt thair packs ga.

" And than sal reson raike and ride,
" and wisdome be ware es best,
" And leauté sal gare leal habide,
" and sithen sal hosbondmen af reste."

" A T. beside an L. I found;
" chuse thyself, man, and see
" An Ed. the thread with hope and hand,
" are the bailifs.

" But now of them that love the people,
" that are so bold they dare abide,
" That it shall not rue them if I can telle,
" on a Friday on the east side Clyde;
" For well they expect our land to win,
" to many that may find before,
" They shall be disappointed before they cease,
" their follies that have been condemned.

" Many are damned to-day therein,
" That ride high with hound and horn,
" When youth shall fall for old sin,
" and lose the life and be condemned.
" Wrong works will away,
" it shall be as God has fixed;
" Of their beginning can I say
" shall no friend of another rob.

" Doughty shall die on the field,
" to know them be never so woe,
" And falsehood be held under halls,
" in wood shall men to the fools.
" Loyalty men has been full rare,
" it shall be set with more mirths,
" And merchants have the world to govern,
" and chapmen go with their packs.

" And then shall reason go about and ride
" and wisdom be where is best,
" And loyalty shall cause the loyal to abide,
" and afterwards shall husbandmen have rest."

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Acre, siege and capture of, by king Richard, ii. 78–84.
taken by the Saracens, ii. 188.
Adroenus, king of Britany, i. 92.
Alan, king of Britany, i. 262.
Alan, Richard Fitz, ii. 12.
Alba, built by Ascanius, i. 4.
Alban, St., his martyrdom, i. 76.
Albanac, first king of Scotland, i. 24.
Albemarle, William, earl of, i. 476, 478, 480, 484.
Albemarle, earl of, slain, ii. 340.
Albemarle, William de, ii. 8.
Albion, the isle of, i. 20.
Alclud, in Scotland, built, i. 30.
Aldred, archbishop of York, i. 410, 412.
Aldulph, earl of Boulogne, i. 326.
Alexander, bishop of Lincoln, i. 482, 484.
Alfdene, i. 318.
Alfred, made king of Wessex, i. 316.
his war with Gunter the Dane, i. 318.
his death, *ib.*
Alfred, son of king Ethelred, murdered, i. 374.
Algar, earl of Kent, i. 390.
rebels against the king, but is reconciled, i. 392.
Allectus, the usurper, i. 72.
Alnwick, taken by prince Edward, ii. 152.
Ambrosius Aurelius, made king of Britain, i. 116.
defeats Hengist, i. 118.
his good works, i. 122.
raises Stonehenge, i. 124.
poisoned by Eopa, i. 128.
Amis, duke of Guisnes, i. 466.
Androgeus, the British king, i. 58.
Anjou, given by king Arthur to sir Kay, i. 168.
war in, i. 466.
Anjou, earl of, husband of the empress Maude, his death, i. 484.
Anlaf, king of the Danes, i. 330.
elected king of Northumberland, i. 332.
Anlaf, of Norway, invades England, i. 348, 352.
Anlaf, bishop of London, i. 358.
Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 450, 452, 456.
Anthony, bishop of Durham, ii. 198.
Edward's adviser against the French, ii. 200.
his advice, ii. 202.
sent as one of the ambassadors to Germany, ii. 204.
his energy in the war against Scotland, ii. 260.
intercedes with the barons who refused to accompany king Edward to Flanders, ii. 292.
his exertions to restore peace, ii. 296.
Aquitaine, William of, ii. 22.
Armorica, settlement of the Britons in, i. 84.
Arthgallo, king of Britain, deposed, i. 52.
restored to the crown through his brother's affection, i. 56.
Arthur, king, his birth, i. 140.
made king of Britain, i. 146.
defeats the Saxons, i. 150, 152.
invades Scotland, i. 154.
marries Gainovere, and conquers Ireland, i. 158.
conquers Norway, i. 160.
invades France, i. 162.
kills Flollo in single combat, i. 164, 166.

Arthur, king—*cont.*
his great feast at Caerleon, i. 168.
his coronation, i. 172.
his expedition against Rome, i. 178.
starts for Italy, leaving his kingdom in charge of Modred, i. 184.
his adventure with the giant on Mont St. Michel, i. 186.
receives news of Modred's treason, i. 216.
returns to Britain, i. 218.
makes war upon Modred, i. 218, 220.
wounded and carried to the isle of Avalon, i. 224.
Arthur, count of Britany, ii. 46.
his death, ii. 124.
Artois, Charles, count of, ii. 200.
Artois, the count of, slain in Flanders, ii. 340.
Arundel, the earl of, his marriage, ii. 368.
Arviragus, the British prince, i. 62.
becomes king of Britain; and marries a daughter of the emperor Claudius, i. 64.
Ascalon, a river in Greece, i. 8.
Ascanius, son of Eneas, i. 4.
Asclepiodotus, king of Britain, i. 72, 74.
his death, i. 76.
Asketil, earl of, liberated, ii. 310.
executed, ii. 372.
Athelard, king of Wessex, i. 284.
Athelmar, earl of Devonshire, i. 356.
Athelstan, king, i. 322.
his wars, i. 324.
receives an embassy from the king of France, i. 326.
defeats the Scots and Danes at Brunanburgh, i. 330.
his death, i. 332.
Augusele, king of Scotland, i. 158, 202, 218, 220.
Augustine, St., comes to Britain, i. 232.
converts the Saxons, i. 234.
Austria, duke of, quarrel between him and Richard I., ii. 84.
leaves Syria, ii. 96.
Avennes, Jacques de, ii. 98, 100.
slain, ii. 102.

B.

Baldwin the Leper, king of Jerusalem, ii. 22.
Baldwin, count of Flanders, receives earl Godwin and his sons, i. 384.
Baldulf, brother of Colgrim, invades Britain, i. 148.
slain, i. 152.
Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 26.
Baldwin, a hospitaller, slain, ii. 102.
Baliol, Guy de, slain at the battle of Lewes, ii. 146.
Baliol, John, made king of Scotland, ii. 192.
his homage, *ib.*
throws off allegiance to king Edward, and pleads that Scotland was held of the Pope, ii. 222.
Bangor, the number of monks in it, i. 234.
slaughter of them, i. 236.
Bar, count of, ii. 295.
Bardolf, Hugh, ii. 34.
Basset, Ralph, ii. 146.
Bassianus (the emperor Caracalla), i. 70.
Bath, the city of, founded by king Bladud, i. 32.
Beauchamp, James de, ii. 282.
Becket, Thomas, archdeacon of Canterbury; his history, ii. 4.
made archbishop, *ib.*
his quarrel with the king, ii. 4, 6.
slain in his church, ii. 6.
Buckingham, Elis de, ii. 186.
Beduer, sir, receives Normandy from king Arthur, i. 168.
king Arthur's butler, i. 186.
slain in battle, i. 206.
Bedwer, Baldwin de, banished, i. 470.
Belesme, Robert de, rebels against Henry I., i. 452, 458.
Belinus, king of Britain, i. 42.
makes the four great roads across the island, i. 44.
his expedition to Italy, i. 48.

Berald of the March, i. 304.
Berengaria, queen of Richard I., ii. 54.
her marriage in Cyprus, ii. 60.
Bernard, bishop of Bayonne, accompanies king Richard to the Crusade, ii. 34.
commander of the fleet, ii. 60.
Bernewolf, king of Mercia, slain in battle, i. 296.
Bertric, king of Mercia, i. 292.
poisoned by his queen, i. 294.
Berwick-on-Twede, taken by Edward I., ii. 234.
Berwick, John de, ii. 274, 334.
Bigot, Hugh, quarrels with king Stephen, i. 492.
Bigod, sir Hugh, escaped from the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.
Bigod, William, i. 564.
Billingsgate, origin of the name, i. 48.
Bladud, king of Britain, i. 32.
Blancmount, the lord of, ii. 278.
Blois, Theobald of, ii. 10.
Boemond, count of Tripoli, ii. 60, 112.
Bohun, earl Humphrey de, ii. 246, 316.
his death, ii. 318, 342.
Boniface VIII., pope, his judgment on the question of Gascony, ii. 334.
at enmity with the king of France, ii. 346.
sequel of his history, ii. 350.
Bouillon, Godfrey of, i. 458, 459.
Boulogne, the count of, marries the daughter of William king of Scotland, ii. 130.
Boso, earl of Oxford, i. 192, 202.
Brabant, John duke of, ii. 280.
Brabazon, Godfrey de, ii. 340.
Brennius, king of Northumberland, i. 42.
becomes duke of Burgundy, i. 44.
makes war upon his brother Belinus, but they are reconciled by their mother, i. 46.
their expedition to Italy, i. 48.
Brette, Emery de la, ii. 344.
Brian, nephew of Cadwallo, his devotion to his uncle, i. 244.
sent to England to murder Pellitus, i. 248.
Brain, nephew of Cadwallo—*cont.*
gathers the army of Wales in Oxford, i. 250.
Britain, origin of the name, i. 2, 20.
Britain ravaged by the Huns and Picts, i. 86, 88.
the five wounds of Britain, i. 286.
Britany, occupied by settlers from Great Britain, i. 84.
Britany, Arthur duke of, claims the earldom of Richmond, ii. 372.
Britany, John of, ii. 214.
Brunanburgh, battle of, i. 330.
Brus, Alexander de, excuted, ii. 374.
Brus, Robert de, i. 476, 478.
Brus, Robert de, faithful to king Edward, ii. 234.
Brus, Robert de, slays John Comyn, ii. 364.
makes himself king of Scotland, ii. 366.
attacks sir Aymer de Valence, ii. 370.
his sufferings, ii. 372.
Brus, Thomas de, executed, ii. 374.
Brutus, circumstances of his birth, i. 4.
he goes from Italy to Greece, i. 6.
his voyage to Britain, i. 10, 12.
arrives in Aquitaine, i. 14.
arrives in Britain and destroys the giants, i. 20.
his death, i. 22.
Brutus Green-shield, king of Britain, i. 30.
Bruyere, William de la, ii. 34.
Burgundy, Hugh duke of, made commander of the French army in Syria, ii. 96.
at Cæsarea, ii. 100, 104.

C.

Cador of Cornwall defeats Baldulf, i. 148.
and Cerdic, i. 154.
his speech against the Romans, i. 178.
attacked by the Romans, i. 200.
commands in Arthur's army, i. 202.

Cadwallader, the last British king, i. 260.
retires to Britany, i. 262.
and thence to Rome, where he dies, i. 262, 278.
Cadwallo, king of Northumberland, his story, i. 238.
deprived of the kingdom by Edwin, i. 242.
escapes to Britany, i. 244, 246.
raises the siege of Oxford, i. 250.
defeats and slays Edwin at Hevenfeld, i. 252.
dies; his singular mode of burial, i. 258.
Cadwan made king of Northumberland, i. 236.
Cadwan, king of Scotland, slain, i. 252.
Cæsar, Julius, arrives in Britain, i. 58.
defeated by king Cassibelan, i. 60.
Cæsarea, battle of, ii. 98–104.
Calaphès Durin, a Saracen warrior, ii. 100.
Caliburn, king Arthur's sword, i. 152, 166, 190, 212, 214.
Camber, first king of Wales, i. 24.
Camville, Richard de, accompanies king Richard to the Crusade, ii. 34.
Canterbury built by king Hudibras, i. 32.
Canterbury, Robert archbishop of, refuses the aid to the Crown on the part of the church, ii. 270.
consents to pay the tenth of the goods of the clergy, ii. 302.
marries Edward I. to Margaret of France, ii. 320.
Canute, son of Sweyn, ravages the north of England, i. 354.
chosen king by the Danes, i. 360.
he is made king of England, i. 364.
becomes king of all England, i. 366.
his death, i. 370.
Caradoc, duke of Cornwall, i. 80.
Careticus made king of Britain, i. 228.
Carausius, his history, i. 72.
Carlisle, built by king Leil, i. 30.
Carlisle, bishop of, pronounces excommunication against breakers of the charter, ii, 308.
Carrick, the earl of, deserts the Scots, ii.343.
Cassibelan, king of Britain, i. 58.
Celestine V., pope, espouses the cause of Scotland, ii. 222.
Cerdic, the Saxon, ii. 104.
taken prisoner and put to death, i. 154.
Cheldric, a "duke" of Germany, invades the north of England, i. 148.
is defeated and flies, i. 152.
returns to Britain to aid Modred, i. 218.
slain, i. 224.
Chester, Ralph earl of, reconciled with king Stephen, i. 492.
attacks Lincoln, i. 494.
Cirencester taken and destroyed by king Gormound, i. 228.
Clare, Gilbert de, joins prince Edward against Simon de Montfort, ii. 144.
quarrels with the king, ii. 152, 368.
Claudius, emperor of Rome, makes war upon Britain, i. 62, 64.
Clifford, Roger de, drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.
Cloten, king of Cornwall, i. 40.
Coel, duke of Colchester, father-in-law of the emperor Constantine, i. 76.
Coillus, king of Britain, i. 68.
Coinage, reform of, by king Edward I., ii. 172.
Colbrand the Dane, i. 330, 332.
Colgrim, a German "duke," invades Britain, i. 146.
slain, i. 152.
Colman, king of Ireland, i. 154.
Colonnas, the, their feud with pope Boniface, ii. 350.
Compiegne, the abbot of, comes to England, ii. 336.
Comyn, John, ii. 142.
Comyn, John, lord of Badenagh, ii. 348.
murdered by Robert de Brus, ii. 364.
Comyn, Richard, ii. 10.
Comyn, earl Robert, i. 412.
killed, i. 414.
Conan, i. 80.
made king of Britany, i. 84.
Conan, king of Britain, i. 226.

Coniers, Robert de, ii. 28.
Constans, son of Constantine, a monk at Winchester, i. 94.
made king of Britain, i. 96.
Constantine, the emperor, i. 76, 78.
Constantine, king of Britain, i. 94.
slain by Vortiger, i. 96.
Constantine, son of Cador, made king of Britain, i. 224, 226.
slain by his nephew Conan, i. 226.
Conwenna, the mother of Belinus and Brennius, i. 46.
Coradin, lord of Damascus, ii. 100.
Cordeille, daughter of Leil, her story, i. 34, 36.
becomes queen of Britain, and is afterwards deposed, i. 38.
Corineus joins Brutus, i. 14.
defeats the Poitevins, i. 18.
gives his name to Cornwall, i. 20.
his wrestling match with Gogmagog, i. 22.
Cornwall, origin of the name, i. 20.
Cornwall, Richard de, slain, ii. 232.
Cospatric, earl, joins the party of William the Conqueror, i. 420.
deprived of his earldom, i. 424.
Courtrai, battle of, ii. 340.
Cradoc, son of Griffyth king of Wales, destroys Harold's houses, i. 396.
Craucombe, John de, ii. 204, 214.
Cressingham, Hugh de, made treasurer of Scotland, ii. 260, 298.
slain, ii. 300.
Crispin, William, i. 458.
Crusades of the French and Germans, and of the poor men, i. 494.
Cunedag, king of Britain, i. 38.
Cursal, earl of Chichester, i. 204.
slain, i. 210.
Cuthbert, St., his body carried away from Durham, i. 418.
Cuthred, king of Wessex, his wars with Mercia, i. 290.
Cymbeline, king of Britain, i. 60.
Cynewulf raised to the kingdom of Wessex, i. 290.
his character, i. 292.

D.

Danegeld abolished, i. 382.
Henry I. swears to abolish it, i. 468.
Danes invade England, i. 294, 310.
under Justin and Guthmond, i. 344, 346.
massacre of the, i. 350.
Danius, king of Britain, i. 52.
Dardan, a Danish chieftain, invades Northumbria, i. 300.
slain, i. 304.
David, uncle of king Arthur, made bishop of Caerleon, i. 176.
David, king of Scotland, refuses his homage to king Stephen, i. 470.
invades Northumberland, i. 474.
David, prince of Wales, ii. 172.
rebels against king Edward, ii. 176.
taken and put to death, ii. 180.
Despenser, Hugh le, i. 146, 204, 214, 240, 274, 334.
Despenser, Hugh, son of Hugh, married, ii. 368.
Deyville, John, ii. 148.
Diocletian, the emperor, his persecution reaches Britain, i. 74.
Dinoot, abbot of Bangor, i. 234.
Dinotus, king of Cornwall, i. 84.
Dipplyn, William of, ii. 356.
Doldan, king of Gothland, i. 160.
Domesday survey made, i. 432.
Donald, brother of Malcolm, made king of Scotland, i. 440.
deposed and restored, i. 442.
driven out of Scotland by William Rufus, i. 444.
Douglas, William de, ii. 234.
Dover, attack upon, by the Normans, ii. 224.
Dublin, archbishop of, one of Edward's ambassadors, ii. 204.
dies, ii. 214.
Dubricius, bishop of Caerleon, i. 152.
turns hermit, i. 176.

Dunbar taken by the Scots, ii. 238.
battle of, ii. 246.
songs upon it, ii. 248, 252.
Duncan, king of Scotland, i. 442.
Dunstan crowns Edward, i. 342.
and Ethelred, i. 344.
his death, i. 346.
Dunstan, son of Athelneth, i. 396.
Dunwallo, king of Britain, i. 40.
his actions and death, i. 42.
Durham, the body of St. Cuthbert removed, i. 418.
favour shown to the church by William the Conqueror, i. 424.

E.

Ebissa, the Saxon, i. 104.
Ebrac, king of Britain, built York, i. 28.
Ebric, "duke" of Denmark, invades England, i. 294.
Edburga, queen of Ina, i. 282.
Edgar raised to the crown, i. 338.
his great power, i. 340.
Edgar Atheling, i. 408.
Edgar, son of king Malcolm, claims the crown of Scotland, i. 444.
Edith, daughter of earl Godwin, queen of Edward the Confessor, i. 388.
accused of the death of Gospatric, i. 396.
carried by Edwin and Morcar to Caerleon, i. 403.
Edmund, king of the East Angles, martyrdom of, i. 312.
Edmund, brother of Athelstan, king, i. 332.
his wars with the Danes, and death, i. 334.
Edmund Ironside chosen king by the Londoners, i. 366.
shares the kingdom with Canute, his death, *ib.*
Edmund, brother of Edward I., ii. 208, 218, 230.
Edred, king of England. i. 334.
Edric, the earl, his treacherous counsel to king Ethelred, i. 352, 354.
Edmund Ironside's hostility towards him, i. 362.
hanged by order of king Canute, i. 368.
Edward the Elder, king, his reign, i. 320.
his death, i. 322.
Edward the Martyr, king of England, i. 342.
Edward, son of Ethelred, (the Confessor,) sent to Normandy, i. 356.
sent to England as his father's messenger, i. 360.
comes to England with his brother Alfred, i. 372.
returns to Normandy, i. 374.
visits the court of king Hardeknut, i. 380.
becomes king of England, i. 382.
is reconciled with Earl Godwin, i. 388.
declares his nephew Edward his successor, i. 390.
his death, i. 398.
Edward, son of Edmund, adopted by Edward the Confessor, i. 390.
Edward, son of Henry III. (Edward I.), his father's counsellor, ii. 136.
gives himself as hostage for his father, after the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.
escapes from prison and raises an army, ii. 144.
gains the battle of Evesham, ii. 146.
goes to the East, ii. 154.
stabbed by a Saracen assassin, ii. 158.
married to Eleanor, daughter of the king of Spain, ii. 160.
crowned king of England, ii. 164, 166.
quarrels with Llewellyn, prince of Wales, ii. 170.
invades Wales again, ii. 172, 176–180.
his expedition to Gascony, ii. 182.
queen Eleanor dies, ii. 190.
proposes to marry Blanche of France, ii. 196.
the French obtain possession of Gascony, ii. 198, 200.
Edward prepares for war, ii. 202–208.

Edward (Edward I.)—*cont.*
disasters in Gascony, ii. 216.
insurrection in Wales, *ib.*
Edward subdues Wales, ii. 218.
negociates with France for peace, ii. 228.
marches against John de Baliol, ii. 230.
gains the battle of Dunbar, ii. 246.
puts Scotland under his own ministers, ii. 258.
his parliament at St. Edmunds, ii. 268.
his quarrel with the church, ii. 270, 276.
negociations for peace with France, ii. 274, 276.
disasters in Aquitaine, ii. 280.
his quarrel with his barons, ii. 286.
proceeds to Flanders, ii. 292.
is reconciled with his barons and clergy, ii. 306.
proceeds into Scotland, ii. 312.
marries Margaret of France, ii. 316.
enters Scotland with his army, ii. 324.
invades Scotland in 1303, ii. 348.
proclaims peace in Scotland, ii. 354.
his death, ii. 380.

Edward, prince, afterwards Edward II., born, ii. 324.
created prince of Wales and earl of Chester, ii. 336.
great feast when he was knighted, ii. 368.
goes to the war in Scotland, ii. 370.

Edwin, king of Northumberland, his story, i. 238, 242.
slain by Cadwallo, i. 252.

Edwin, brother of king Athelstan, drowned in the Thames, i. 324.

Edwin and Morcar attempt to make Edgar Atheling king, i. 408.
they take queen Edith to Caerleon, *ib.*

Edwy made king, and then deposed, i. 336.

Egbert, made king of Wessex, i. 294.
his severity to the Danes, i. 296.
makes war upon the Welsh, i. 298.
proceeds to Northumberland against the Danes, and is defeated, i. 300.
defeats the Danes, i. 302, 304.
his death, i. 306.

Eldaldus, bishop of Gloucester, i. 120.

Eldol, Earl of Gloucester, escapes from the slaughter at Ambresbury, i. 108.
defeats Hengist, i. 118.

Eleutherius, pope, sent missionaries to convert the Britons, i. 68.

Elidurus, king of Britain, his love to his brother, i. 54.
deposed and restored, i. 56.

Ellendune, battle of, proverb relating to it, i. 296.

Ely, isle of, taken by the army of Henry III., ii. 152.

Eneas, his adventures, i. 2, 4.

Eopa, the assassin of Ambrosius, i. 128.

Eosa, the Saxon, i. 132, 134, 140, 142, 144.

Eric of Denmark, made king of Northumberland, i. 336.

Espec, Walter l', a great founder of Abbeys, i. 476.
commands Stephen's army against the Scots, i. 478.

Estoteville, Robert de, i. 458.

Estrilde, her story, i. 26.

Ethelbald, king of Mercia, i. 290.

Ethelbald, king of Wessex, i. 308.

Ethelbert, king of Wessex, i. 308.

Ethelbert, duke of Mercia, i. 256.

Ethelfred, king of Northumbria, i. 236.

Ethelred, brother of Ethelbert, made king of Wessex, i. 310.
slain, i. 314.

Ethelred (the Second), king of England, i. 344.
he buys peace of the Danes, i. 348.
marries Emma, daughter of Richard duke of Normandy, i. 350.
orders the Danes to be massacred, *ib.*
sends his sons to Normandy, i. 356.
goes thither himself, i. 358.
returns to England, i. 360.
his death, i. 364.

Ethelwolf, king of Wessex, i. 306.
the first king who gave tithes, i. 308.

Eu, count of, slain, ii. 340.

Eustace, son of king Stephen, marries Constance of France, i. 482.

Eustace Fitz-John, i. 484.

Everwick (York), built by king Ebrac, i. 30.
Evesham, battle of, ii. 146.

F.

Falkirk, battle of, ii. 312.
Fens, William de, ii. 340.
Fereres, Robert de, ii. 148.
Ferrex and Porrex, their story, i. 40.
Flanders, seized by the French, ii. 338.
the French are defeated with great loss, ii. 340.
Flanders, Guy, count of, treacherously arrested by the king of France, ii. 338.
Flanders, Philip, count of, ii. 10.
Flanders, William, count of, sends an embassy to Edward I., ii. 278.
Flollo, defeated by king Arthur, i. 162.
slain, i. 164.
Flote, Pierre de, ii. 340.
Fortz, William de, lord of Oleron, ii. 36.
Fraser, Richard, ii. 234.
Fresel, Simon, ii. 344, 351.
condemned to exile, ii. 354.
taken and executed, ii. 370.
Frithebald, king of Northumbria, i. 298.
Fulgentius, duke, defeats and slays the emperor Severus, i. 70.

G.

Gainesborough, William of, ii. 204.
Gainovere (Gwenever), queen of king Arthur, i. 158.
marries Modred, i. 218.
becomes a nun at Caerleon, i. 220.
Galloc of Salisbury, slain, i. 210.
Gallus made king of Britain by the Romans, i. 74.
Garbodian, king of Britain, i. 56.
Gaunt, Gilbert de, i. 416, 484.
Gawayn, his speech, i. 194.
kills Quintilianus, *ib.*
holds a command in Arthur's army, i. 202.
his exertions in the great battle with the Romans i. 212.
slain by the Saxons, i. 218.
Genevile, Geoffrey de, ii. 290.
Genuissa, daughter of the emperor Claudius, married to the British king Arviragus, i. 66.
Geoffrey, count of Britany, ii, 12, 122.
Gerard, archbishop of Auxienne, ii. 34.
Germanus, St., preaches in Britain, i. 104.
Gervaux, the abbey, founded, i. 426.
Geta, the son of the emperor Severus, i. 70.
Gilloman, an Irish king, i. 126, 128, 158.
Ginderius, king of Britain, i. 62.
Glasgow, the bishop of, i. 354.
imprisoned, i. 372.
Gloucester, named from the emperor Claudius, i. 64.
Gloucester, earl of, ii. 218.
Gobion, Randolph, i. 460.
Godbold, king of Orkney, i. 252.
Godfrey, duke of Louvaine, i. 464.
Godwin, earl of Kent, i. 372.
accused of the murder of prince Alfred, i. 374.
reconciled with king Hardeknut, i. 378.
rebels against king Edward, and is banished, i. 384.
returns, i. 386.
is reconciled with the king, i. 388.
Goffore, king of Poitiers, defeated by Corineus, i. 14, 16.
Gogmagog, the giant, i. 20.
his wrestling match with Corineus, i. 22.
Gontais, Walter de, i. 476.
Gorangon, king of Kent, i. 104.
Gorbodian, king of Britain, i. 54.
Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, i. 118, 134, 138.
Gormound, king of Africa, comes to Britain, i. 228.
forms the Heptarchy, i. 230.
returns to France, i. 232.

Gospatric, i. 396.
Graham, Patrick de, slain at Dunbar, ii. 246.
Grauntsoun, Otho de, ii. 238.
Griffez, Fulke de, ii. 120.
Griffyth, son of Griffyth king of Wales, i. 390.
Griffyth, king of Wales, invades the border, i. 392.
subdued by earl Harold, and banished, i. 394.
Guanius, king of the Huns, i. 86, 88.
Guendolene, the wife of king Locrin, i. 26.
Guerin, earl of Chartres, i. 180, 192, 202.
Guethelin, archbishop of London, exerts himself to protect Britain against the invasions of the Picts, i. 90, 92.
Guitard, king of Aquitaine, i. 166, 200, 204.
Gunfasius, king of Orkney, i. 160.
Gunter the Dane invades England, but submits and is baptized, i. 318.
Gurbodud, king of Britain, i. 40.
Gurgunt, king of Britain, i. 50.
Guthelin, king of Britain, i. 52.
Guy, of Warwick, i. 332.
Guy, king of Jerusalem, ii. 60, 62, 104, 112.

H.

Hacon Fitz-Hervey, i. 428.
Haldan of Doncaster, i. 302, 304.
Hamo, chief counsellor in Britain of the emperor Claudius, i. 62.
Hampton (Southampton), origin of the name, i. 62.
Hamundesham, Walter, made chancellor of Scotland, ii. 260.
Hardeknut, son of Canute, made king of Denmark, i. 370.
opposes his brother, i. 372.
comes to England, i. 374.
becomes king, i. 376.
is reconciled with Godwin, i. 378.
Hardeknut, son of Canute—*cont.*
his quarrel with the people of Worcester, i. 380.
his death, *ib.*
Harold of Donnesmore, i. 304.
Harold, son of Canute, becomes king of England, i. 370.
opposed by his brother Hardeknut, i. 372.
they are reconciled and share the kingdom between them, *ib.*
his death, i. 374.
Harold, son of Godwin, carries away the abbess Elgiva, i. 382.
retires to Ireland, i. 384.
returns and plunders Dorset and Somerset, i. 386.
sent with an army into Wales, i. 394.
becomes king of England, i. 398.
the battle of Stanford Bridge, i. 400.
his visit and engagement to William of Normandy, i. 402.
is slain at Hastings, i. 408.
Harold Harfaager, king of Norway, invades Northumberland, i. 400.
is slain, i. 402.
Hastings, battle of, i. 406.
Hastings, Henry de, ii. 150.
Helenus, son of Priam, flies from Troy to Greece, i. 2.
is found there by Brutus, i. 6.
his transactions with king Pandrasus, i. 8.
Heli, king of Britain, i. 58.
Helis de St. Omer, i. 490.
Helys of Lindsey, i. 422.
Henault, the count of, ii. 280.
Hengham, Ralph de, ii. 186.
Hengist arrives in Britain with Horsus, i. 98.
assists in defeating the Scots, and is rewarded with lands, i. 100.
obtains the whole of Kent, i. 104.
his treason, i. 106, 108.
becomes chief ruler in Britain, i. 110.
defeated by Ambrosius and Eldol, i. 116.
put to death, i. 120.

Henry I. crowned, i. 448.
marries Maude of Scotland, i. 450.
invades Normandy, i. 454.
his son drowned, i. 464.
marries Adelaide of Louvain, *ib.*
his death, i. 466.
Henry II., king of England, crowned, ii. 2.
his quarrel with Thomas Becket, ii. 4, 6.
makes his son Henry king, ii. 6.
pardons him, ii. 12.
his will, ii. 14.
visits the shrine of Thomas Becket, ii. 24.
his death, ii. 26.
Henry, son of Henry II., crowned king, ii. 6.
marries the sister of the king of France, ii, 10.
makes war on his father, *ib.*
reconciled with him, ii. 12.
his death, ii. 22.
Henry III. crowned, ii. 134.
marries Eleanor, daughter of the count of Provence, *ib.*
commencement of the baronial wars, ii. 140.
the quarrel submitted to the judgment of the king of France, *ib.*
battle of Lewes, ii. 142.
his death, ii. 160.
Henry, king of Scotland, performs his homage to king Stephen, i. 470.
his courage in battle, i. 482.
Henry of Almaine, ii. 144.
Heptarchy of the Anglo Saxons, i. 230.
Hereford, Humphrey, earl of, i. 306.
Hiderus, son of Noun, i. 198.
Hirelgas, nephew of Beduer, i. 208.
Hilda, daughter of king Athelstan, married to king Charles of France, i. 328.
Hoel, king of Amorica, i. 148, 154, 166, 202, 218.
Holdin of Flanders, i. 204.
slain, i. 210.
Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 124, 126.
Hudibras, king of Britain, i. 30.
Hugh Fitz-Baldric, ii. 426.
Hugh, bishop of Durham, ii. 32.
Humber, king, slew Alvanac, king of Scotland, i. 24.
drowned in the river Humber, which was named after him, *ib.*
Huntingdon, David, earl of, ii. 190.
Huntingdon, Henry of, the historian, i. 286.

I.

Igerne, the wife of duke Gorlois, i. 134.
king Uther's intrigue with her, i. 138.
Uther marries her, i. 140.
Imbert, an Aquitanian chieftain, i. 16.
Ina, king of Wessex, i. 278.
chosen leader of the Saxons in the war against the Britons, under Ivor and Ini, i. 280.
Ingant, earl of Leicester, i. 204.
Inguar, the Dane, his invasions, i. 312.
slain, i. 318.
Ini, nephew of Cadwallader, i. 262, 278.
Innogen, the wife of Brutus, i. 10.
Irish, origin of the, i. 66.
Isaac, king of Cyprus (the emperor), his behaviour to the crusaders, ii. 54.
defeated by king Richard, ii. 60.
resides in the temple at Jerusalem, ii. 112
Ivor, son of Cadwallader, i. 262, 278.
Iwayn, nephew of Augusele, made king of Scotland, i. 218, 220.

J.

Jai, Brian de, a Templar, slain at Falkirk, ii. 314.
Jews, ill-treated at Lincoln, ii. 150.
proceedings against them in the time of Edward I., ii. 186.

Joan, queen of Sicily, sister of Richard Coeur de Lion, ii. 40, 44
John, son of Henry II., his conduct during the absence of Richard Coeur de Lion, ii. 114.
crowned king of England, ii. 122, 124.
his quarrel with the clergy, ii. 126–132.
his death, ii. 134.
Jonathal, earl of Dorchester, i. 204.
Judith, queen of king Ethelwolf, i. 308.
marries her stepson, king Ethelbald, i. 308.

K.

Kay, sir, receives Anjou from king Arthur, i. 168.
king Arthur's seneschal, i. 186.
wounded, i. 208.
Kenilworth, besieged and taken by prince Edward, ii. 150.
Kew, the lord of, ii. 278.
Kilwardby, Robert de, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 164.
Kimar, king of Britain, i. 52.
Kimarcoz of Trigeria, i. 210.
Kinmark, king of Britain, i. 40.

L.

Lago, king of Britain, i. 38.
Langton, Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 128.
See Stephen.
Langton, Walter de, ii. 274.
Lavinia, daughter of king Latinus, married to Eneas, i. 4.
Leicester, built by king Leir, i. 32.
Leil, king of Britain, i. 30.
Leir, king of Britain, i. 32.
story of Leir and his daughters, i. 34,36.
Leo, the duke, ii. 60, 112.
Leofwin, son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 384.
Leogecia, the island of, i. 10.
Lewes, battle of, ii. 142.
Lincoln, taken by the disinherited under Henry III., ii. 150.
Lincoln, Henry de Lacy, earl of, ii. 214, 218, 282, 334.
Lindsay, William de, drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.
Linlf, earl of Caunce, i. 430.
Llewellyn, prince of Wales, origin of his war with Edward III., ii. 170.
rises against the king, ii. 176.
taken and beheaded, ii. 180.
Locrin, king of Britain after Brutus, i. 24.
his death, i. 26.
London, founded by Brutus, i. 22.
took its name from king Lud, *ib.*
by whom it was rebuilt, i. 58.
besieged by the Britons under Asclepiodotus, i. 74.
Lot of Lindsay, i. 142.
Lothian given to him by king Arthur, i. 156.
made king of Norway, i. 160.
commands a division of Arthur's army, i. 202.
Louis VI. of France makes war upon Henry I., i. 460.
Louis, St., king of France, his crusade and death, ii. 154.
Lovel, Robert, dean of Exeter, i. 486.
Lucius, king of Britain, the first who was baptized, i. 68.
Lucius, emperor of Rome, sends a challenge to king Arthur, i. 176.
opposes him at the river Aube, i. 192
is defeated, i. 198.
falls in battle, i. 216.
Lucy, Lucas de, ii. 28.
Lud, king, i. 22, 58.
Ludgate, origin of the name, i. 22, 58.

M.

Macbeth, king of Scotland, i. 370, 388.
is dethroned, i. 390.
Macdowel, a serjeant of Galloway, arrests Thomas and Alexander de Brus, ii. 374.
Maddan, king of Britain, i. 28.
Madoc, the Welsh prince, taken, ii. 218.
Magadud, king of the Devonshire men, i. 254.
Malcolm, king of Scotland, dies, i. 370.
Malcolm of Cumberland, made king of Scotland by Edward the Confessor, i. 390.
invades Northumberland, i. 392.
harbours earl Tosti, i. 398.
invades Cumberland, i. 422.
made prisoner, i. 424.
suspicions against him, i. 432.
rebels against William Rufus, i. 438.
slain, i. 440.
Malet, Robert, i. 422.
Malet, William, i. 416.
Malgo, king of Britain, i. 228.
Manchester, Hugh of, ii. 206.
Mankael, Roger, ii. 54.
Mandeville, Geoffrey de, plunders the abbey of Ramsey, and his punishment, i. 490.
March, Patrick, earl of, i. 234.
Marchadès, the French joker and warrior, ii. 120.
Margan, king of Britain, i. 58.
Margan, slain by Cunedag, i. 38.
Margaret, queen of Edward I., arrives in England, i. 318.
proceeds to the North, i. 322.
Margaret, daughter of Geoffrey, count of Britany, ii. 124.
Margaret, the heiress of Scotland, dies, ii. 190.
Marius, king of Britain, i. 66.
Marmion, Robert, plunders the church of Coventry, i. 490.
Marshal, Roger earl, deprived of his office, ii. 290.
goes to serve the king, ii. 306, 316.
discouraged, ii. 322.
Marshal, William, ii. 34.
Martel, William, ii. 488.
Maude, daughter of Henry I., married to the emperor Henry, i. 462.
marries Henry of Anjou, i. 465.
arrives in England to oppose king Stephen, i. 482.
has king Stephen as her prisoner, 486.
escapes to Oxford, *ib.*
thence to Wallingford, i. 488.
her death, i. 494.
Maude of Scotland, queen of Henry I., dies, i. 462.
Mauduit, Robert, i. 464.
Maunsel, John, ii. 136, 146.
Maurice, son of Caradoc, i. 80, 82.
Maurice, bishop of London, crowns king Henry I., i. 448.
Maxentius, the emperor, slain by Constantine, i. 78.
Maximian, sent into Britain by Diocletian, i. 74, 80, 82.
obtains the kingdom of Britain, i. 84.
his death, i. 88.
Melchin, lord of Baudas, a Saracen commander in Saladin's army, ii. 100.
Melga, king of the Picts, i. 80, 88.
Mempricius, king of Britain, i. 28.
Menteith, earl of, liberated, ii. 310.
Menteith, sir John de, arrests William Wallace, ii. 362.
Merlin, his history, i. 110.
exhibits his knowledge before Vortigern, i. 112.
his prophecies, i. 114.
employed in removing the dance of the giants to Stonehenge, i. 124.
explains the vision of the great star, i. 130.
assists Uther in his intrigue with Igerne, i. 138.
the text of his prophecies, i. 266–267.
his prophecy of Scotland, ii. 264.

Methyfasin, lord of Galilee, ii. 100.
Metingham, John de, ii. 186.
Modred, cousin of king Arthur, i. 184.
his treason, i. 216, 218.
retreats before king Arthur, i. 220.
Montfort, Simon de, called to command the barons against Henry III., ii. 138.
gains the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.
slain at Evesham, ii. 146.
Montfort, Pierre de, slain at Lewes, ii. 146.
Montfort, Almeric de, ii. 147, 170.
Monthermer, Ralph de, ii. 306.
Morcar, son of Rikere, i. 396.
Morgan, the Welsh prince, ii. 218.
Mortagne, William earl of, i. 454, 458.
Mortimer, Roger de, ii. 136.
Mortmain, statute of, ii. 174.
Morvid of Gloucester, i. 214.
Morvidus, king of Britain, i. 52.
Morville, Richard de, ii. 10.
Mount Morice, Mathy de, ii. 120.
Mowbray, Robert de, rebels against William Rufus, i. 442.

N.

Navarre, the king of, dies in Sicily, ii. 158.
Nele, the two lords of, ii. 340.
Nevile, Thomas de, slain, ii. 344.
Newcastle-on Tyne, the castle built, i. 432.
Norfolk, Roger earl of, imprisoned by William the Conqueror, i. 430.
Normandy, given by king Arthur to sir Beduer, i. 168.
subdued by the Northmen under Rollo, i. 316.
Normans, war between them and the Cinque Ports, ii. 196.

O.

Octa, the Saxon, i. 104.
permitted to settle with his cousin Eosa on the Scottish border, i. 122.
excites war against king Uther, i. 132.
defeated and captured, i. 134.
escapes with his cousin Eosa, i. 140.
they make war upon Uther Pendragon, and are slain, i. 142, 144.
Octavius, i. 78, 80, 82.
Odo, bishop of Winchester, i. 446.
Offrid, son of king Edwin, i. 252.
Olifard, sir William, ii. 356.
Oliver, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 276.
Oseg, king of Denmark, i. 312.
Osrie, cousin of king Edwin, i. 252.
Oswald made king of Northumbria, i. 252.
put to death by king Penda, i. 254.
Oswy, king of Northumberland, i. 254.
Ottoboni, the papal legate, ii. 146, 150, 152.

P.

Partholoim, the leader of the exiles from Spain who colonized Ireland, i. 50.
Pascentius enters Britain, i. 128.
slain, i. 130.
Paulin, count, ii. 102.
Pecché, Hugh, ii. 151.
Pellitus, the augurer, i. 242.
murdered, i. 250.
Pembroke, Aymer, earl of, sent against Robert Bruce, ii. 366, 370.
Penda, king of Mercia, besieges the Britons in Oxford, i. 250.
is defeated and taken prisoner by Cadwallo, *ib.*
slays king Oswald, i. 254.
his treachery, *ib.*
is slain by Oswy, i. 256.

Perambulation, statute of, ii. 320, 322, 328.
Percy, Henry de, ii. 258.
Peter, Geoffry Fitz, ii. 34.
Peverell, William, i. 476.
Philip I., king of France, arbiter between William Rufus and Robert Courthose, i. 436.
Philip II. (Auguste), king of France, accompanies Richard Cœur de Lion to the Crusade, ii. 30.
starts, ii. 38.
disagreement between him and king Richard, ii. 92, 94.
returns to France, ii. 96.
defeated by king Richard at the bridge of Gisors, ii. 120.
seizes Normandy from king John, ii. 124.
Philip IV., king of France, obtains possession of Gascony, ii. 198.
retains it falsely, ii. 200.
his reply to king Edward's ambassadors, ii. 210.
at enmity with pope Boniface, ii. 346.
Poitiers, Gerard of, i. 466.
Porrex, king of Britain, his history, i. 40.
Priam, his death, i. 2.
Pyngwers, king of Loegria, i. 40.

R.

Rainald, the marquis, ii. 104.
Rainer, duke of Burgundy, i. 326, 328.
Rainer of Picardy, one of the plunderers in Stephen's time, i. 492.
Ralph, bishop of Orkney, i. 474, 476, 480.
Ralph the cofferer slain, ii. 344.
Randolph, bishop of Durham, i. 450.
Raymond, prince of Antioch, ii. 60, 112.
Raymond, count of St. Giles, marries the sister of Richard Coeur de-Lion, ii. 112.
Rees ap Meredith makes war upon Edward I., ii. 184.
taken and executed, ii. 188.
Richard I. (Coeur de Lion), crowned, ii. 26.
prepares for the Crusade, ii. 28.
starts for the East, ii. 36.
his proceedings in Sicily, ii. 40–52.
his doings in Cyprus, ii. 54–70.
arrives at Acre, ii. 74.
quarrels with the duke of Austria, ii, 84.
disagreement with the king of France, ii. 92, 94.
his personal encounter with Saladin in the battle of Cæsarea, ii. 102.
agrees to a truce with Saladin and leaves Syria, ii. 110, 112.
made a prisoner in Austria, ii. 114.
makes war upon the king of France, ii. 116, 118.
dies of his wounds, ii. 122.
Richard, king of Almaine, son of king John, ii. 132.
taken prisoner at the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.
Richarius of Pountif, i. 198.
Richmond, archdeacon of, ii. 214.
Riculf of Norway, i. 162.
Ridel, Geoffrey, i. 464.
Rival, king of Britain, i. 38.
Robert, duke of Normandy, dies, i. 372.
Robert Courthose, i. 432.
becomes duke of Normandy, i. 434.
comes to England, i. 438.
returns from the Holy Land, i. 448.
invades England, i. 450.
reconciled with king Henry I., i. 456.
taken prisoner and dies in Corfe castle, i. 458.
Robert de Kilwardby, archbishop of Canterbury, ii, 164.
Robert, John Fitz, drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.
Roderic, king of the Picts, i. 66.
Roger, archbishop of York, ii. 6.
Rollo, the Northman, arrives in England, and then conquers Normandy, i. 316.
Ros, Robert de, of Wark, ii. 232.
Rouland, lord of Galway, ii. 21.
Rowena, daughter of Hengist, her story, i. 102-106.

Rucy, Alan de, ii. 120.
Rudauc, king of Wales, i. 40.
Rupin of the Mountain, ii. 60.

S.

Sabul, Robert de, ii. 34.
Sadberg, bought from the Crown by the bishop of Durham, ii. 30.
Saffadin, the Saracen prince, ii. 100, 109.
St. Andrews, the bishop of, negotiates a marriage between the daughter of king John Baliol and the brother of the king of France, ii. 252.
thrown into prison, ii. 372.
St. John, John de, ii. 214.
taken prisoner at Belgarde, ii. 282.
Saladin, king Richard marches against him, ii. 96.
defeated in the battle of Cæsarea, ii. 98-104.
negotiates with king Richard, ii. 106.
obtains a truce for seven years, ii. 110, 112.
Salisbury, a castle built there by king Hudibras, i. 32.
Saloman, king of Britany, i. 228, 242.
Savoy, Earl Amery of, ii. 238.
Savoy, the Earl of, ii. 334.
Savoy, Laurence de, ii. 214.
Saxons, arrival of the, i. 98.
different branches of the race who settled in Britain, i. 232.
Say, Gilbert de la, i. 476.
Scaffeld, patron of Pierre de Langtoft, ii. 164.
Scone, the abbot of, imprisoned, ii. 372.
Scotland, disputed claim to the succession of, ii. 190.
decided in favour of John Baliol, ii. 192.
Seaton, Christopher de, hanged, ii. 372.
Sagrave, John de, ii. 322.
surprised by the Scots, ii. 344.
Seguin, duke of Burgundy, i. 44.
Severn, origin of the name of this river, i. 28.
Severus, the emperor, comes to Britain, and is slain there, i. 70.
Sibert, King of Essex, i. 280, 282.
Sibert, king of Wessex, i. 290.
slain dishonourably, i. 292.
Sisilius, king of Britain, i. 38.
Sisilius, son of Marcia, king of Britain, i. 52.
Siward, i. 16.
Siward, Richard, his deceit, ii. 240, 242, 244.
Somerville, Robert de, ii. 298.
Spoleto, the bishop of, comes on a mission to England, ii. 336.
Stater, king of Scotland, i. 40.
Statin le Nasé, ii. 66, 68.
king Richard gives him the government of Cyprus, ii. 70.
rebellion against him, ii. 74.
Stephen of Blois, the successor of Henry I., i. 466.
crowned king of England, i. 468.
breaks his oath, i. 470.
makes war upon David, king of Scotland, i. 472.
proceeds to the Welsh border, *ib.*
taken prisoner, i. 484.
his accord with duke Henry, the son of the empress, i. 496.
death of king Stephen, *ib.*
Stephen Langton made archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 128.
reconciled with king John. ii. 132.
crowns king Henry III., ii. 134.
Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 410.
Stirling Castle, siege and capture of, ii. 356, 358.
Stonehenge, the legend of, i. 124.
Stretton, Adam de, ii. 186.
Surrey, John, earl of, ii. 306.
Sweyn, king of Denmark, invades England, ii. 348.
returns to England, ii. 350.
ravages the south of England, ii. 354

Sweyn, king of Denmark—*cont.*
his oppressive tyranny, ii. 358.
his death, ii. 360.
Sweyn, son of Canute, made king of Norway, i. 371.

T.

Tancred, king of Sicily, ii. 40–48.
Tannye, Lucas de, drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.
Tenuancius, king of Cornwall, i. 58.
becomes king of Britain, i. 60.
Thadioc, archbishop of York, i. 230.
Thangcaster, origin of the name, i. 102.
Theobald, brother of king Stephen, i. 460.
Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 2.
Theon, archbishop of London, i. 230.
Thurston, archbishop of York, i. 474.
Thweng, Marmaduke de, his bravery in Scotland, ii. 300.
treacherously captured by the Scots, ii. 304.
Tintagel, castle of, i. 134.
besieged and destroyed by Uther Pendragon, i. 136, 138, 140.
Tiptoft, Robert de, ii. 214.
Tosti, earl of Northumberland, i. 396.
invades England on Harold's accession, i. 398.
invades Northumberland, i. 400.
is slain at Stanford Bridge, i. 402.
Tours, from whom named, i. 20.
Tours, Amfrid de, ii. 60, 112.
Trahern, the British prince, i. 78.
slain, i. 80.
Trailbastons, the proceedings against them, ii. 360.
Troy, destruction of, i. 2.
Turbeville, Thomas de, history of his treason, ii. 226.
his punishment, ii. 228.
Turnham, Robert de, ii. 64, 66, 70.
ft justiciary of Cyprus, ii. 72.
Turnus, king of Tuscany, slain by Eneas, i. 4.
Turnus, nephew of Brutus, slain in Poitou, i. 18.
Tyrel, Walter, kills William Rufus, i. 448.

U.

Ubba, the companion of Inguar, i. 312.
Uctred, lord of Cirencester, slain, i. 304.
Umfravile, Gilbert de, ii. 234.
Urbigen of Bath, i. 204.
slain, i. 210.
Urian receives Moray from king Arthur, i. 158.
Ursula, St., the legend of, i. 84.
Uther Pendragon, i. 98.
sent with Merlin to Ireland, i. 126.
made king of Britain, i. 130.
falls in love with the lady Igerne, i. 134.
his intrigue with Igerne, i. 138.
defeats the Saxons, i. 142, 144.
is murdered, i. 144.

V.

Valence, Aymer de, ii. 370.
See Pembroke.
Valence, William de, ii. 136.
Vavasor, Baldwin the, ii. 148.
Vesci, John de, ii. 152, 180.
Vesci, William de, ii. 230.
Vespasian, one of the officers of the emperor Claudius, i. 64.
Vortiger, usurps the crown of Britain, i. 96, 98.
receives Hengist and Horsus, i. 98.
marries Hengist's daughter, i. 102.
carried prisoner to London, i. 108.
his castle in Wales, i. 110.

Vortiger—*cont.*
conquered and slain by Ambrosius and Uther, i. 116.
Vortimer, made king in place of his father Vortiger, i. 104.
murdered, i. 106.
Vortiporius, made king of Britain, i. 226.

W.

Walcher, bishop of Durham, murdered, i. 430.
Wales, invaded by earl Harold, i. 394.
rises against king Edward, ii. 216.
Edward's error in regard to Wales, *ib.*
Wallace, John, taken and executed, ii. 378.
Wallace, William, surprises and defeats the earl of Warenne, ii. 298.
goes about robbing, ii. 350.
offers terms of surrender to king Edward, which are refused, ii. 352.
taken and executed, ii. 362.
Waltheof beheaded, i. 430.
Walwayn, son of Lot, i. 162.
See Gawayn.
Warren, John, earl of, ii. 240, 258.
his death, ii. 360.
Warren, John, earl of, his marriage, ii. 368.
Warren, Hugh, earl of, ii. 136, 142.
Warren, William, earl of, ii. 368.
Warwick, earl of, ii. 240.
Westminster, statutes of, ii. 172.
Weyland, Thomas de, ii. 186.
Whitby abbey founded, i. 428.
Wiglaf, king of Mercia, i. 298.
slain, i. 302.
William the Bastard becomes duke of Normandy, i. 372.
visits England, i. 386.
obtains a promise from Harold to secure to him the crown of England, i. 402.
William the Bastard—*cont.*
invades England, i. 406.
gains the battle of Hastings, and becomes king, i. 408.
his coronation, i, 410.
invades the north country, i. 414–424.
his war in France, i. 428.
devises his domains to his children, i. 432.
his death, i. 434.
William Rufus, commencement of his reign, i. 434.
suppresses the rebellion of Robert de Mowbray, i. 442.
invades Wales and Scotland, i. 444.
circumstances of his death, i. 446, 448.
William, king of Scotland, invades England, and is taken prisoner, ii. 10.
assists the young king Henry against his father, *ib.*
makes his submission to king Henry, ii. 12.
performs his homage at York, ii. 18.
performs his homage to king Richard at Canterbury, ii. 82.
and to king John at Lincoln, ii. 126.
marries his daughter to the count of Boulogne, ii. 130.
William, bishop of Ely, ii. 34.
Winchester, founded by king Hudibras, i. 32.
Wollerton, Robert de, ii. 148.
Worcester, ravaged by king Hardeknut, i. 378.
Wounds of Britain, five, according to Henry of Huntingdon, i. 286.
Wulfred, king of Mercia, i. 256.

Y.

York, built by Brutus Green-shield, i. 30.
rebuilt by king Arthur, i. 156.
the abbey founded, i. 428.

LONDON:
Printed by George E. Eyre and William Spottiswoode,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—6/68.]

466-32